PPDG

PROJECT PLANNING AND DESIGN GUIDE

CONSTRUCTION

DESIGN POLLUTION PREVENTION

TREATMENT

MAINTENANCE

JUNE 2023

STORMWATER QUALITY HANDBOOKS

HANDBOOKS
Project Planning and Design Guide (PPDG)
Construction Site Best Management Practice (BMPs) Manual
Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and Water Pollution Control Program (WPCP) Preparation Manual
Maintenance Staff Guide

Table of Contents

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

List of Figures

TABLE OF CONTENTS

List of Tables

1 Introduction

1.1 Overview

This Project Planning and Design Guide (PPDG) provides guidance on the process and procedures for evaluating project scope and site conditions to determine the need for and feasibility of incorporating Best Management Practices (BMPs) into projects within the Caltrans right-of-way. This PPDG provides design guidance for incorporating stormwater quality controls into projects during the planning and project development process. This document supersedes prior stormwater design guidance manuals and has been prepared in support of the *Statewide Stormwater Management Plan* (SWMP). The PPDG addresses key regulatory, policy, and technical requirements by providing direction on the procedures to incorporate stormwater BMPs into the design of all Caltrans projects. In addition to the direction provided in this PPDG, the user is expected to apply their own engineering knowledge and judgment when evaluating and designing stormwater BMPs.

The key objective of this PPDG is to provide the overall process for selecting and designing BMPs and incorporating those BMPs into the appropriate documents at each project delivery phase (Project Initiation Document (PID), the Project Approval/Environmental Document (PA/ED), and the Plans, Specifications and Estimates (PS&E)). The planning and design approach described herein has been developed to fit within the appropriate Work Breakdown Structure (WBS) codes and activities identified in the *Caltrans Project Development Procedures Manual* (PDPM) and the *Workplan Standards Guide*. These documents can be found on the web at the following sites:

https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/manual-project-development-procedures-manual-pdpm

https://dot.ca.gov/-/media/dot-media/programs/project-management/documents/workplan_standards_guide_a11y1.pdf

Also, the Stormwater Data Report (SWDR), which summarizes the stormwater quality issues of a project, and its corresponding checklists, are described in this manual. These documents are provided in the appendices and are used for guidance in evaluating BMPs considered during the PID, PA/ED, and PS&E processes. This PPDG is organized as follows:

- Section 1 – Introduction: Provides an overview of the BMP selection and project development process, the history of the existing stormwater guidance documents, regulations and permits, SWMP implementation, design compliance monitoring and annual reporting requirements.
- Section 2 – Design Program Responsibilities: Identifies specific staff responsibilities.
- Section 3 – Best Management Practice Overview: Provides background information and guidance necessary for the appropriate selection of permanent and temporary BMPs.
- Section 4 – Treatment Consideration: Provides guidance for evaluating whether a project must consider incorporating Treatment BMPs based upon project-specific criteria. Defines treatment areas and provides guidance for determining the required amount of area to be treated.
- Section 5 – Permanent BMP Strategy: Provides the approach to developing a permanent treatment strategy for projects through the use of approved Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) BMPs and, when required, Treatment BMPs. For projects that are required to implement Treatment BMPs, this section describes the Treatment BMP prioritization process and methods to calculate water quality volume and flow.

- Section 6 – Stormwater Data Report Development Process: Describes the overall PID, PA/ED, and PS&E processes, including the identification and evaluation of stormwater quality issues, and development of the final design of the project, permanent BMPs, and temporary BMP strategy. Also describes the process of preparing the SWDR throughout the project development process.
- Appendix A – Approved Design Pollution Prevention BMPs: Describes the DPP BMPs that are considered during all phases of the project development process. These BMPs are then incorporated into the design of new facilities and the reconstruction, rehabilitation, or expansion of existing facilities.
- Appendix B – Approved Treatment BMPs: Describes the Treatment BMPs that are considered during all phases of the project development process.
- Appendix C – Construction Site BMPs: Describes and lists the Construction Site BMPs that should be considered for use during construction activities to reduce pollutants in stormwater discharges throughout construction.
- Appendix D – Relevant Stormwater Information: Provides a summary of the relevant stormwater related documents and their purpose, and the websites that are referenced in this document.
- Appendix E – Stormwater Data Report: Provides the SWDR template and some of the attachments to be used for projects throughout the PID, PA/ED, and the PS&E processes. The SWDR documents decisions made throughout the planning and project development processes regarding stormwater quality.
- Appendix F – Cost Estimates: Provides guidance on how to estimate the cost of stormwater items into the overall project cost.
- Appendix G – Abbreviations, Acronyms, Definition of Terms and References.

1.2 BMP Selection and Project Development Process

The overall process to select BMPs as part of each of the project phases, PID, PA/ED, and PS&E, is shown in Figure 1-1. This figure presents the procedure for BMP implementation throughout the project development process from securing funds in the PID, to selecting the preferred BMP alternative in the PA/ED, and preparing detailed design in the PS&E. Each phase of the project is individually described in Section 6. Implementation activities generally follow the procedures presented in the PDPM.

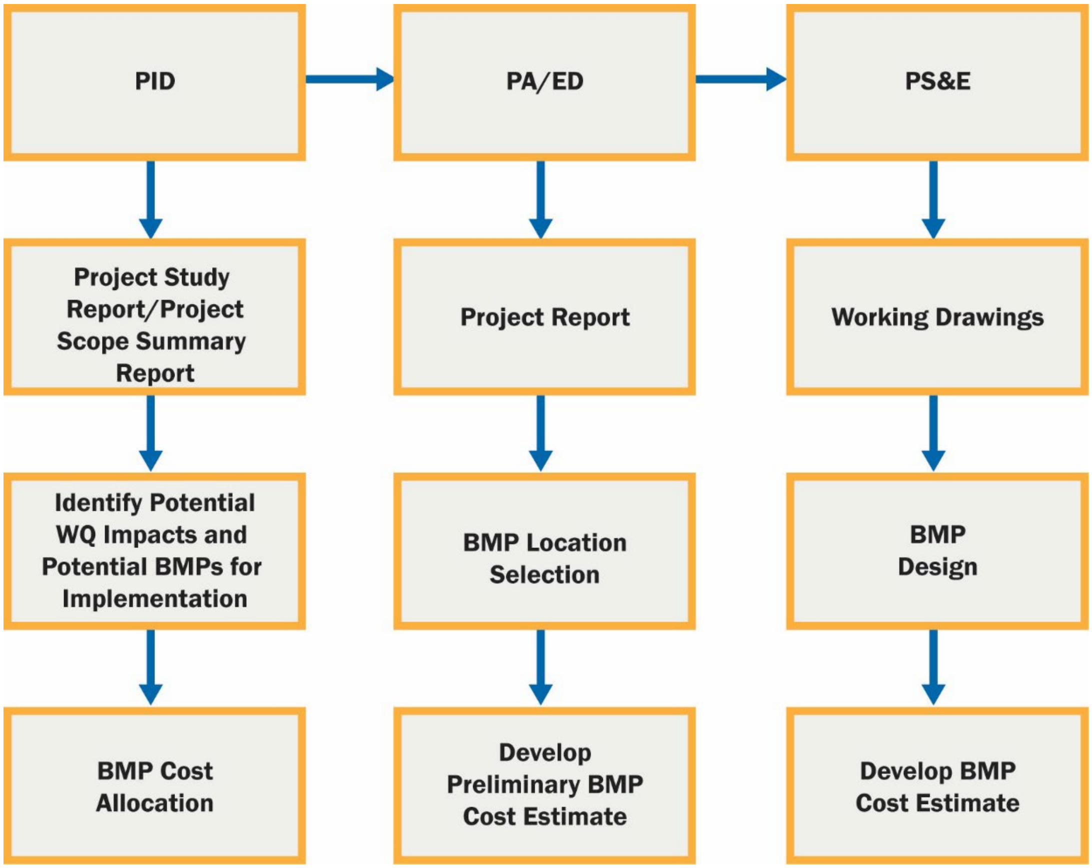


Figure 1-1. Project Development Process Summary

It is important to note that this document provides minimum guidelines and that additional requirements may have to be incorporated on a project-by-project basis to comply with special requirements from a Regional Water Quality Control Board (RWQCB), specific district guidelines, environmental laws, or as a result of other studies. Other stormwater quality elements that the Project Engineer (PE) may have to consider are included in each District's Annual Workplan (DAWP).

Special site conditions may warrant variations from the guidance provided herein. The PE is responsible for recognizing site conditions that warrant variations in procedures and for securing appropriate approvals for these variations before proceeding with design.

1.3 Stormwater Guidance Documents

In order to meet the demands of the stormwater management process in regard to controlling pollutant discharges and meeting permit requirements, several documents have been developed. Appendix D provides a list and a brief summary of these documents and their purposes.

1.4 Regulations and Permits

1.4.1 Federal Regulations

Federal regulations for controlling discharges of pollutants from Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems (MS4s), construction sites, and industrial activities were incorporated into the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit process by the 1987 amendments to the Clean Water Act (CWA) and by the subsequent 1990 promulgation of federal stormwater regulations issued by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). The EPA regulations require municipal, construction and industrial stormwater discharges to comply with an NPDES permit. In California, the EPA delegated its authority to issue NPDES permits to the State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB).

1.4.2 Caltrans NPDES Statewide Stormwater Permit

The SWRCB issued an NPDES Statewide Stormwater Permit (Caltrans Permit) to Caltrans, effective January 1, 2023, to regulate stormwater and non-stormwater discharges from Caltrans properties and facilities, and discharges associated with operation and maintenance of the State highway system.

Under the 2022 Caltrans Permit, highway projects in the state right-of-way creating 10,000 square feet (5,000 square feet for non-highway facilities) or more of New Impervious Surface (NIS) area, as described in Section 4.3, must implement post-construction Treatment Best Management Practices (TBMPs). This is a reduction from the previous permit threshold of 1-acre NIS area. The Permit provides an exception for highway projects that completed the PID phase prior to January 1, 2023, and commence construction by January 1, 2028, or within seven (7) years after completing the PID phase, whichever is earlier. These projects are required to implement post-construction TBMPs for 1-acre or more of NIS but must meet all other requirements in the 2022 Caltrans Permit.

The Caltrans Permit regulates stormwater discharges from Caltrans RW during and after construction, as well as from existing facilities and activities. The Permit applies to all work on Caltrans Right of Way by Caltrans, Local Agencies, and Encroachment Permit recipients. The Caltrans Permit gives RWQCBs the option to specify additional requirements they may consider necessary to meet water quality standards. Copies of the Caltrans Permit can be downloaded from the SWRCB website, at:

http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/stormwater/caltrans.shtml

Under the Caltrans Permit, the discharge of trash to surface waters of the State or the deposition of trash where it may be discharged into surface waters of the State is prohibited. Statewide Trash Provisions are described in more detail in Section 1.4.2.2.

Discharges from Caltrans RW that are not composed entirely of stormwater are prohibited unless the non-stormwater discharges are from a source authorized under the Permit. Therefore, appropriate BMPs must be deployed to remove pollutants to the Maximum Extent Practicable (MEP) unless authorized by a separate permit.

1.4.2.1 Hydromodification/Rapid Stability Assessment (RSA)

Site modifications associated with development, such as the construction of roads, parking lots, and buildings, change the local hydraulics by shifting more stormwater to runoff and less to infiltrate into the soil. This change in watershed cover types and surface soil conditions is called hydromodification. Hydromodification is often associated with accelerated erosion and deposition in stream channels that receive runoff from developed areas. The Caltrans Permit mandates that a rapid stability assessment (RSA) be conducted during planning and design for all projects that add 10,000 ft^2 or more of net new impervious (NNI)[1] to the Threshold Drainage Area (TDA) of a stream crossing. Caltrans guidance under the Permit is that for an RSA to be required, the stream crossing within the project must be defined as a Water of the United States. Projects that meet these criteria should consult Section 2 of the *Caltrans Hydromodification Requirements Guidance* for information related to conducting an RSA. If the project does not meet all of the criteria, then an RSA is not required. For projects that do not have an RSA, evaluating and implementing DPP and Treatment BMPs, as described in this PPDG, will meet the overall Hydromodification requirement.

The *Caltrans Hydromodification Requirements Guidance* describes how to perform an RSA and describes higher level analysis. This document can be found on the web at the following site:

https://dot.ca.gov/-/media/dot-media/programs/design/documents/f0004535-ct-hydromodification-requirements-guidance-a11y.pdf

1.4.2.2 Statewide Trash Provisions

Discharge of trash to surface waters of the State (direct or indirect) is prohibited by the Statewide Trash Provisions. Caltrans has developed a Statewide Trash Implementation Plan to ensure compliance with the trash provisions. The Statewide Trash Implementation Plan delineates Significant Trash Generation Areas (STGAs) within Caltrans jurisdiction.

STGAs include all locations or facilities where trash accumulates in substantial amounts, such as:

- Highway on-ramps and off-ramps in high density residential, commercial, and industrial land uses
- Rest areas and park-and-rides
- State highways in commercial and industrial land uses
- Mainline highway segments to be identified by the Department through pilot studies and/or surveys
- Areas identified by the State Water Board Executive Director in consultation with the appropriate Regional Board Executive Officer to be significant trash generating areas

STGAs are listed on maps in the Statewide Trash Implementation Plan. Projects developed within an STGA must install certified full-capture trash devices where feasible. Geographic Information System (GIS) layers showing the STGAs are available in the DEA Stormwater GIS Library. Consult the

---

[1] The Caltrans Permit uses the term New Impervious Surface (NIS) to establish the threshold for a RSA. This term as defined in the Permit is identical to Caltrans NNI. NNI is retained by the Department as the historically appropriate definition.

District/Regional NPDES Coordinator for more information. The Statewide Trash Implementation Plan is available at:

https://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/stormwater/caltrans.html

1.4.3 Caltrans Statewide Stormwater Management Plan (SWMP)

The Caltrans Permit directs Caltrans to implement and maintain an effective SWMP. The SWMP is the document that describes how Caltrans plans to implement the Permit requirements. The SWMP describes Caltrans' program and addresses stormwater pollution control related to various activities, including planning, design, construction, maintenance, and operation of roadways and facilities, and presents key implementation responsibilities and schedules.

The most recent SWMP is available at:

http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/stormwater/docs/caltrans/swmp/swmp_approved.pdf

1.4.4 Construction General Permit (CGP)

The SWRCB elected to adopt a single statewide general permit for construction activities that applies to all stormwater discharges from land where clearing, grading, and excavation result in soil disturbance of at least one (1) acre or more. Construction activity that results in soil disturbance of less than one (1) acre is subject to this CGP if there is the potential for significant water quality impairment resulting from the activity as determined by the RWQCB. The CGP requires owners of land where construction activity occurs and meets the permit criteria to develop a Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) (see Section 1.4.5). The department must meet the substantive requirements of the CGP:

http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/stormwater/construction.shtml

Other CGPs that may apply, but are less common, include the EPA CGP that applies to tribal and federal lands, and the Lake Tahoe CGP that applies to the Lake Tahoe Hydrologic Unit (i.e., watershed).

1.4.4.1 Rainfall Erosivity Waiver

Projects that have a disturbed soil area between one (1) and less than five (5) acres and a construction duration of less than one year may qualify for a rainfall erosivity waiver. A rainfall erosivity waiver is applicable if the rainfall erosivity factor (R factor) is less than a value of 5. The R factor considers project location, length of construction period, and time of year.

Refer to Section 6.4.4.2 for more detail.

1.4.4.2 Notice of Non-Applicability (NONA)

Project sites not hydrologically connected to waters of the United States can apply for a Notice of Non-Applicability (NONA) to be exempt from CGP coverage. A NONA requires a No Discharge Technical Report to be submitted in SMARTS and signed by a licensed professional engineer or geologist with hydrological expertise.

1.4.5 Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP)

The CGP outlines the required contents of a SWPPP. A SWPPP is a document that addresses water pollution controls for a specific project during construction. The CGP requires that all stormwater discharges associated with construction activities that result in soil disturbance of at least one (1) acre of total land area must comply with the provisions specified in the CGP, including development and implementation of an effective SWPPP. PEs are required to include pertinent SWPPP related information in the project file.

Prior to the start of construction, Caltrans will enter a Notice of Intent (NOI) and supporting documents to the SWRCBs *Stormwater Multiple Application and Report Tracking System* (SMARTS). The SWPPP is typically prepared by the contractor and authorized by the Resident Engineer (RE) prior to commencement of soil-disturbing activities. When construction is complete and the construction site is stabilized, Caltrans will submit a Notice of Termination (NOT) in SMARTS.

1.4.6 Water Pollution Control Program (WPCP)

Generally, construction projects with a disturbed soil area of less than one (1) acre are not covered under the CGP and do not require a SWPPP. For all projects that do not require preparation of a SWPPP, Caltrans requires that a Water Pollution Control Program (WPCP) be prepared. The WPCP is typically prepared by the contractor and authorized by the RE prior to commencement of soil-disturbing activities. Details on the preparation of the SWPPP or WPCP are found in the supplementary Stormwater Quality Handbook, *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and Water Pollution Control Program (WPCP) Preparation Manual*.

1.4.7 Additional Requirements

Regulatory agencies may impose requirements in addition to the Caltrans Permit if special conditions warrant. These additional requirements may affect the overall design as it relates to drainage and water quality. Some of the additional requirements may include:

- Waste Discharge Requirements (WDR), from RWQCB;
- Soil Management Agreement for Aerially Deposited Lead (ADL)-Contaminated Soils with Department of Toxic Substances Control (DTSC), referred to as the ADL Agreement;
- 1602 Permits from the California Department of Fish & Wildlife;
- 404 Permit from the Army Corps of Engineers (ACOE);
- 401 Water Quality Certification (401 Certification) from the RWQCB;
- Dewatering Permits from RWQCB;
- Reclamation District Requirements;
- Coastal Development Permit from the California Coastal Commission; and
- Other Permits or Requirements related to stormwater

An example of an additional project requirement is the ADL Agreement issued by the California DTSC for the reuse of some soils that contain elevated lead levels. There are numerous design considerations, soil types must be documented on the plans and properly addressed in the specifications, and regulatory agencies must be notified as the project progresses. PEs must coordinate with the appropriate district hazardous waste representative to ensure they meet all the ADL Agreement requirements and comply with other regulations regarding hazardous waste.

Some projects may require WDRs, additional permits, or other environmental requirements. The PE should check the environmental document and other supporting documents (*Water Quality Assessment Report* [WQAR] or equivalent) for all water quality related requirements.

Two state agencies commonly attempt to require structural treatment BMPs or other water quality considerations outside the conditions of the Caltrans Permit: The Regional Water Quality Control Board (RWQCB) and the California Coastal Commission. The RWQCB is described in Section 3 below. The following information is important in evaluating the applicability of specific requirements issued by the two agencies.

The Porter-Cologne Water Quality Control Act, 2023, Division 7, Article 6, paragraph 13360 states that no RWQCB or SWRCB “shall specify the design, location, type of construction, or particular manner in which compliance may be had with that requirement, order, or decree…”. Caltrans has worked with the SWRCB and RWQCBs on the approved BMPs in the Caltrans toolbox for 20 years. The approved treatment BMPs have been shown to be effective for treatment of targeted pollutants in pilot studies and through sound scientific analysis and research by Caltrans, academia, and other Non-Governmental Organizations. If the processes in this PPDG are followed in designing and siting treatment BMPs then the RWQCB has no basis to require specific BMPs or BMP design.

In accordance with Public Resources Code 30412 subdivision (b) relating to the California Coastal Commission, (Commission), “The State Water Resources Control Board and the California regional water quality control boards are the state agencies with primary responsibility for the coordination and control of water quality. The State Water Resources Control Board has primary responsibility for the administration of water rights pursuant to applicable law. The Commission shall ensure that proposed development and Local Coastal Programs shall not frustrate this section. The Commission shall not, except as provided in subdivision (c), modify, adopt conditions, or take any action in conflict with any determination by the State Water Resources Control Board or any California Regional Water Quality Control Board in matters relating to water quality or the administration of water rights.”

Only one provision of Subdivision (c) of the Porter-Cologne Water Quality Control Act cited above provides an area where the Commission may have determinative control that may apply to Caltrans in the absence of SWRCB or RWQCB determination. Subdivision (c) (1) provides that the Commission has determinative control over “siting and visual appearance of treatment works within the coastal zone.” This implies that if multiple treatment BMPs are effective for the site pollutants then the Coastal Commission may be able to condition the permit with BMP preferences based on appearance. Siting and sizing of BMPs is governed by permits issued by the SWRCB and/or requirements of the applicable RWQCB and not subject to Coastal Commission determination.

Regional and local requirements may need to be considered for projects that include work outside of Caltrans’ RW. The relevant requirements should be referenced in the environmental documents prepared during the PA/ED phase (e.g., WQAR). Coordination with regional or local agencies and municipalities should be conducted throughout all phases of project to ensure compliance with applicable NPDES permits. As appropriate, coordination and design efforts should be documented in the Stormwater Data Report and reflected in the PS&E documents.

1.5 Permit and SWMP Implementation

The Headquarters (HQ) Division of Environmental Analysis (DEA) coordinates implementation of the SWMP with each district or region and with other HQ divisions, including Design, Maintenance, Construction, and Traffic Operations. Each district is responsible for implementing the SWMP within the district and complying with the Caltrans Permit, CGP requirements, and any district or region specific requirements. Program responsibility matrices have been developed specifically for each district or region and are available from District/Regional NPDES Coordinators.

The Caltrans Permit contains numerous requirements for both situational and annual reporting. The reports are prepared by each District or Region in coordination with DEA. Each Caltrans Division coordinates with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator on the appropriate input to support required Permit monitoring reports.

1.5.1 District Annual Workplans (DAWP)

Each district NPDES unit prepares a District Annual Workplan (DWP) that describes the organization of each Caltrans District's stormwater management program and outlines the planned stormwater activities for the upcoming fiscal year (period of July 1 through June 30). Each DAWP describes how the district will specifically implement the requirements of the SWMP during the upcoming fiscal year.

1.5.2 Stormwater Treatment BMP Asset Management

The concept of asset management refers to the process of designing, operating, and maintaining all roadway elements in the most cost-effective manner. There is a Federal requirement that Caltrans develop and maintain a Transportation Asset Management Plan (TAMP). The TAMP is updated every four years and assesses primarily pavement and bridges. The Caltrans State Highway System Management Plan (SHSMP) provides the operational details for assets that include pavements, bridges, culverts, Transportation Management System (TMS), and a number of supplementary categories.

All assets are measured for their current and targeted future condition. The difference between these two conditions is termed the performance gap and are projected by costs over some period of time. The SHSMP has a sub-class named Sustainability/Climate Change that includes Stormwater Mitigation for TMDLs and Trash.

The 2022 Caltrans Permit has a new requirement for a Stormwater Asset Management Plan to provide an accounting of all Treatment BMPs. This requirement is under the control of DEA.

2 Design Program Responsibilities

2.1 Introduction to Design Program Responsibilities

The Caltrans Project Delivery Stormwater Management Program includes Headquarters and District representatives from the following divisions: Environmental Analysis, Design, Construction, Engineering Services, Project Management, and Right-of-Way & Land Surveys.

This section describes roles and responsibilities of certain functional units as they pertain to the stormwater program, as well as other efforts necessary to assure compliance. This will provide the Project Engineer (PE) an understanding of roles and responsibilities and how other staff is involved in the development of the stormwater strategy for a project.

2.2 Management: Headquarters Office of Hydraulics and Stormwater Design

The role of the Office of Hydraulics and Stormwater Design (OHSD) includes:

- Coordination: In coordination with DEA, OHSD provides general guidance to the districts on the implementation of stormwater quality management practices.
- Program Evaluation: OHSD assesses District incorporation of stormwater quality management features into project planning and designs. OHSD also provides continuous improvement by performing design compliance monitoring.
- Reporting: OHSD supports the DEA Water Quality Program in the preparation of the Design Program elements of the Annual Report submittal to the California State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB).

The Design Division Chief is responsible for statewide implementation policies, procedures and guidance, and management of the personnel of the Design program. This includes the responsibility for ensuring compliance with all elements of the *Statewide Stormwater Management Plan* (SWMP) that are required to be implemented by the Division of Design. The Design Division Chief is also responsible for representing design on the Headquarters Stormwater Management Team and the Water Quality Management Assurance Team (see SWMP Section 2.2.3).

2.3 Stormwater Advisory Teams (SWATs)

The OHSD staff provides input and consultation to the following Stormwater Advisory Teams (SWATs):

- The Project Design SWAT (PD-SWAT) is composed of District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinators, related functional units, and representatives from each of the affected HQ Divisions. The PD-SWAT provides review of proposed and existing BMPs utilized in the planning and design of projects. BMPs include Construction Site BMPs, Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) BMPs, and Treatment BMPs. In addition, the PD-SWAT reviews and assists in the development of training classes and guidance documents for implementing stormwater activities relevant to project design.

- The Maintenance SWAT (M-SWAT) is composed of District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinators and representatives from each of the affected HQ Divisions. The M-SWAT provides review and/or evaluation of proposed and existing Best Management Practices (BMPs) used by the Division of Maintenance. In addition, the M-SWAT reviews and assists in the development of training classes and guidance documents for implementing stormwater activities described in the SWMP for maintaining highways, bridges, facilities, Treatment BMPs, and other appurtenances related to transportation.
- The Construction SWAT (C-SWAT) is composed of District Construction Stormwater Coordinators and representatives from each of the affected HQ Divisions. The C-SWAT provides review of proposed and existing Construction Site BMPs and measures used for stabilization of soils. In addition, the C-SWAT reviews and assists in the development of training classes and guidance documents for implementing stormwater activities relevant to construction activities.
- Encroachment Permit SWAT (EP-SWAT) is composed of District Permit Coordinators and representatives from each of the affected HQ Divisions. The EP-SWAT provides review of existing procedures to ensure that they integrate the appropriate stormwater BMPs into the requirements of encroachment permits. In addition, the EP-SWAT reviews and assists in issuing and administering encroachment permits.
- The Water Quality SWAT (WQ-SWAT) is composed of the District/Regional National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Coordinators and representatives from each of the affected HQ Divisions. The WQ-SWAT provides review of proposed and existing Treatment BMPs and prioritizes research or studies of Treatment BMPs. The WQ-SWAT is a forum for discussing stormwater coordination activities underway or planned with other municipalities, reviewing, and recommending public education efforts, sharing technical information, providing advice on compliance issues, and resolving issues of dispute on stormwater. Many of these activities result in recommendations for changes to the SWMP, or policies and other documents on stormwater. The WQ-SWAT discusses stormwater budget allocations for the districts and HQ Divisions. The WQ-SWAT reviews data and findings from compliance-monitoring and evaluation activities and recommends changes in practices to improve compliance efforts.

2.4 Stormwater Coordinators

All Districts/Regions have designated stormwater coordinators. Functional-unit stormwater coordinators exist in the Environmental, Design, Construction, and Maintenance Divisions. Also, depending upon the complexity of the District, additional stormwater coordinators may be identified to represent other functional units or special needs. The functional unit coordinators assist the District Divisions in implementing stormwater management activities. The District/Regional Stormwater Coordinators serve as liaisons with the various HQ Stormwater functions. Liaison activities specific to the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator include regular communications with representatives of the Regional Water Quality Control Boards (RWQCBs).

2.5 Responsibilities as they Relate to Encroachment Permits and Third-Party Activities

Districts control third-party activities on Caltrans RW (e.g., utility construction) through the conditions associated with encroachment permits. These conditions require compliance with Caltrans standard plans and specifications. Encroachment permits require environmental compliance, including implementation of BMPs comparable to those required of Caltrans. In general, the design of large encroachments is overseen by District Design and construction activities by District Construction. Smaller projects are managed by the Encroachment Permit Unit.

2.6 Responsibilities for Coordination with Municipal Stormwater Permittees (Local Agencies)

Coordination with Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) permit holders and other municipalities (cities and counties) must take place whenever a proposed project would result in stormwater discharges from the Department's stormwater drainage systems to stormwater drainage systems owned and operated by the MS4 or municipality, and vice versa. This coordination includes attending meetings, participating in special studies, identifying stormwater run-on issues, etc. The PE should consult with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to identify any MS4 concerns that may affect the project.

2.7 Consultation with Regional Water Quality Control Boards (RWQCBs) and Local Regulatory Agencies

Consultation with the RWQCBs and local regulatory agencies is strongly recommended to coordinate potential project issues (e.g., 401 Certification) and develop consensus during project planning. The number of coordination meetings may vary depending upon the complexity of the stormwater quality issues, stormwater pollutants involved, and project site constraints. The District/Regional NPDES Coordinators are the liaisons between the RWQCBs and the districts.

2.8 Staff and Functional Units

2.8.1 Staff

Project Manager

Typically, the Project Manager (PM) is responsible for all project development phases from project initiation to close out of the construction contract. The PM has full authority, delegated from the District Division Chief for Program and Project Management, to produce the results that were intended, meet schedules, stay within budget, and keep the sponsors and customers satisfied.

During project initiation, the PM identifies the needs and expectations of the project sponsors. The PM also leads the Project Development Team (PDT) in the development of a "Project Work Plan" that defines the project scope, schedule, cost, and resource needs. Finally, the PM ensures that the Project Work Plan includes all the work required. Resources are assigned to a project based upon the Project Work Plan developed by the PM and the PDT.

During the PS&E phase of a project, the PM monitors project performance and resolves issues that affect project scope, cost, or schedule; this includes the BMP evaluation and selection process for incorporation into the project. The PM coordinates the efforts of the overall team, and typically chairs the PDT meetings. During the entire project development process, the PM controls both the support and capital portions of the project budget. The PM is required to sign the Long Form SWDR (Appendix E) at the conclusion of the Project Initiation Document (PID), the Project Approval/Environmental Document (PA/ED), and the Plans Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) phases. The PM also signs the Project Study Report (PSR) and the Project Report (PR).

Project Engineer

The PE is the registered civil engineer in responsible charge of appropriate project development documents (e.g., project study report, project report) and project design. The PE is a member of the PDT. Responsible charge of the work is defined in Section 6703 of the Professional Engineers Act of the California Business and Professions Code as “the independent control and direction, by use of initiative, skill and independent judgment, of the investigation or design of professional engineering work or the direct engineering control of such projects.”

The PE coordinates closely with other functional units throughout the project development process and notifies other functional managers and staff of design changes as soon as feasible. Likewise, other functional units must communicate and coordinate closely with the PE whenever technical questions arise regarding the overall engineering effort. The PE, as the individual signing the title sheet, is responsible for the integration of all the engineering elements needed to make up a complete and comprehensive plans, specifications, and estimate (PS&E) package. Only in this way can the project team continue to succeed in meeting their project delivery commitments. The PE signs the SWDR at PID, PA/ED, and stamps the final SWDR at PSE.

District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator

The District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator is the main point of contact for PEs for project related stormwater questions and is responsible to support the project design compliance evaluation (PDCE) process. The District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator is also required to sign the SWDR at the conclusion of the PID, the PA/ED, and the PS&E phases. This authority may be delegated at their discretion.

District/Regional NPDES Coordinator

The District/Regional NPDES Coordinator verifies that the water quality issues are identified and incorporated in the Water Quality Assessment Report (WQAR), or equivalent document, if one is prepared for the project. Based upon information submitted by the PE, the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator in consultation with the PDT and project sponsor, is responsible for assigning and crediting areas treated by the project and is responsible for entering project data into the Caltrans Stormwater Portal (Stormwater Portal) database[1].

Project Development Team (PDT)

For most projects, the Department uses a formalized PDT that acts as a steering committee in directing the course of studies required to evaluate the various project alternatives during the early phases of the project life cycle. The PDT uses an interdisciplinary approach that draws upon different disciplines in planning, developing, and evaluating alternatives. The PDT advises and assists the PM in directing the course of studies, makes recommendations to the PM and District Management, and works to carry out the Project Work Plan. The PDT is responsible for the completion of studies and the accumulation of data throughout project development to PS&E.

[1] The Stormwater Portal database is used for statewide treatment tracking.

The primary functions of the PDT are as follows:

- To determine logical project limits;
- To recommend studies, timetables, alternatives, type of environmental documentation, and the feasibility of project impact mitigation measures;
- To ensure careful integration of the design into the project context, whether that be a controlled-access freeway, rural highway, complete street, or any other setting;
- To ensure thorough analysis of the social, economic, environmental (including visual and aesthetic) and engineering aspects of the project. The PDT calls upon representatives of various disciplines as needed;
- To ensure that state and federal requirements for project development studies have been met;
- To use information in reports (PSR, Draft Project Report – Draft Environmental Document [DPR-DED], etc.) when recommending a preferred alternative to District Management for project approval; and
- To document the project history and decisions.

Functional Managers

Functional Managers supervise the Department functional units that provide technical data and plans to the PE, and schedule and resource data to the PM. Functional Managers are responsible for assigning staff to work on a project, and for ensuring the delivery of product(s) within the schedule agreed upon in the Project Work Plan. Functional Managers also ensure that the products comply with all applicable standards, regulations, and policies.

2.8.2 District Functional Units

Design

The District Design Unit is responsible for the implementation of Caltrans policies, programs, and procedures concerning design of Caltrans facilities. This includes ensuring compliance with all design elements of the *Highway Design Manual* (HDM), the *Project Development Procedures Manual* (PDPM), the *Project Planning and Design Guide* (PPDG), and other guidance documents. All Treatment BMPs will be designed to follow the Professional Engineers Act for civil engineering work[2]. The Design Unit is responsible for the following stormwater quality related activities:

- Preparation of a PID and a PR during the project planning phase, including evaluation and selection of potential BMPs that may be incorporated into the project;
- Preparation of PS&E documents. This includes the selection and design of DPP BMPs, Treatment BMPs, and appropriate Construction Site BMPs into the plans and specifications;
- Determining whether a SWPPP or a WPCP is required for the project;

[2] Civil engineering work includes grading, drainage, irrigation, floodplains, inland water ways, highway design, water purification, and any other fixed object on the roadside. The PE is in responsible charge for ensuring civil engineering work is correctly performed (e.g., stamping plans, calculations, specifications, design reports).

- Coordinating with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator and District Construction to determine special TMDL compliance requirements for construction phase.
- Coordinating with District Hazardous Waste Unit to ensure compliance with the Aerially Deposited Lead (ADL) Agreement and other regulations regarding hazardous waste. There are numerous design considerations for ADL soils, soil types must be documented on the plans and properly addressed in the specifications, and regulatory agencies must be notified as the project progresses; and
- Preparing the SMARTS Input Sheet with the necessary design information to enter into Stormwater Multiple Application Report Tracking System (SMARTS) to support project construction.

Environmental

The District's Environmental Unit is responsible for the implementation of Caltrans policies, programs, and procedures concerning environmental considerations, analysis, and compliance with environmental laws and regulations under California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA) and National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) as well as other state and federal regulations. Key responsibilities of the Environmental Unit include the following:

- Define stormwater quality issues in coordination with the PE and the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator;
- Identify receiving water bodies and their beneficial uses, 303(d) listed water bodies, Total Maximum Daily Loads (TMDLs), and project-related stormwater discharges;
- Prepare the Preliminary Environmental Assessment Report (PEAR);
- Evaluate potential water quality impacts to the receiving waters in coordination with the PE and the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator;
- Prepare the WQAR, or equivalent document as required;
- Determine TMDL compliance requirements;
- Provide input to the PE regarding information to be incorporated into the SWDR; and
- Make recommendations to the PDT regarding the avoidance, minimization and mitigation measures relating to compliance with CEQA.

This functional unit is known by various names in different districts, including, but not limited to, Environmental, Environmental Planning, Environmental Analysis, Environmental Engineering, and Environmental Oversight. A representative from this unit is a required member of the PDT.

The PEAR is prepared by the Environmental Unit. The purpose of the PEAR is to determine whether there are any potentially significant environmental issues that could affect the viability of the project alternatives. The PEAR identifies the environmental documents and supporting technical studies that would be required in subsequent project development processes to address potential environmental impacts. Based upon the potential for significant impacts, the PEAR identifies whether a CEQA Initial Study or Environmental Impact Report is needed and/or whether a NEPA Environmental Assessment or Environmental Impact Statement is needed. Potential water quality impacts are identified in the PEAR.

The WQAR is typically prepared by the Environmental Unit. The WQAR, or equivalent document, at different levels of detail describes existing water quality conditions, identifies potential project impacts, and proposes avoidance and minimization measures. The WQAR should identify projects in TMDL areas and applicable elements of the Department's TMDL Compliance Plan. Additional information that needs to be in the WQAR includes, but is not limited to: surface water buffer 303d, STGAs, ASBS, and waste discharge requirements. This information will be utilized by Design, Construction, and Maintenance staff to develop and implement specific BMPs to mitigate any potential water quality impacts associated with stormwater discharges from the proposed project. The information from the PEAR and the WQAR will be utilized in the development of the SWDR and associated checklists.

The District Hazardous Waste Unit is usually resourced under the District's Environmental Unit. This unit is responsible for investigating the presence of ADL soil and other potentially hazardous materials with respect to any future disposal and handling; Waste Discharge Requirements (WDRs) issued from the RWQCB; and ability to reuse materials within or outside the project limits. The ADL Agreement with DTSC allows for reuse of regulated soil under specific conditions. The PE, District/Regional NPDES Coordinator, and the District Hazardous Waste Unit should coordinate on items such as notification procedures under the ADL Agreement and possibility of WDRs, as well as stabilization of cover materials at reuse locations, distance from groundwater and culverts, placement of irrigation systems, and landscape design as it relates to cover thickness.

Surveys

The District's Surveys Unit are responsible for the implementation of Caltrans policies and procedures concerning surveys and for conducting surveys.

Survey needs should be evaluated and identified early in the project initiation process and throughout the entire project development process when needed. During a project evaluation, areas are identified as possible locations for Treatment BMPs. Surveys should be developed for these areas. After the first evaluation of survey needs, the PE should submit the initial survey request accompanied by a strip map. The extent of the survey will depend on the type of project, existing information available, sensitivity of the area of potential effect, and the number of viable project alternatives. The Right-of-Way Branch and the Environmental Unit require accurate mapping in order to properly carry out their functions, so their needs must be carefully considered when evaluating surveys. District Right-of-Way Engineers provide the final delineation of the limits of State land ownership. If questions arise about the boundaries between the State and private landowners, Right-of-Way Engineering can be contacted to assist in property line determination.

Right-of-Way

The District's Right-of-Way Branch is responsible for the implementation of Caltrans policies, programs and procedures concerning RW and utility considerations and compliance with state and federal laws and regulations. This function consists of various branches in the districts under a District Division Chief for Right-of-Way, except for the Right-of-Way Engineering Unit which generally reports to another District Division Chief.

Because most transportation projects in California require RW, utility easements, rights of entry, or some other RW activity, the project development process requires close coordination between the PE, the PM, and representatives from the Right-of-Way Engineering Unit and the Right-of-Way Branch to determine schedules and cost estimates, and to assure the acquisition of all necessary property rights.

The Right-of-Way Branch provides valuable information at the initiation of studies. Once the project limits have been tentatively determined, property ownership maps can be developed by the Right-of-Way Engineering Unit. Preliminary RW estimates are required to properly develop and analyze project alternatives, including Treatment BMPs. The RW data sheet should be requested from the Right-of-Way functional unit as soon as possible after project alternatives have been developed. The RW data sheet is prepared during the PID process and updated throughout the Project Approval/ Environmental Document (PA/ED) process, and is a required attachment to the PSR, the PR, and most other project initiation and project approval documents. The information in the right-of-way data sheet is vital to the project development process since it details all types of parcel information and the right-of-way estimate. The information from the RW data sheet is also used to evaluate the feasibility of acquiring additional land for the incorporation of Treatment BMPs or drainage easements.

Adequate mapping and a realistic project scope are required. A representative of the Right-of-Way Branch is a required member of the PDT.

Materials and Geotechnical

Materials and geotechnical information are required for almost all projects, usually related to pavement design, maximum slope gradients, culvert selection, corrosion studies, and material sites. The District Materials Unit is involved throughout the project development process. Requests are made of the District's Materials Unit to update materials information after the project has been initiated. The District Materials Unit provides a Materials Report for all projects that involve any of the following components:

- Pavement structure recommendations and/or pavement studies;
- Culverts (or other drainage materials); or
- Corrosion studies.

If projects are located in areas where there are concerns such as gross slope stability, foundation problems, seismic, percolation, etc., preliminary evaluation should be made by Division of Engineering Services (DES) Geotechnical Design unit. After the project has been initiated, requests should be directed to the DES Geotechnical Design unit to provide geotechnical information such as side slope recommendations, slide locations, etc. For projects implementing permanent stormwater treatment measures, percolation tests or information regarding the infiltration rate of native soil or fill and seasonal high groundwater should be requested as early as possible. It is essential that sufficient geotechnical information be developed so that all viable project alternatives are evaluated at all phases of the project development process. If a project includes new slope ratios steeper than 2:1 (h:v), then a Geotechnical Design Report should be prepared. Projects including slopes between 4:1 and 2:1 (h:v) should be coordinated with DES Geotechnical Design unit.

Geotechnical Services either prepares or approves a Geotechnical Design Report for all projects incorporating new cut slopes or embankments steeper than 2:1 (h:v), retaining walls, groundwater studies, slide prone areas with erosive soils, and any other studies involving geotechnical investigations and engineering geology including infiltration testing.

The PE uses the recommendations from these units to develop and analyze alternatives and estimate costs for use in project initiation and approval documents, and to prepare estimates, plans and specifications for both new construction and rehabilitation projects.

It is essential that enough materials information is available so that all viable project alternatives are evaluated at all phases of the project development process.

Hydraulics

The District Division of Design is responsible for hydraulic design procedures. The Design unit that performs the project drainage design is responsible for the implementation of these policies and procedures. District organizations differ, but for the purpose of this document, it is assumed that the PE is responsible for ensuring that proper project drainage is designed and that project stormwater treatment requirements are met. This may require active participation in, or the review of, the design by the Hydraulics Unit. District Hydraulic Units may perform a variety of drainage related analysis and design. See Caltrans HDM Topic 802.1 (4)(g) for a listing of recommended activities. The Hydraulics Unit may conduct the rapid stability assessment (RSA) of stream crossings within a project but does this with the assistance of other functional units. If a level 2 or 3 stability assessment is needed after the RSA, then the Hydraulics Unit would produce it.

Detailed drainage design, such as accurate sizing and location of the storm drain system (e.g., culverts, inlets, Treatment BMPs), and roadway drainage, does not begin until after selection of the preferred alternative and approval of a project. However, the Hydraulics Unit should be involved during the entire project planning process. Their input in the project initiation process is invaluable, particularly in recommending facility types and estimating costs of large facilities.

Following project approval, a Drainage Report is typically prepared by the Hydraulics Unit. This report covers rainfall, runoff, existing flood records, gauging stations, debris, and any other pertinent drainage information. This report is transmitted to the PE so that pertinent drainage design can be started. The information in the Drainage Report is also used to evaluate and design stormwater BMPs.

The Hydraulics Unit should also be involved in the environmental studies. Early coordination between the two functional groups is important. Many projects, by necessity, will include water quality enhancement features or encroach on wetlands, floodplains, etc. When floodplain encroachment is required, the Hydraulics Unit should be involved in preparing the technical information. Historical drainage maps often depict the extent of the encroachment and help determine which project alternatives should be considered. Documentation of these features must be included in the DPR.

Construction

The Construction Unit is responsible for administering contracts for the construction of projects by contractors to ensure that the final products are in accordance with the plans and specifications, and to resolve any problems that may arise in the process. The Construction Unit should review the project and BMP alternatives to determine if they are biddable and buildable. During environmental and project studies, the Construction Unit should be involved in the determination of measures to reduce or mitigate construction impacts.

Throughout the project development process, the Construction Unit should review the project plans and specifications for such things as constructability, construction safety, logical staging, the analysis of the number of working days, supplemental funds, and special provisions usability. Also, the Construction Unit provides advice and concurrence to the PE for strategy, development, and inclusion of Construction Site BMPs into the project plans. Construction concurrence with the Temporary Construction Site BMP strategy should be documented in the SWDR.

Prior to start of construction, the PE, along with other involved district units, will go over the project with the RE. The review at this phase will aid in describing reasons for design decisions and commitments such as; RW obligations, signing and traffic handling, materials sites, selected material, foundation treatment, potential slides, environmental commitments, drainage, potential maintenance issues, erosion control, public notification, proprietary materials, special considerations in contract special provisions, etc.

On almost all construction projects, developments in the field will necessitate some design changes. For early resolution of these changes, the RE, the PM, and the PE may coordinate with other functional units to accommodate these changes without affecting scope, schedule, and budget. After completion of the construction contract, the PM is responsible for gathering the construction contract records from the RE and the project planning and design data from the PE to put in the Project History File.

Maintenance

The Maintenance Unit will be responsible for maintaining the highway and any new infrastructure, including permanent BMPs, once the project is complete. It is essential that the Maintenance Unit be involved in the project development process from conception through construction. Maintenance is required to sign the Long Form SWDR (Appendix E) at the conclusion of the PID, the PA/ED, and the PS&E phases.

The Maintenance Unit field representatives have a unique insight into local maintenance factors, operational and safety concerns. This insight must be utilized in the project development process. Coordination with maintenance staff during the project development process can minimize future maintenance problems and the potential for future lawsuits and can optimize maintenance-related treatment performance.

The Maintenance Unit should review all major engineering reports such as the PSR, DPR, PR, etc. and the draft Contract Plans. The review shall include the evaluation of all proposed BMPs, including the maintainability of those BMPs. Maintenance concurrence must be obtained on any new slope steeper than 2:1 (h:v). Maintenance Units should also participate in the preparation of maintenance agreements (setting maintenance control limits).

Typical Maintenance Unit involvement would be to comment on features such as the following:

- Drainage patterns – particularly known areas of flooding, debris, etc.;
- Shoulder backing material;
- Stability of slopes and roadbed;
- Help determine if the project can be built and maintained economically;
- Possible material borrow or spoil sites;
- Concerns of the local residents;
- Existing and potential erosion problems;
- Facilities within the RW that would affect alternative designs;
- Special problems such as deer crossings, endangered species, vector control, etc.;
- Traffic operational problems such as unreported accidents, etc.;
- Facilities that are safe to access and maintain;

- Providing concurrence on any slopes steeper than 2:1 (h:v);
- Known environmentally sensitive areas;
- Vegetation management areas and wildfire hazard areas;
- Potential staging areas;
- Snow storage areas; and
- Frequency of traction sand, salt and brine use and estimate of quantity applied annually.

Landscape Architecture

District Landscape Architecture is responsible for the implementation of Caltrans policies, programs, procedures, and standards for most aspects of highway planting, highway planting restoration, replacement planting, revegetation, vegetative erosion control, water conservation, safety roadside rest areas, vista points, and scenic corridors. All landscape work will be designed to follow the Landscape Architecture Practice Act.

The Landscape Architect should evaluate the vegetation strategy for all DPP BMPs (especially slope surface protection) proposed in the project plans. The District Landscape Architect (DLA) typically prepares an erosion control plan for disturbed soil areas as determined by the PDT. The DLA supports development of the predicted soil losses and sediment delivery rates (RUSLE2) calculations to meet or exceed pre-construction conditions to obtain project NOT as required. The DLA (or another licensed professional) will also be tasked with preparing the pre-and post-project site RUSLE2 calculations for TMDL specific monitoring requirements during project construction.

The DLA is also responsible to ensure the project is compliant with the California Department of Water Resources Model Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance (MWELO) or the local agency Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance (WELO). The DLA must ensure compliance with the most stringent of the two Ordinances. The designer should ensure that all specific design elements required in the local WELO are shown on the drawings and provide any locally required calculations, forms, and/or notes. WELO and MWELO are included in the Caltrans Permit. Guidance on water conservation and the MWELO is available at:

https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/lap-plan-or-design-a-state-hwy-project/lap-f-irrigation-design/lap-mwelo

Additionally, several approved permanent BMPs require the establishment of vegetation. The DLA shall provide recommendations for vegetation establishment when these BMPs are considered. Projects incorporating new slopes steeper than 4:1 (h:v) must be approved by a licensed civil engineer and the DLA for approval of the vegetation strategy and soil amendments to support vegetation. The SWDR is the document by which the DLA gives concurrence for vegetation on slopes greater than 4:1 and includes a description of the permanent erosion control strategy. Landscape Architecture is required to sign the Long Form SWDR (Appendix E) at the conclusion of the PID, the PA/ED, and the PS&E phases.

3 Best Management Practice Overview

3.1 Introduction

This section of the Project Planning and Design Guide (PPDG) provides Project Engineers (PEs) with background information on the process and procedures for evaluating project site conditions to determine the need for incorporating Best Management Practices (BMPs) into projects. The following sub-sections describe pollutants of concern and introduce the various approved BMPs that can be used by PEs.

3.2 Identification of Water Quality Requirements for Project Planning Purposes

The appropriate selection of BMPs requires the PE to understand the process used to identify water quality requirements and pollutants of concern for specific water bodies. The Regional Water Quality Control Board (RWQCB) plays an important role in identifying the pollutants of concern. Water quality standards, Clean Water Act (CWA) Section 303(d) list, Total Maximum Daily Loads (TMDLs) and Basin Plans developed by the RWQCBs are important references for the identification of pollutants that need to be addressed.

The process of identifying water quality requirements includes close coordination with the District Environmental Unit and the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator. The PE initiates the process of compiling information regarding water quality requirements as identified in the checklists provided in Appendix E. The Environmental Unit and the PE then exchange the information necessary to (1) prepare documents regarding the assessment of water quality impacts, (2) determine whether Treatment BMPs should be considered, and (3) select and design BMPs, which is the responsibility of the PE. This information exchange continues throughout the Project Initiation Document (PID), Project Approval/Environmental Document (PA/ED), and the Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) processes. The Environmental Unit uses the shared information to prepare a Water Quality Assessment Report (WQAR) or equivalent document. The WQARs are technical water quality assessment documents required to support the Environmental Document. The PE uses the shared information from the WQAR to complete the Stormwater Data Report (SWDR) as described in Appendix E.

3.2.1 State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB) and Regional Water Quality Control Boards (RWQCBs)

The mission of the SWRCB is to preserve, enhance and restore the quality of California's water resources, and ensure their proper allocation and efficient use for the benefit of present and future generations. The California Water Code divides the state of California into nine regions, based on major drainage areas. Nine RWQCBs act to protect water quality within these regions. The nine RWQCBs and their offices are:

- Region 1 - North Coast (Santa Rosa);
- Region 2 - San Francisco Bay (Oakland);
- Region 3 - Central Coast (San Luis Obispo);
- Region 4 - Los Angeles (Los Angeles);
- Region 5 - Central Valley (Redding);

- Region 5 - Central Valley (Fresno);
- Region 5 - Central Valley (Sacramento);
- Region 6 - Lahontan (Victorville);
- Region 6 - Lahontan (South Lake Tahoe);
- Region 7 - Colorado River Basin (Palm Desert);
- Region 8 - Santa Ana (Riverside); and
- Region 9 - San Diego (San Diego).

Figure 3-1 is a map showing the RWQCB jurisdictions and Caltrans Districts.

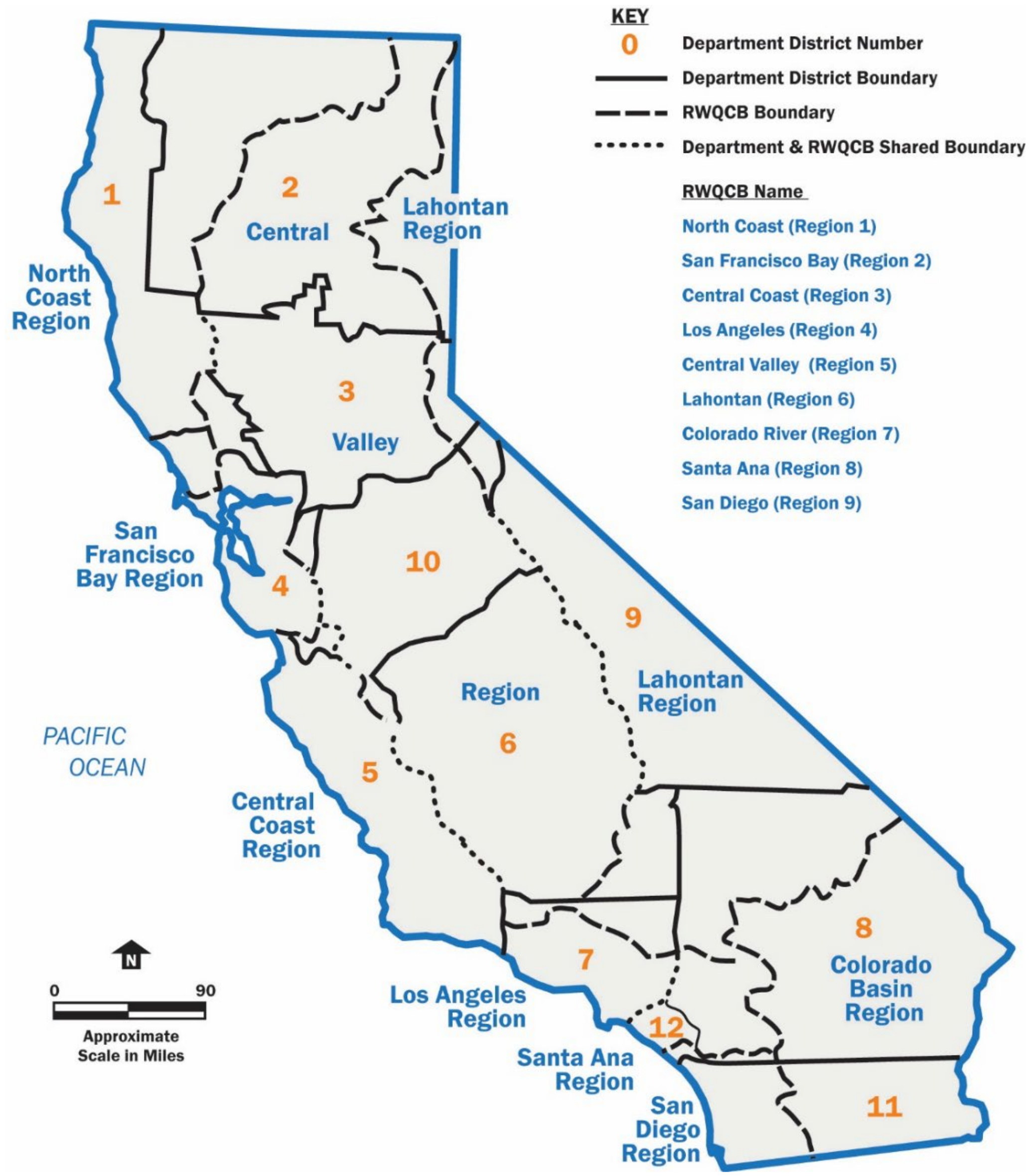


Figure 3-1. Map of California with RWQCB and District Boundaries

In protecting water quality, each RWQCB:

- Adopts a region-specific Water Quality Control Plan or Basin Plan that contains water quality standards specific to the region's waters;
- Issues Waste Discharge Requirements (WDRs) and water quality monitoring and reporting programs that implement the statewide policy and regulations of the SWRCB along with the region-specific water quality standards specified in the Basin Plan; and
- Implements enforceable orders against violations of statewide and region-specific requirements.

3.2.2 Resources for Identifying Pollution Control Requirements

Proper selection and design of BMPs require an understanding of the applicable pollution control requirements. PEs should coordinate with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinators to ensure that all relevant water quality requirements are identified. Water quality requirements come from a variety of sources, including, but not limited to:

- RWQCB Basin Plans;
- TMDLs and 303(d) lists;
- WDRs; and
- Water Quality Certification under Section 401 of the CWA.

The following sub-sections provide a brief description of these sources of pollution control requirements. While the PE normally obtains this information from the Environmental Unit, PEs should be aware that Basin Plans, TMDLs, and 303(d) listings can change over time and that it may be necessary to reconfirm the pollution control requirements at different phases in the project development process.

3.2.2.1 Regional Water Quality Control Board Basin Plans

Each RWQCB has developed a Basin Plan to identify designated beneficial uses and water quality objectives for their jurisdictional regions. The Basin Plans are available online by accessing the SWRCB website at https://www.waterboards.ca.gov/ and selecting the link for the appropriate RWQCB. Each individual RWQCB web page includes a link to access the corresponding Basin Plan.

A comprehensive Geographic Information System (GIS) database of all of the beneficial uses, water quality objectives, 303(d) listed waterbodies, watershed boundaries, watershed data, Caltrans facility locations, and other information can be accessed using the Water Quality Planning Tool available at:

http://svctenvims.dot.ca.gov/wqpt/wqpt.aspx

3.2.2.2 Total Maximum Daily Loads (TMDLs) and 303(d) Lists

Section 303(d) of the 1972 Federal Water Pollution Control Act requires priority rankings for water bodies for which the beneficial uses are listed as impaired by pollution, and also requires the establishment of TMDLs to protect water quality of these impaired water bodies from specific pollutants. In response to this requirement, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) has approved a 303(d) list for each state and identified specific pollutants causing impairment of specific receiving waters.

3.2.2.3 401 Certifications and Waste Discharge Requirements (WDRs)

Under the CWA, any project requiring a federal license or permit that may result in a discharge to a Water of the U.S. must obtain a 401 Certification, which certifies that the project will be in compliance with State water quality standards. The most common federal permit triggering 401 Certification is CWA Section 404 permits issued by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (Corps). In addition, the SWRCB has pre-certified some activities under some of the “Nationwide” 404 Permits issued by the Corps, but these instances should be validated with the RWQCB.

In some cases, the RWQCB may have specific concerns with discharges associated with a project. As a result, the RWQCB may issue a set of requirements, known as WDRs under the State Water Code that define activities, such as inclusion of specific features, effluent limitations, monitoring, and plan submittals that are to be implemented for protecting or benefiting water quality. WDRs can be issued to address both permanent and temporary discharges of a project. It is most common to issue WDRs in conjunction with obtaining a 401 Certification under the CWA.

3.2.2.4 Construction General Permit, Attachment H

The CGP Order WQ 2022-0057-DWQ, NPDES No. CAS000002, Attachment H contains TMDL specific requirements for water bodies throughout the state. The requirements are water body and pollutant specific. Specific requirements are for monitoring and modeling specific pollutants during construction in TMDL watersheds.

Individual requirements for projects need to be identified to ensure that adequate resources are available for pre-construction modeling and modeling/monitoring during construction.

3.2.3 Stormwater Documents

The WQAR, or equivalent document, and the SWDR are the two project-specific stormwater documents prepared by a district. The District Environmental Unit typically prepares the WQAR, while the PE prepares the SWDR. At the PA/ED phase, these documents are prepared concurrently, and require coordination between the PE, the Environmental staff preparing the WQAR or equivalent document, and the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator. WQAR, or equivalent document, will identify applicable stormwater regulations and potential stormwater impacts to be addressed. The WQAR also identifies the receiving water, evaluates the existing surface water quality, identifies potential project-related stormwater discharges, provides a pollutant source assessment for the project site, and evaluates the potential project-related stormwater impacts on the receiving water quality. The WQAR, or equivalent document, is typically prepared as support documentation during the California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA) and National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) environmental review phase of a project.

The SWDR documents the relevant stormwater design decisions made regarding project compliance with the Caltrans Permit, the Construction General Permit (CGP), and additional stormwater quality requirements (see Section 1.4). The preliminary information in the SWDR prepared during the PID phase will be reviewed, updated, confirmed, and if required, revised in the SWDR prepared for the later phases of the project. The information contained in the SWDR and the WQAR, or equivalent document may be used to make more informed decisions regarding the selection of BMPs and/or recommended avoidance, minimization, or mitigation measures to address water quality impacts for CEQA compliance. **The SWDR shall not be referenced in the Environmental Document or the WQAR**.

3.2.4 Targeted Design Constituents (TDC)

A Targeted Design Constituent (TDC) is a pollutant that has been identified during Departmental runoff characterization studies to be discharging with a load or concentration that commonly exceeds allowable standards and which is considered treatable by currently available Department-approved Treatment BMPs. The TDC approach is the Department's statewide design guidance to address the primary pollutants of concern.

TDCs are: phosphorus; nitrogen; total copper; dissolved copper; total lead; dissolved lead; total zinc; dissolved zinc; sediments; and general metals [unspecified metals]. These TDCs and other pollutants of concern are discussed in detail in the following sections.

3.2.5 Pollutants of Concern

Selection of BMPs requires an understanding of the types of pollutants that the BMPs are designed to remove. Brief descriptions of commonly encountered pollutants are provided in the following sub-sections. Table 3-1 provides a list of pollutants and the types of Treatment BMPs that can be used to reduce the discharge of the pollutants. This list covers all TMDL or 303d listed pollutants that Caltrans will likely encounter. The table should be used along with the T-1 checklist to select the appropriate BMPs. Use Matrix A for general purpose pollutant removal if a pollutant of concern (POC) is not specifically listed when considering Treatment BMPs.

3.2.5.1 Solids (Suspended and Dissolved)

The amount of solids in water is defined by standard testing procedures. Total solids in a water sample is the residue left in a vessel after evaporation and drying in an oven; it includes Total Suspended Solids (TSS) the portion retained by a filter and Total Dissolved Solids (TDS) the portion that passes through the filter. Discharges containing solids (suspended and dissolved) may negatively affect the quality of waters and therefore are used as indicators of water quality and regulatory compliance with NPDES permits, usually shown as (mg/L). **Selenium** and **chlorides** may be found as dissolved solids in stormwater runoff.

Selenium is a naturally occurring mineral in ancient sea bed geologic formations, oil extraction, and agricultural runoff. Selenium is an essential mineral in low concentrations but can be toxic at high concentrations. Caltrans is listed in TMDLs but is not a significant source in most watersheds. The best BMPs for most locations are source control and stabilization of eroding soils as these are pollution prevention methods that prevent selenium from entering stormwater. Once in stormwater it is difficult and expensive to remove selenium.

Solids can be present in the water column in a dissolved phase (TDS) or a suspended phase (TSS). In general, suspended solids are considered a pollutant when they significantly exceed natural concentrations and have a detrimental effect on the beneficial uses designated for the receiving water. Possible sources of TSS from Caltrans facilities include natural erosion, failed slopes, runoff from construction sites, and other operations where the surface of the ground is disturbed. In addition, increased runoff from new impervious surfaces can accelerate the process of channel erosion, which in turn can increase TSS (and TDS) in runoff.

When selecting Treatment BMPs for these pollutants, use Appendix E, Matrix A for general purpose pollutant removal and source control BMPs.

Table 3-1. Pollutants of Concern from Typical Highway Runoff and Applicable Treatment BMPs

	DPPIA	Biofiltration Systems	Infiltration Devices	Detention Devices	Dry Weather Flow Diversion[1]	Full-Capture Trash Devices[11]	Multi-Chambered Treatment Train	Media Filters[9]	Wet Basin	Traction Sand Traps	Bioretention	OGFC
Total Suspended Solids	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Total Dissolved Solids[7]	✓		✓		✓							
Nutrients	✓	✓[4]	✓	✓[4]	✓		✓	✓[2]	✓[4]			✓[2]
Pesticides[5]	✓	✓[4,5]	✓	✓[5]	✓		✓[5]	✓[5]	✓		✓[5]	✓[5]
Particulate Metals	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓		✓	✓
Dissolved Metals	✓[4]	✓[3]	✓[4]		✓			✓[3]				
Pathogens and Bacteria	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓				✓		✓	
Litter/Trash[10]			✓[6]	✓[6]	✓	✓	✓	✓[6]	✓	✓	✓[6]	
Biochemical Oxygen Demand[8]	✓	✓	✓		✓			✓			✓	
Turbidity	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓		✓	✓	✓
Temperature	✓[5]	✓[5]	✓[5]	✓[5]				✓[5]	✓[5]		✓[5]	✓[5]
Mercury	✓	✓[5]	✓	✓[5]	✓						✓[5]	✓[5]

[1] *Dry Weather Flow Diversions address non-stormwater flows only.*

[2] *Phosphorus and Nitrogen for the Austin Sand Filter; Phosphorus only for the Delaware Sand Filter and OGFC.*

[3] *Dissolved metals vary see T-1 for appropriate BMP selection.*

[4] *Soil needs to have adequate infiltration capacity for some pollutants of concern, see T-1 Checklist.*

[5] *Treatment BMPs are listed based on their effectiveness at removing sediment.*

[6] *Treatment BMP is eligible for certification as a Multi Benefit Trash Treatment System.*

[7] *Total dissolved solids may include Chlorides and Selenium.*

[8] *BOD is typically used to assess water quality and how it will affect dissolved oxygen levels*

[9] *Media filters can use alternative media, which may vary pollutant removal (sand, compost, activated alumina, or others); see guidance document.*

[10] *For many Treatment BMPs, trash effectiveness requires addition of screen that can capture 5mm and larger.*

[11] *Full-Capture Trash Devices include Gross Solids Removal Devices, Trash Nets, Capture Housing, and Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems.*

3.2.5.2 Nutrients

Excessive inputs of nutrients such as phosphorus and nitrogen to receiving waters can over-stimulate the growth of aquatic plants to the detriment of other aquatic life and some beneficial uses of the receiving water. Nutrients generally have more adverse effects in water bodies with slow flushing rates, such as slow moving streams and lakes. Also, nutrients attached to suspended solids in stormwater runoff can cause problems where they settle out downstream.

Sources of phosphorus that may be present in highway runoff include tree leaves, surfactants and emulsifiers, and natural sources such as the mineralized organic matter in soils. Phosphorus may be present in stormwater discharges as dissolved or particulate orthophosphate, polyphosphate, or organic phosphorous.

Potential sources of nitrogen in highway runoff include atmospheric fallout, nitrite discharges from automobile exhausts, fertilizer runoff, and natural sources such as mineralized soil organic matter. Nitrogen may be present in stormwater discharges as nitrate, nitrite, ammonia/ammonium, or organic nitrogen.

Nutrients is a general pollutant category that covers a number of different elemental chemical forms, some of which require different BMP strategies. For example, Total Phosphorous can be controlled through pollution prevention and sediment control BMPs. Other types N in Nitrate form (NO_2) require source control as they are highly mobile in ground water and difficult to remove in storm water. Total Nutrients can be removed using Caltrans approved Treatment BMPs. Dissolved nutrients can be removed, but not as effectively as the total forms of nutrients. To select the most appropriate Treatment BMP, follow the T-1 Checklist process to select the most effective BMP based on the POC.

3.2.5.3 Pesticides (incl. Herbicides)

A pesticide is a chemical agent designed to control pest organisms. The most common forms of pesticides are organic chemicals designed to target insects (insecticides) or vascular plants (herbicides). Pesticides have been repeatedly detected in surface waters and precipitation in the United States. The main transport mechanism for these pollutants is through fine sediment. Once the contaminated fine sediment enters the water body, pesticides are transported from targeted applications to other parts of the environment. As the use of pesticides has increased, concerns about the potential adverse effects of pesticides on the environment and human health have also increased. The Department does not use diazinon or Dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane (DDT).

Pesticides (e.g., organochlorines) are addressed by controlling erosion and sediment discharges. When treatment is required in these TMDL areas, use sediment as the POC and follow Matrix A for general purpose pollutant removal.

3.2.5.4 Metals (Particulate and Dissolved)

Metals in stormwater runoff may be in a dissolved phase or a particulate form adsorbed to suspended solids. Some Treatment BMPs are effective for removing specific particulate metals, but not for removing dissolved metals.

Possible sources of metals in highway runoff include the combustion products from fossil fuels (e.g., lead), the wearing of brake pads (e.g., copper (total and dissolved), cadmium), galvanized materials (e.g., zinc), and the corrosion of metals, paints (e.g., silver, lead, chromium, zinc). Metals can also reach receiving waters through the natural weathering of rock and soil erosion.

Metals are addressed by controlling erosion and sediment discharge. When treatment is required, follow the T-1 process to select the most effective BMP based on the POC.

3.2.5.5 Pathogens and Bacteria

Pathogenic microorganisms including viruses, bacteria, protozoa, and helminth worms are of concern in urban stormwater runoff. The direct measurement of specific pathogens in water is extremely difficult. For that reason, the coliform group of organisms is commonly used as an indicator of the potential presence of pathogens of fecal origin.

Receiving waters are often adversely affected by stormwater runoff, dry-weather runoff, onsite wastewater, and animal wastes which may contain bacteria. Sources of total and fecal coliforms in stormwater runoff are ubiquitous (e.g., soil particles, droppings of wild and domestic animals). Human sources could include illegal sewer connections, seepage from septic tanks, encampments occupied by persons experiencing homelessness, and illegal dumping into stormwater systems by Recreational Vehicles, garbage trucks, etc.

Bacteria are first addressed by controlling non-stormwater runoff. When treatment is required, follow Matrix A for general purpose pollutant removal.

3.2.5.6 Litter/Trash

Trash in stormwater is defined as manufactured objects made from paper, plastic, cardboard, glass, metal, etc. Trash consisting of litter and particles of litter that are retained by a 5-mm mesh screen are sometimes referred to as “gross pollutants,” This definition excludes sediments, oil and grease, and vegetation. Trash is quantified by 24-hour air-dried volume and weight measurements. Trash within stormwater is considered to be a significant problem in areas with a trash TMDL and in STGAs.

Trash in surface waters can inhibit the growth of aquatic vegetation, harm aquatic organisms by ingestion or entanglement, convey other pollutants, such as toxic substances, and cause aesthetic problems on shorelines. Trash in water bodies can threaten the health of people that use them for activities such as wading, swimming or fishing. Some trash items such as containers or tires can pond water that supports mosquito production and associated risks of diseases which have negative impacts beyond a particular waterbody.

Trash can be addressed using an approved full-capture trash device such as a Gross Solids Removal Device (GSRD), Trash Net, Capture Housing, or a Multi Benefit Trash Treatment System. Institutional controls such as street sweeping and anti-litter education and outreach programs may also be implemented.

3.2.5.7 Biochemical Oxygen Demand

According to American Public Health Association (APHA) Standard Methods, “The Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD) is an empirical test in which standardized laboratory procedures are used to determine the relative oxygen requirements of wastewaters, effluents, and polluted waters. The test measures the molecular oxygen utilized during a specified incubation period for the biochemical degradation of organic material (carbonaceous demand) and the oxygen used to oxidize inorganic material”. BOD concentrations are usually measured and regulated as BOD5 or Ultimate BOD, milligrams per liter (mg/L) as defined by the standard EPA methods and used as regulatory compliance in NPDES permits. High BOD values which are usually the result of organic contamination in discharges (e.g., stockpiles of vegetation and animal carcass, pump stations, fertilizers, waste water) can deplete the dissolved oxygen levels in receiving waters and therefore can negatively affect the beneficial uses. BOD is the first conventional pollutant listed in the CWA and referenced in many permits Caltrans receives. When treatment is required, follow Matrix A for general purpose pollutant removal.

3.2.5.8 Turbidity

Turbidity is the measure of water clarity, measured as the amount of light that is scattered and absorbed rather than transmitted. “Turbidity in water is caused by suspended and colloidal matter such as clay, silt, finely divided organic and inorganic matter, and plankton and other microscopic organisms” (APHA Standard Methods), usually shown as nephelometric turbidity units (NTU). Turbid waters are indicators that pollutants are present, as such, turbidity is a common monitoring requirement of NPDES permits to determine compliance, usually in relation to background levels.

Turbidity is best addressed by controlling sources of sediment through erosion and sediment source control. When treatment is required, follow the T-1 process to select the most effective BMP based on Sediment as the POC.

3.2.5.9 Temperature

Water temperature can be negatively influenced by changes to riparian habitat resulting in reduced shade coverage and flow conditions of streams. When water temperature is elevated 5-degrees F beyond natural receiving water temperature, then thermal pollution is considered to have occurred. Temperature changes can be due to reductions in stream base flow (especially reduction in groundwater contribution), contributions of non-stormwater sources, and channel geometry (i.e., flow spread resulting in thin depth). The removal of riparian vegetation and increased sedimentation can be a cause of temperature changes, especially in streams and creeks; however, rivers and larger waters are usually affected by point sources, such as discharges of cooling water from industrial operations.

While Caltrans is commonly listed in temperature TMDLs, the major causes of the impairment are non-point sources such as losses of riparian vegetation and land use changes throughout the watershed. Caltrans generally has limited control of these causes. One commonly listed contributor to temperature impairment is increased sedimentation which can be caused by widening of channels and decreased stream depth which, in most cases, Caltrans is a minor contributor. When treatment is required, follow Appendix E, Matrix A for general purpose pollutant removal.

3.2.5.10 Mercury

Past mining practices, notably during the California Gold Rush, used mercury to increase gold recovery. Mercury was widely used in hydraulic gold mining and other mining operations; consequently, mercury is found in sediments near and within aquatic environments from this past practice or from naturally occurring mercury. Elevated mercury, in the form of methylmercury, within receiving waters can lead to increased bioaccumulation of mercury in fish and other aquatic organisms. When humans and predators repeatedly consume fish with elevated mercury, then toxicity risks leading to health impacts or mortality can occur.

Methylmercury formation in aquatic systems is usually caused by bacteria that thrive in low oxygen conditions. Streams or wetland sediments containing elemental mercury can undergo increased methylation when waters are stagnant or low in oxygen, especially over lengthy periods of time. The bacteria carrying methylmercury are consumed by plankton and macroinvertebrates, which are then consumed by fish and then ultimately predators and humans at the top of the food chain, which can increase the concentration through bioaccumulation.

For naturally occurring mercury, the impairment is commonly connected to increased sedimentation and turbidity therefore mercury can be addressed by controlling erosion and sediment discharge. Mercury is also commonly found in stream sediments, where avoiding the disturbance of stream sediments is usually the most effective BMP. When mercury is the POC, use the T-1 Checklist and select Treatment BMPs that are effective at removing sediment and TSS. However, there are specific notations in the T-1 Checklist that require the avoidance of certain BMPs that may create conditions leading to the methylation of mercury. (e.g., Delaware Media Filters, Multi-Chamber Treatment Train (MCTT), or other Treatment Best Management Practices (TBMPs) with permanent pools of water that can be anaerobic).

3.2.5.11 Polychlorinated Biphenyl (PCB)

Polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB) is a synthetic organic chemical compound of chlorine attached to biphenyl. PCBs which were widely used as dielectric and coolant fluids in transformers, cutting fluids for machining operations, carbonless copy paper, heat transfer fluids, and other industrial uses. Due to PCBs' environmental toxicity and classification as a persistent organic pollutant, PCB production was banned by the United States Congress in 1979. PCBs are persistent in the environment and may be encountered from historic uses.

Pollution prevention through source control is the most effective BMP. When treatment is required, follow Matrix A for general purpose pollutant removal.

3.3 Best Management Practices

As used in this document, the term best management practice (BMP) refers to operational activities or physical devices that control, prevent, remove, or reduce pollution and minimize potential impacts upon receiving waters. Accordingly, the term BMP refers to both structural and nonstructural (institutional) controls that have direct effects on the release, transport, or discharge of pollutants.

Throughout the project development process, the PE is to incorporate BMPs to address impacts to stormwater quality and to fulfill permit requirements. The Caltrans Permit emphasizes Low Impact Development (LID) practices. LID is a Green Infrastructure stormwater site design and stormwater management strategy aimed at maintaining or restoring the natural hydrologic functions of a site that is being developed to achieve natural resource protection objectives. LID employs a variety of natural and engineered features that reduce the rate of runoff, filter pollutants out of runoff, and facilitate the infiltration of water into the ground. Caltrans prioritizes the use of these types of BMPs in the Treatment BMP consideration process (see Checklist T-1, Part 1 in Appendix E).

Green Infrastructure is an overarching community wide approach to stormwater management that provides areas for water to soak into the ground, or evaporate back into the air, rather than forming runoff. A Green Infrastructure approach to stormwater management may implement LID site design techniques to capture rainwater as close to where it falls as possible and let that water soak back into the ground among other strategies. More information is available in DIB-94, Complete Street and Green Street Guidance.

The Caltrans SWMP identifies permanent and temporary BMPs that have been approved for statewide application and must be considered throughout the planning and project development process. Four categories of BMPs (DPP, Treatment, Construction Site, and Maintenance) are described in Table 3-2.

Table 3-2. BMP Categories, Descriptions and Responsible Divisions

BMP	Description	Responsible Division for BMP Implementation
Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) BMPs	Permanent soil stabilization and concentrated flow controls and slope protection systems, etc.	Design, Construction, and Maintenance
Treatment BMPs	Permanent treatment devices and facilities	Design, Construction, and Maintenance
Construction Site BMPs	Temporary soil stabilization and sediment control, non-stormwater management, waste management, etc.	Design and Construction
Maintenance BMPs	Litter pickup, drainage cleaning, street sweeping, etc.	Maintenance

DPP BMPs are source control BMPs used to prevent pollutants from entering stormwater. In addition, some DPPs have infiltration capabilities that can be applied towards treatment requirements. Treatment BMPs are used to remove pollutants from stormwater prior to discharge off-site. Construction Site BMPs are used to reduce pollutants from stormwater discharges as a result of construction activities. Maintenance BMPs are used to reduce pollutant discharges during highway maintenance and activities at maintenance facilities.

DPP BMPs and Treatment BMPs together form the permanent BMP strategy for projects. The permanent BMP strategy should be selected and designed to minimize project life-cycle maintenance costs and resources, while providing adequate site access and maximizing maintenance worker safety. Construction Site BMPs form the temporary BMP strategy for projects. Both DPP and Construction Site BMPs must be considered for every project. If the project site is subject to stormwater run-on flows from off-site sources, appropriate control measures must be implemented to convey the flows around or through the site. Construction Site BMPs should consider staging and other aspects of construction activities when developing the temporary BMP strategy for the project. Consideration for the implementation of permanent and temporary BMPs must begin in the planning process and continue through the project development process.

DPP BMPs, Treatment BMPs, and Construction Site BMPs are discussed in further detail in the following sub-sections and Appendices A through C of this document.

In addition to the above BMP categories, the PE must also be aware of, and address, non-stormwater discharges associated with a project (e.g., pumping stations, tunnel washing, spills). The PE should coordinate with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator if non-stormwater or other waste discharges are present and persistent.

When estimating the project planning costs, if BMPs are not eliminated from consideration due to siting or feasibility criteria, then the BMPs should be fully considered and documented in the SWDR. This practice ensures that adequate funds are budgeted to allow detailed design and construction of these BMPs.

3.3.1 Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) Best Management Practices

The DPP BMPs are permanent measures to reduce pollutant discharges (e.g., reduce erosion, manage non-stormwater discharges) after construction is completed. DPP BMPs are used as a strategy to minimize runoff, maximize infiltration, provide vegetation appropriate to the location, and reduce erosion.

The DPP BMPs that are to be incorporated, as appropriate, into the design of new facilities and reconstruction or expansion of existing facilities are listed in Table 3-3. Design guidelines for Design Pollution Prevention BMPs are included in Section 5 and Appendix A.

Table 3-3. Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) BMPs

Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) BMPs
Consideration of Downstream Effects Related to Potentially Increased Flow
Peak Flow Attenuation Devices
Reduction of Paved Surface (i.e., increase pervious area)
Soil Modification
Energy Dissipation Devices
Preservation of Existing Vegetation [1]
Concentrated Flow Conveyance Systems
Ditches, Berms, Dikes and Swales
Overside Drains, Downdrains, Paved Spillways
Channel Linings
Flared Culvert End Sections
Outlet Protection/Velocity Dissipation Devices
Slope/Surface Protection Systems
Vegetated Surfaces
Benching/Terracing, Slope Rounding, Reduce Gradients
Hard Surfaces

[1] *For all Caltrans projects, Caltrans will maximize vegetation-covered soil areas of a project.*

3.3.2 Treatment Best Management Practices

Treatment BMPs are permanent measures to improve stormwater quality after construction is completed. The BMPs listed in Table 3-4 are Caltrans approved Treatment BMPs. A strategy of BMP deployment has been developed to best meet water quality objectives using a prioritization process. Refer to Section 5 and the Checklist T-1, Part 1 for further information.

Table 3-4. Approved Treatment BMPs

Approved Treatment BMPs
Biofiltration Systems
Design Pollution Prevention Infiltration Areas (DPPIAs)
Infiltration Devices
Detention Devices
Traction Sand Traps
Dry Weather Flow Diversion
Full-Capture Trash Devices
Media Filters
Multi-Chamber Treatment Train [1]
Wet Basins [1]
Bioretention
Open Graded Friction Course (OGFC)
Porous Pavement (Non-Highway Facilities Only)

[1] Caltrans has found that other approved Treatment BMPs are equally effective and more sustainable due to lower life cycle costs and maintainability than MCTT and Wet Basins.

3.3.3 Construction Site Best Management Practices

Construction Site BMPs (also sometimes called temporary BMPs) are deployed during construction activities to reduce pollutants in stormwater discharges during construction. Table C-1 in Appendix C is a matrix of approved Construction Site BMPs that are consistent with the BMPs and control practices required under the CGP and the *Statewide Stormwater Management Plan* (SWMP). The Department's Construction Site BMPs are divided into six categories as shown in Table 3-5:

Table 3-5. Approved Construction Site BMP Categories

Approved Construction Site BMP Categories
Temporary Soil Stabilization
Temporary Sediment Control
Wind Erosion Control
Tracking Control
Non-Stormwater Management
Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control

The strategy used for implementing Construction Site BMPs depends on specific project conditions, anticipated construction operations, and staging. The level of detail and coordination in support of the estimate is different at each phase of the project. Construction Site BMPs are temporary and are expected to be removed at the end of the project except in cases when stabilization still needs to be achieved to prevent further erosion or when leaving in place is beneficial (e.g., fiber rolls and blankets that are biodegradable).

In order to provide information for contractors to both bid on projects and prepare the SWPPP/Water Pollution Control Program (WPCP), the design staff must supply certain water quality-related information in the project PS&E. Construction Site BMPs are deployed per an approved SWPPP or WPCP prepared by the contractor during the construction phase of a project.

During the design and planning phases of a project, the PE must develop a BMP strategy and coordinate with the Department's Construction Division and the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator to determine specifications, details, and perhaps supporting plan sheets that support an estimate of the types, locations, and quantities of potential Construction Site BMPs that are likely to be deployed by the contractor. The PE must also prepare a corresponding construction cost estimate (not to be supplied to the contractor and for internal use only) to ensure that sufficient construction funds are programmed for potential BMPs and supplemental activities.

Additional information on design, placement, and applicability of Construction Site BMPs can also be found in Appendix C of this document, or in the *Construction Site BMP Manual*.

3.3.4 Maintenance Best Management Practices

Maintenance BMPs are water quality controls used to reduce pollutant discharges during highway maintenance and activities conducted at maintenance facilities. The Maintenance BMPs are organized by family types based on long-standing protocols in the Maintenance Manual. Families are designated by alphabet characterizations that range from the A Family - Flexible Pavements to the T Family - Management and Support.

The PE collaborates with Maintenance on improvements within the project limits that support Maintenance BMPs. Many of these improvements conducive for Maintenance BMPs might also be considered DPP BMPs. One example of a Maintenance BMP is the Department's practice of stenciling messages at storm drain inlets accessible to pedestrian and bicycle traffic, including highway facilities such as park and ride lots, rest areas and vista points to assist in educating the public about stormwater runoff pollution. PEs should contact the District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator to identify stencil types, specifications, and details for projects falling within these areas.

Other BMPs exist but are installed based on public need or at the request of the District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator in line with the project scope and budget. These BMPs might include the installation of call boxes, anti-littering signage or measures, stabilized access points, vehicle pullouts, TBMP Markers, and temporary material and waste storage locations.

4 Treatment Consideration

4.1 Introduction

This section provides Project Engineers (PEs) with guidance on the process and procedures to determine the need for incorporating stormwater Treatment Best Management Practices (BMPs) into a project. This section defines the project impervious areas and describes how to consider them when determining if treatment is required. In addition, this section explains how to document the project treated areas that are used to meet post construction treatment, Statewide Trash Provisions, Alternative Compliance, and Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) requirements, as determined by the District/Regional National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Coordinator.

4.2 Project Evaluation Process

The steps described below correspond to the steps -in the Evaluation Documentation Form (EDF) in Appendix E. These steps form the logical basis for Treatment BMP evaluation on all projects and must be followed and documented in the EDF for all projects.

Step 1 - Start

The PE should use the guidance provided in this section, the EDF, and the Water Quality Assessment Report (WQAR) or equivalent document to determine if a specific project requires the consideration of permanent Treatment BMPs.

Step 2 - Is the scope of the project to install Treatment BMPs?

Certain Departmental projects have primary scope to install or retrofit Treatment BMPs. Projects such as these are not required to evaluate the need for inclusion of treatment. Most projects will answer “No” to this step.

Step 3 – Does the project directly or indirectly discharge to Surface Waters?

Surface Waters are known as Waters of the United States and/or Waters of the State. In general, these include creeks, streams, rivers, oceans, reservoirs, wetlands, estuaries, and lakes.

A direct discharge is a discharge that does not meet the definition of an indirect discharge. An indirect discharge is any discharge from the municipal separate storm sewer system that is conveyed to the receiving water through 300 feet or more of an unlined ditch or channel as measured between the discharge point from the outlet of the municipal separate storm sewer system and the receiving water.

Contact the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator for scenarios of when runoff would not be considered as directly or indirectly discharging.

If a project directly or indirectly discharges to surface waters, the PE should continue to Step 4. If not, the project is not required to consider the incorporation of Treatment BMPs and the PE should prepare the appropriate documentation to be attached to the Stormwater Data Report (SWDR). Most all projects will answer “Yes” to this step.

Step 4 – Does the project discharge to Areas of Special Biological Significance (ASBS), a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) watershed, a Significant Trash Generating Area (STGA,) or have other documented pollution control requirements?

All projects that discharge into a receiving water having a designation of ASBS or that are located within an STGA or TMDL watershed may be subject to other pollution control requirements and may need to consider Treatment BMPs. Projects or portions of a project within a TMDL watershed where Caltrans is a named stakeholder may be subject to treatment requirements or other actions (e.g., slope stabilization). Contact the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to determine if there are any pollution control requirements or TMDLs within the project limits and if they apply to Caltrans. Information on ASBS, STGA, and TMDLs should be identified in the Water Quality Assessment Report (WQAR) or equivalent document.

Step 5 – Are any existing Treatment BMPs partially or completely removed?

The Department has implemented treatment of stormwater within its RW since the early 1990s. These features may not be readily apparent in the field so as-built plans, Stormwater Portal, and Maintenance IMMS records obtained from the District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator should be reviewed to identify existing Treatment BMPs. District databases maintained by the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator and District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator may also identify these locations.

If an existing Treatment BMP will be removed or modified by the project, or if any portion of its impervious or pervious contributing drainage area (CDA) cannot continue to be treated by the existing Treatment BMP, then the project shall, at a minimum, treat an equivalent area. See Section 4.3.1, Condition 1.

Step 6 – Is the scope of the project routine maintenance?

Projects that maintain the original line and grade, hydraulic capacity, or original purpose of the facility are considered routine maintenance projects and are not required to consider Treatment BMPs. Examples of routine maintenance activities include:

- Overlaying a roadway surface, including overlay on top of existing shoulder backing if the shoulder backing is not removed to erodible surface during placement;
- Replacing a roadway surface without exposing the underlying soil or pervious subgrade;
- Re-grading a ditch to the original line and grade;
- Planting and irrigation system installations and upgrades;
- Vegetation removal with planned vegetation re-establishment;
- Culvert lining;
- Replacing a culvert in-kind;
- Trenching and resurfacing associated with utility work; or
- Routine replacement of damaged pavement such as pothole repair or replacement of short, non-contiguous sections of roadway

Changes to line, grade, or hydraulic capacity include any changes made within the project limits that would alter the hydrologic/hydraulic behavior of stormwater discharges. The following changes would be considered a change in line, grade, or hydraulic capacity and would not be considered routine maintenance:

- A change in the time of concentration, peak flow, volume, or velocity of stormwater discharges;
- Modifying or creating new drainage ditches, swales, culverts, or storm drain facilities; or
- Changing historic drainage patterns.

Modifying drainage ditches, swales, culverts, or storm drain facilities does not include repairs or grading to re-establish the original line, grade or hydraulic capacity of a ditch or swale, nor does it include minor improvements such as adding culvert flared end sections, energy dissipation, or replacing pipe sections "in-kind."

Step 7 – Does the project result in an increase of 10,000 ft^2 (or 5,000 sq ft for "non-highway facilities projects") or more of new impervious surface (NIS)?

Determine NIS[1]: The new impervious surface (NIS) is the addition of the net new impervious (NNI) and the replaced impervious surface (RIS) with the excluded impervious area (EIA) subtracted:

$$NIS = NNI + RIS - EIA$$

The NNI is the total post-project impervious area minus the pre-project impervious area. Any new impervious area in a project on land that was previously pervious should be included in the calculation of NNI; this includes surfaces attributed to roadway, maintenance vehicle pullouts, and other hard surfaces.

RIS is generated when the underlying soil or pervious subgrade of existing impervious surfaces are exposed during roadway construction. This would only occur when the entire roadway structural section (i.e., surface course and base course) is replaced. Roadway surfaces are commonly replaced, but usually only to a portion of the roadway structural section, such as in grooving and grinding a roadway surface to then place a "lift" or layer of new pavement surface. Because the pervious subgrade is not exposed, this would not be considered RIS.

The Caltrans Permit allows reductions to the NIS. Use Table 4-1 Excluded Impervious Areas (EIA) to reduce the NIS.

[1] The Caltrans Permit uses the term New Impervious Surface (NIS) to establish the threshold for a RSA. This term as defined in the Permit is identical to Caltrans NNI. NNI is retained by the Department as the historically appropriate definition.

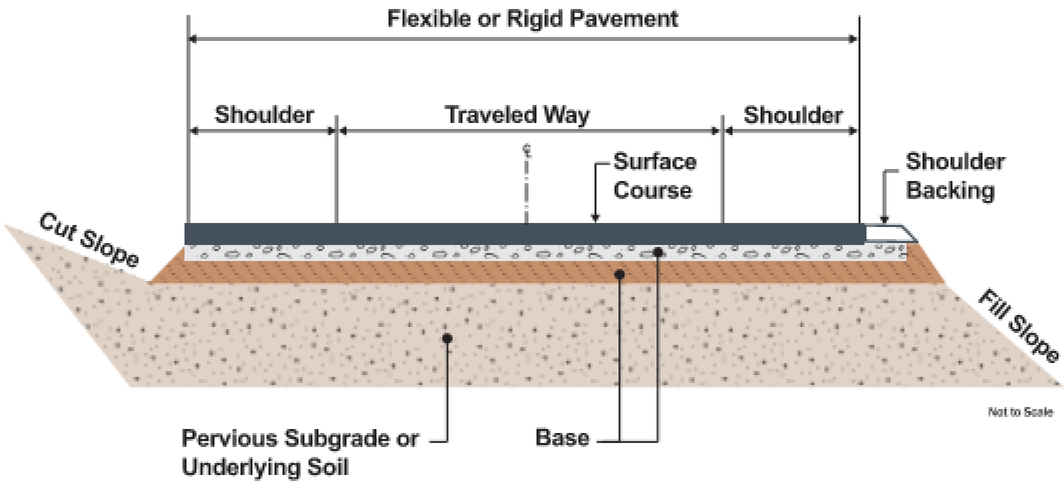


Figure 4-1. Basic Roadway Pavement Layers

Table 4-1. Excluded Impervious Areas (EIA)

Areas to subtract or exclude from NIS[1]
• Replaced surfaces to support the installation or relocation of utilities and pipelines
• The area of intersection of new bridges over impervious area
• Surfaces within tunnels and tube structures
• Sidewalks on existing roadways
• Pedestrian ramps on existing roadways
• Bike lanes on existing roadways
• New pavement under existing guardrails
• Impervious portions of the DPP and Treatment BMP footprint (e.g., slope paving, lined ditches, GSRDs)
• Replaced surfaces that drain to an existing Treatment BMP that will be protected and perpetuated
• Routine replacement of damaged pavement such as pothole repair or replacement of short, non-contiguous sections of roadway (e.g, digouts)
• Maintenance Vehicle Pullouts (MVPs) constructed for the purpose of maintaining a Treatment BMP or as a tracking control BMP

[1.] Bridge decks are excluded if treatment is infeasible. See Stormwater Feasibility Analysis for Bridges at https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/hydraulics-stormwater

Does NIS equal 10,000 ft^2 or more?

If the project meets the threshold treatment requirement of 10,000 ft^2 or more (5,000 ft^2 for non-highway facilities projects) of NIS, then treatment is required. There may be other impervious areas of the project that need to be considered for treatment based on the project NNI. This additional area is described in Section 4.3.1.

Steps 8, 9, and 10 – Document for Project Files by Completing EDF and SWDR.

All supporting data used to determine whether a project must implement Treatment BMPs should be summarized for inclusion in the Project Files. A copy of the initialed EDF is a required attachment of the SWDR at all phases.

4.3 Treatment Areas

The determination and calculation of surface areas, both impervious and pervious, is essential in the implementation of Treatment BMPs either directly within the project or through an alternative compliance strategy (Section 4.3.4). The calculation of surface area within a project is not difficult; however, understanding how various surfaces are defined, calculated, and applied towards various permit conditions can be complex. The project post construction treatment requirement can be summarized by the following equation:

*Post Construction Treatment Area (PCTA) = NIS + ATA Condition 1; **OR** ATA Condition 2*

The NIS was defined in Step 7 of Section 4.2; it is a fixed area calculation. The Additional Treated Area (ATA) is an area calculation that is to be treated based on the applicability of site conditions further detailed in Section 4.3.1. Conditions 1 and 2 are applicable to the PCTA. The total area to be treated by project Treatment BMPs can be summarized by the following equation:

*Total Area to be Treated = NIS + ATA Condition 1 + Alternative Compliance; **OR** ATA Condition 2*

Waivers: Districts may submit a Treatment BMP Exemption Memorandum to the Regional Water Board Executive Officer for consideration when a project will have a minimal impact on water quality. The Regional Water Board Executive Officer may waive the treatment control requirements or lessen the stringency of the requirements. Consult your District/Regional NPDES Coordinator for District procedures and appropriate use.

4.3.1 Additional Treated Area (ATA)

In Section 4.2, Step 7, when NIS equals or exceeds the threshold requirement of 10,000 ft^2 or more (5,000 ft^2 on non-highway facilities projects), it meets the post construction treatment requirement. Project circumstances may require treatment beyond the NIS. This additional area is conditional and referred to as ATA. The ATA is determined by evaluation of the following conditions:

- Condition 1 – If an existing Treatment BMP is removed and its treated area is not already contained in the NIS, then add that area to the project's PCTA.[2]
- Condition 2 – When the NNI for the project is greater than 50 percent of the total post-project impervious area within the project limits, then the entire project impervious area shall be included in the PCTA. To make this determination, divide the NNI by the total post-project impervious area. (Note: Where the NNI is less than or equal to 50 percent of the total post-project impervious area within the project limits, then no additional impervious area is required to be treated.)

After the PCTA has been addressed, then any remaining area treated by the project is documented in the SWDR including:

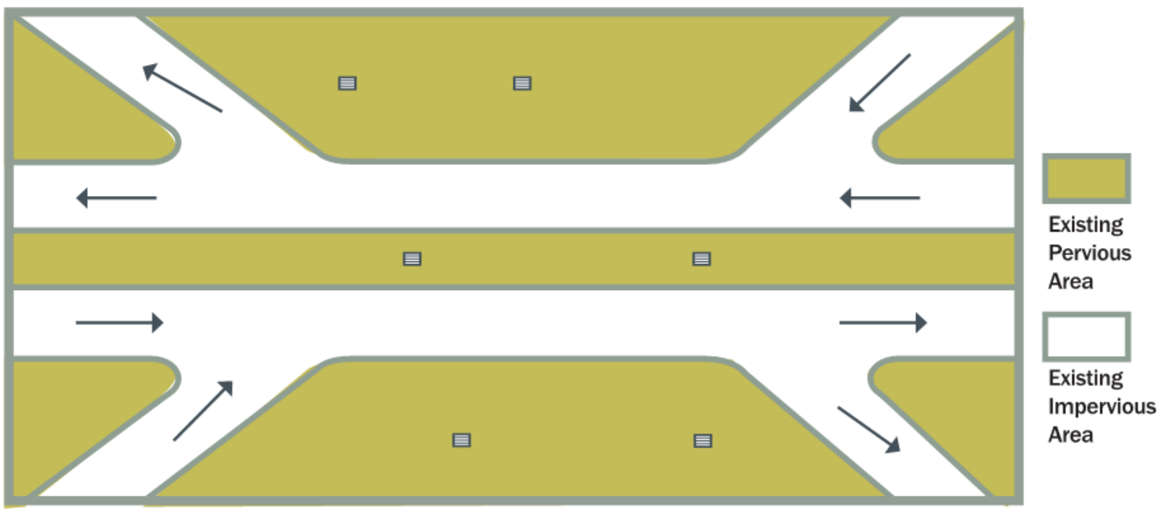
1. Impervious area tributary to the Treatment BMP and not required for the PCTA.
2. Pervious area tributary to the Treatment BMP.

[2] If existing treatment BMPs are in TMDL areas and the pervious tributary area for the BMP has been documented for TMDL Compliance then the TBMP Pervious Area must also be added to ATA 1.

All treatment beyond PCTA should be documented in the project SWDR. A project sponsor can purposely seize upon a project treatment opportunity to generate Alternative Compliance. This strategy would typically be implemented when project features are conducive to installing Treatment BMPs and there are motivations to generate Alternative Compliance. The District/Regional NPDES Coordinator, in consultation with the PDT and project sponsor, is responsible for determining how Alternative Compliance is tracked. The PE should coordinate with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator on documentation.

4.3.2 Treatment Area Example

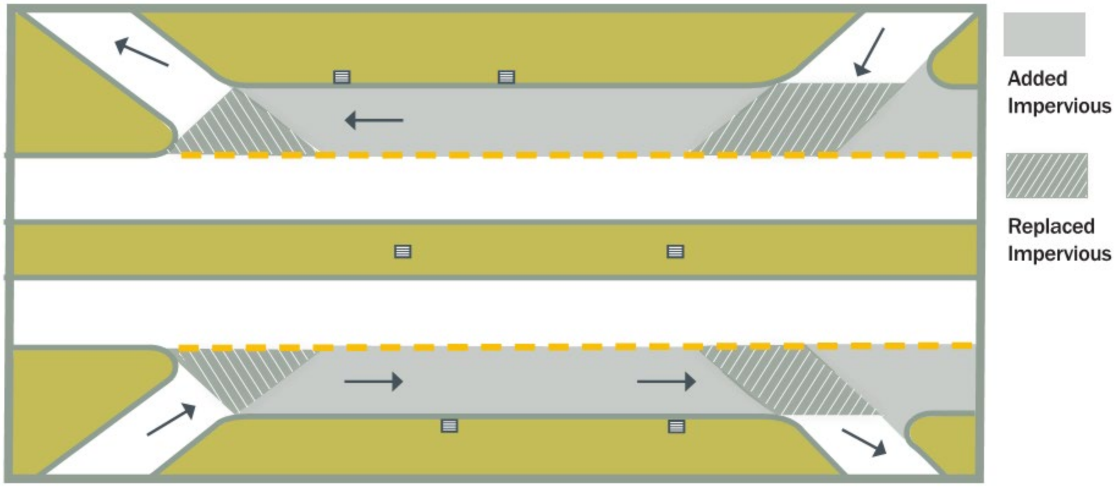
An example of a highway widening project which describes the process of evaluating treatment areas is provided below.



A) Pre-Project Condition

An existing 2-lane highway with a vegetated median and on-ramps and off-ramps; this diagram represents the project limits. The total pre-project impervious area is 5 acres (ac).

Total Pre Project Impervious Area = 5.0 ac

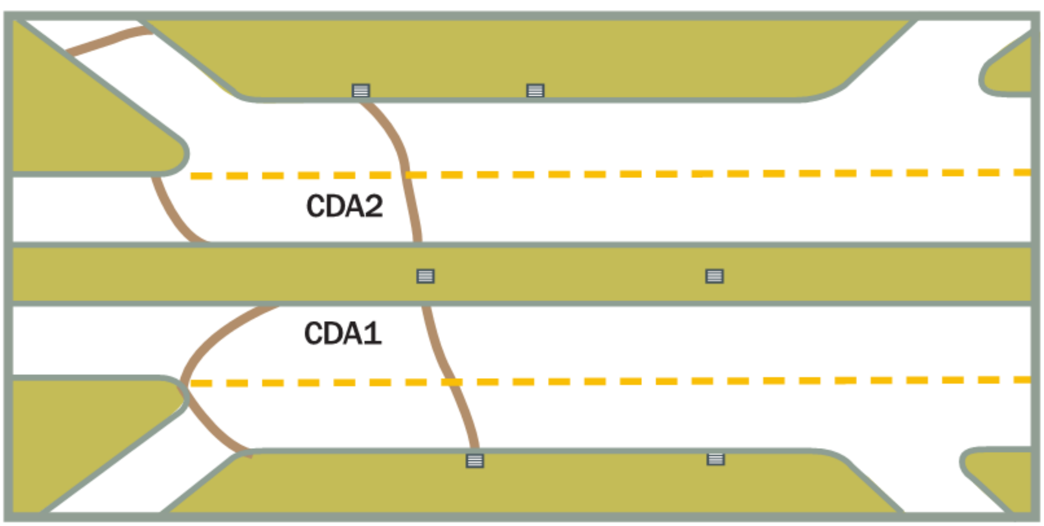


B) Post Project Condition – What is the NIS?

A new auxiliary lane is placed between both sets of ramps and extending to right. The added impervious area is 1.68 ac and the replaced imperious surface is 0.42 ac, thus NNI = 1.68 ac and RIS = 0.42 ac. No project areas qualify as EIA, EIA = 0 ac.

NIS = NNI + RIS – EIA = 1.68 ac + 0.42 ac – 0ac = 2.1 ac

Treatment is required when NIS is greater than or equal to 10,000 ft^2 (0.23 ac) therefore treatment is required.



C) Post Project Condition – Determine the Post Construction Treatment Area and evaluate hydraulically connected impervious areas.

Evaluate project ATA per Section 4.3.1. There are no existing Treatment BMPs being removed as part of this project, thus ATA Condition 1 = 0 ac. When NNI is less than or equal to 50% of the total post-project impervious area (TPPIA), then the hydraulically connected impervious area does not need to be treated. NNI is 25% of the total post-project impervious area thus, ATA Condition 2 does not apply.

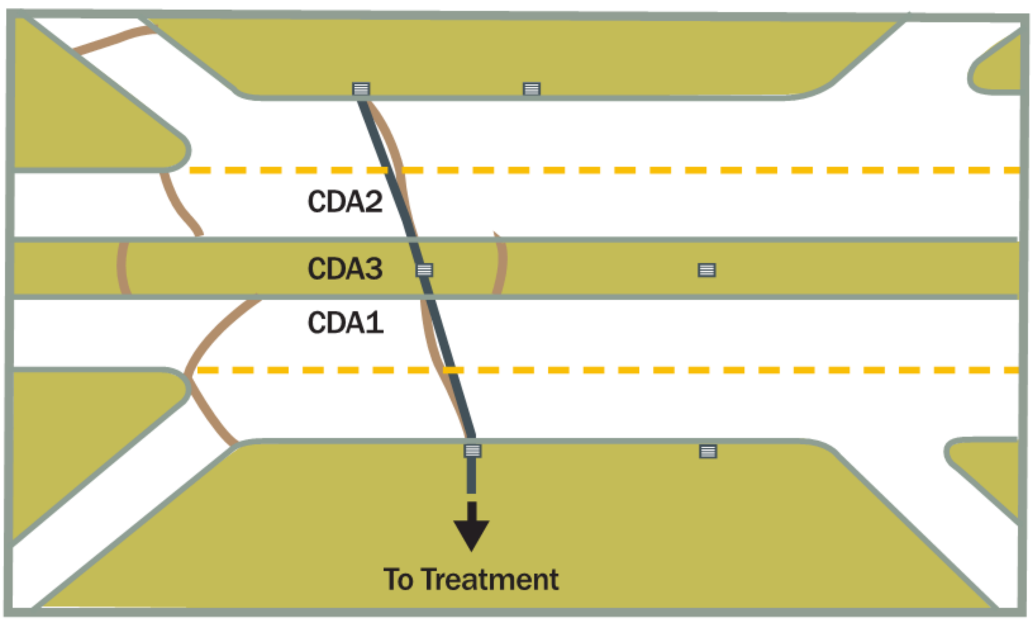
$$\frac{\text{NNI}}{\text{TPPIA}} \times 100 = \frac{1.68 \text{ acres}}{(5.0 + 1.68) \text{ acres}} \times 100 = 25\%$$

If the NNI had been greater than 50% of the total post project impervious area, then ATA Condition 2 would apply, and PCTA would have been the entire post-project area.

In the project limits, the PE needs to treat an impervious Contributing Drainage Area (CDA) equal to the PCTA.

PCTA = NIS + ATA Condition 1; OR ATA Condition 2 = 2.1 ac + 0 ac = 2.1 ac

Two CDAs are delineated by the PE that could satisfy the PCTA. CDA1 is the lower paved area consisting of 1.1 ac; CDA2 is the upper paved area consisting of 1.25 ac. CDA1 +CDA2 = 1.1 ac + 1.25 ac = 2.35 ac, which exceeds the amount of area needed to be treated. As a result, the treatment beyond PCTA of 0.25 ac of impervious area could be counted as Alternative Compliance.



D) Post Project Condition – Evaluate hydraulically connected pervious areas.

A drainage system conveys runoff from CDA1 and CDA2, but also contains runoff from CDA3; an area of 0.8 ac. The discharge from this drainage system is planned for treatment in the project. Due to the hydraulic connectivity of CDA3, the PE accounts for treating the runoff from that area. Since runoff from CDA3 is pervious, it is not part of post construction requirement or Alternative Compliance but is documented in the SWDR towards the load reduction of a current or future TMDL requirements.

Total Area to be Treated = NIS + ATA Condition 1 + Alternative Compliance + hydraulically connected pervious

= 2.1 ac + 0 ac + 0.25 ac + 0.8 ac = 3.15 ac

4.3.3 TMDL Watersheds

Early in the project development process the WQAR, or equivalent document, will determine if the project resides within a TMDL watershed where Caltrans is named a stakeholder and if actions for TMDL Compliance are required. During the development of the project, the PE is required to document the pervious and impervious areas to be treated, as well as the type(s) of treatment to be implemented. In the Section 4.3.2 example, the PE would report 2.35 ac of impervious area and 0.8 ac of pervious area as the total treated area and the various Treatment BMPs proposed for implementation through the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets per Section 6.6.

4.3.4 Alternative Compliance

In the Section 4.3.2 example, 0.25 ac of Alternative Compliance is available for assisting other projects in the watershed for post construction compliance. The project sponsor may desire to use this potential benefit towards other projects under its purview, especially those projects having difficulty in achieving the PCTA.

In some instances, it may not be practical or feasible to provide complete or partial implementation of treatment to address the PCTA of a project. When this occurs, the District shall prepare an Alternative Compliance proposal for approval by the SWRCB Executive Director in coordination with the applicable RWQCB Executive Officer. Alternative Compliance may be achieved outside the Department's project limits, either within or outside the Department's RW, including within another Department project. An alternative compliance project may be a cooperative agreement with another entity. The proposal shall include documentation supporting the determination of infeasibility. Options for an alternative compliance proposal could include the following:

1. *Implementation of treatment as part of a later, stand-alone project*: A stand-alone project within the Caltrans RW could be developed to provide the treatment commitment of the original project. This alternative compliance proposal should first try to identify treatment opportunities that would benefit the same watershed area and receiving water identified for the project with the treatment shortfall. Careful accounting of the total area to be treated for the follow-up project is required. The treatment could be within a traditional project, but it must first treat the post construction treatment area for that project before Alternative Compliance can be generated for the deficient project. The total area to be treated and the application of credits between the deficient project and the follow-up project should be documented in the SWDR.
2. *Utilization of Alternative Compliance generated from other projects*: Contact the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to identify available and applicable Alternative Compliance.
3. *Implementation of treatment outside the Department's RW*: This option is sought when no other feasible options within the Department RW can be achieved. Finding a municipal partner or other entity to coordinate with on site design, construction, and future maintenance and operation are essential in the approval of this option. This alternative compliance project should first try to identify treatment opportunities in the same watershed and receiving water as the original project.
4. *Other options agreed upon between the district and the RWQCB:* The District/Regional NPDES Coordinator, in consultation with the PDT and project sponsor, is responsible for developing the Alternative Compliance strategy for the project. The PE should document the Alternative Compliance strategy within the SWDR.

5 Permanent BMP Strategy

5.1 Introduction and Objectives

This section provides a consistent approach to protecting water quality on Caltrans projects by using site design techniques and implementing permanent treatment in accordance with permit requirements. A permanent Best Management Practice (BMP) strategy must consider BMPs to treat runoff and manage impervious and pervious areas within the project limits. For new development and redevelopment projects that are required to incorporate post construction Treatment BMPs, this section describes a design process that includes the use of both Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) and Treatment BMPs. A site may require that many BMPs be placed within the project limits and each BMP must be sized to treat flows from its contributing drainage area.

All treated areas must be documented in the project Stormwater Data Report (SWDR). This includes areas treated for post construction requirements, Statewide Trash Provisions, TMDL requirements, ASBS areas, and Alternative Compliance.

The objective of this section is to detail a process to:

- Maximize infiltration. To meet the Caltrans Permit requirements, Project Engineers (PEs) should identify and design project features that promote infiltration. All projects with disturbed soil area, independent of location or treatment requirements, should consider maximizing infiltration of stormwater runoff. This can include using low impact site design principles and infiltration-type DPP BMPs during site development and design.
- Prioritize Treatment BMPs. The PE will plan and design Treatment BMPs following a prioritization process to ensure compliance with the Caltrans Permit requirements.
- Provide detailed documentation of treatment. PE will track specific BMP information for the purposes of reporting compliance, implementing asset management, and estimating long term maintenance.

5.2 Site Design and Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) Best Management Practices

The PE shall incorporate Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) BMPs on all projects that create any amount of disturbed soil area. In some cases, these same DPP BMPs may be used for infiltration of the water quality volume (e.g., soil modification, vegetated surfaces, channel lining, rock slope protection) to meet treatment requirements or to generate Alternative Compliance. The following site design principles shall be incorporated as feasible for the project:

- Conserve natural areas, including existing trees, surface water buffer areas, vegetation, and soils.
- Minimize the impervious footprint of the project.
- Minimize disturbances to natural drainages.
- Design pervious areas to effectively receive runoff from impervious areas, taking into consideration the pervious areas' soil conditions, slope, and other design factors.
- Implement landscape and soil based BMPs such as amended soils, vegetated strips and swales where feasible.

- Use climate-appropriate landscaping that minimizes irrigation and runoff. This promotes surface infiltration and minimizes the use of pesticides and fertilizers.
- Design landscapes to comply with the local WELO. When a WELO is not available follow the California Department of Water Resources MWELO.
    - Guidance on water conservation and the MWELO is available at: https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/lap-plan-or-design-a-state-hwy-project/lap-f-irrigation-design/lap-mwelo

Any stabilized pervious area (new, modified, or existing) within the project limits that receives runoff from an impervious area and promotes infiltration of the runoff may be considered for designation as a DPPIA. DPPIAs are vegetated and non-vegetated areas that have been designed or evaluated for infiltration capabilities. These areas provide infiltration to meet project treatment requirements.

The PE will consider incorporating the Caltrans approved DPP BMPs described in Appendix A and listed in Table 5-1, in conjunction with the site design principles listed above. The consideration process for DPP BMPs is included in Appendix A, Checklist DPP-1, Parts 1-5.

Table 5-1. Design Pollution Prevention BMPs

Design Pollution Prevention BMPs
Consideration of Downstream Effects Related to Potentially Increased Flow
Peak Flow Attenuation Devices
Reduction of Paved Surface (i.e., increase pervious area)
Soil Modification
Energy Dissipation Devices
Preservation of Existing Vegetation
Concentrated Flow Conveyance Systems
Ditches, Berms, Dikes, and Swales
Overside Drains, Downdrains, Paved Spillways
Channel Linings
Flared Culvert End Sections
Outlet Protection/Velocity Dissipation Devices
Slope/Surface Protection Systems
Vegetated Surfaces
Benching/Terracing, Slope Rounding, Reduce Gradients
Hard Surfaces

A flow chart illustrating the DPP BMP selection process for projects is shown in Figure 5-1. The PE is to document all DPP BMPs incorporated into the project in the SWDR. The DPP BMPs shall be designed to follow Section 800 of the *Caltrans Highway Design Manual* (HDM). The PE must evaluate the potential for channel/slope erosion and design the project to provide stable drainage systems for the expected design flows for the site. This provides both water quality protection and protection of the highway infrastructure by stabilizing sediment and preventing it from entering waterways.

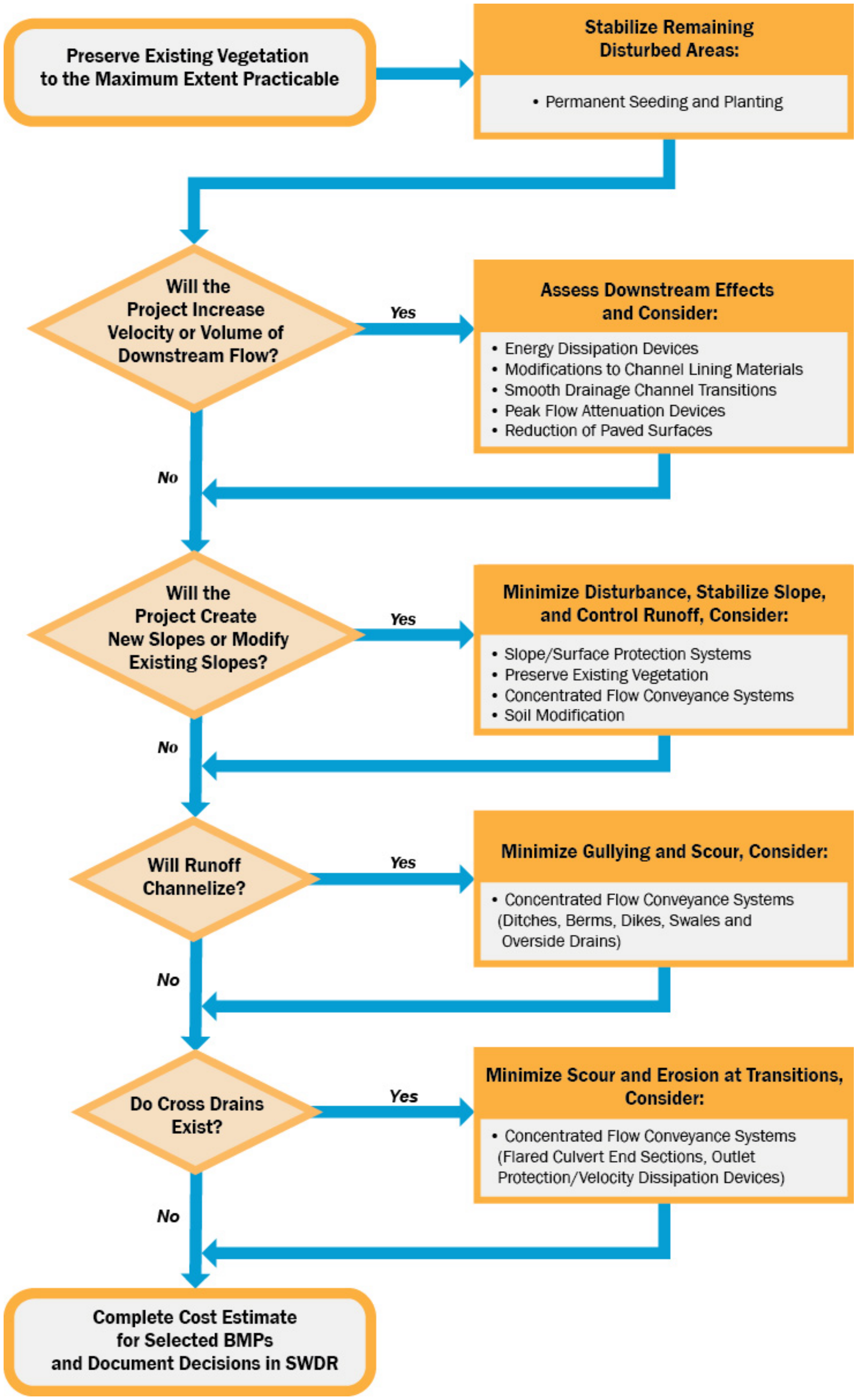
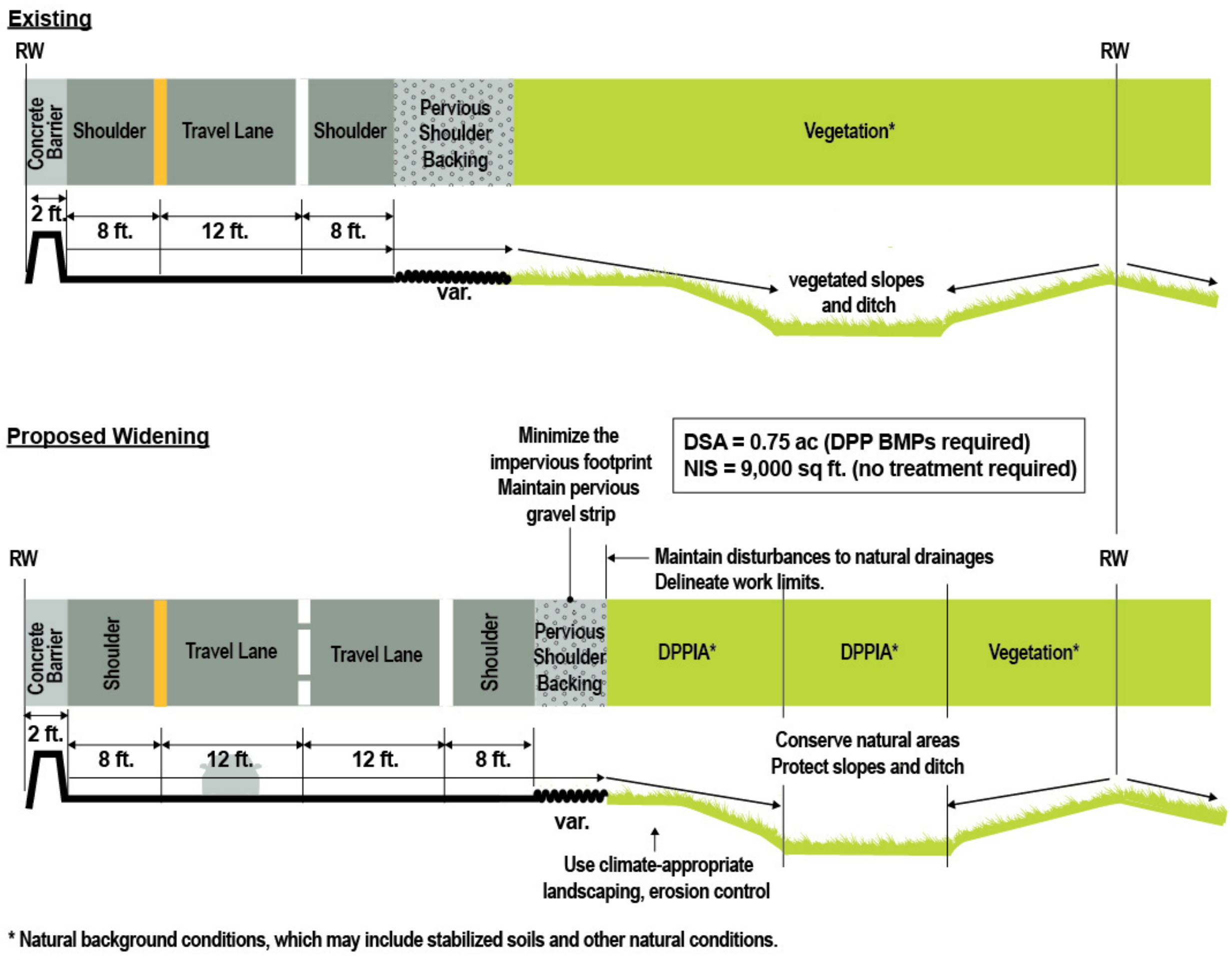


Figure 5-1. Decision Process for Selecting Design Pollution Prevention BMPs

5.2.1 Evaluation of Design Pollution Prevention Infiltration Areas for Treatment

Existing and new areas that infiltrate runoff can be documented as DPPIAs for that portion of the stormwater infiltrated. Existing conditions may provide some runoff infiltration that can be evaluated for infiltration treatment including vegetated and non-vegetated areas. All pervious areas may be designed to maximize infiltration, including the use of soil amendments or mulches. Refer to Appendix B.2 or the *Caltrans DPPIA Design Guidance* for siting and design criteria.

If the project is required to provide post construction or TMDL treatment, the runoff infiltrated by each DPP BMP can be documented as treatment. If a project that is not required to provide post construction or TMDL treatment can infiltrate runoff, then Alternative Compliance can be documented for the impervious contributing drainage area. In this case, the PE should notify and coordinate with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to discuss the need to document Alternative Compliance. As an example of this scenario, Figure 5-2 below shows a widening project that does not trigger post construction treatment requirements and has no trash requirement. Since the roadway sheet flows onto an existing stabilized slope, the contributing drainage area draining to the slope may qualify for Alternative Compliance.



* Natural background conditions, which may include stabilized soils and other natural conditions.

Figure 5-2. Highway Widening, Treatment Not Required

Consider documentation of Alternative Compliance during design of required project DPP BMPs:

Step 1. *Evaluate existing infiltration rate of slopes and ditch areas, if infiltration is provided, delineate as a DPPIA and use the Infiltration Tool to determine the WQV treated.*

Step 2. *Quantify the impervious and pervious portions of the contributing drainage area that are being treated, including the percent WQV/WQF treated, and document in the project SWDR. Table E-2 can be used.*

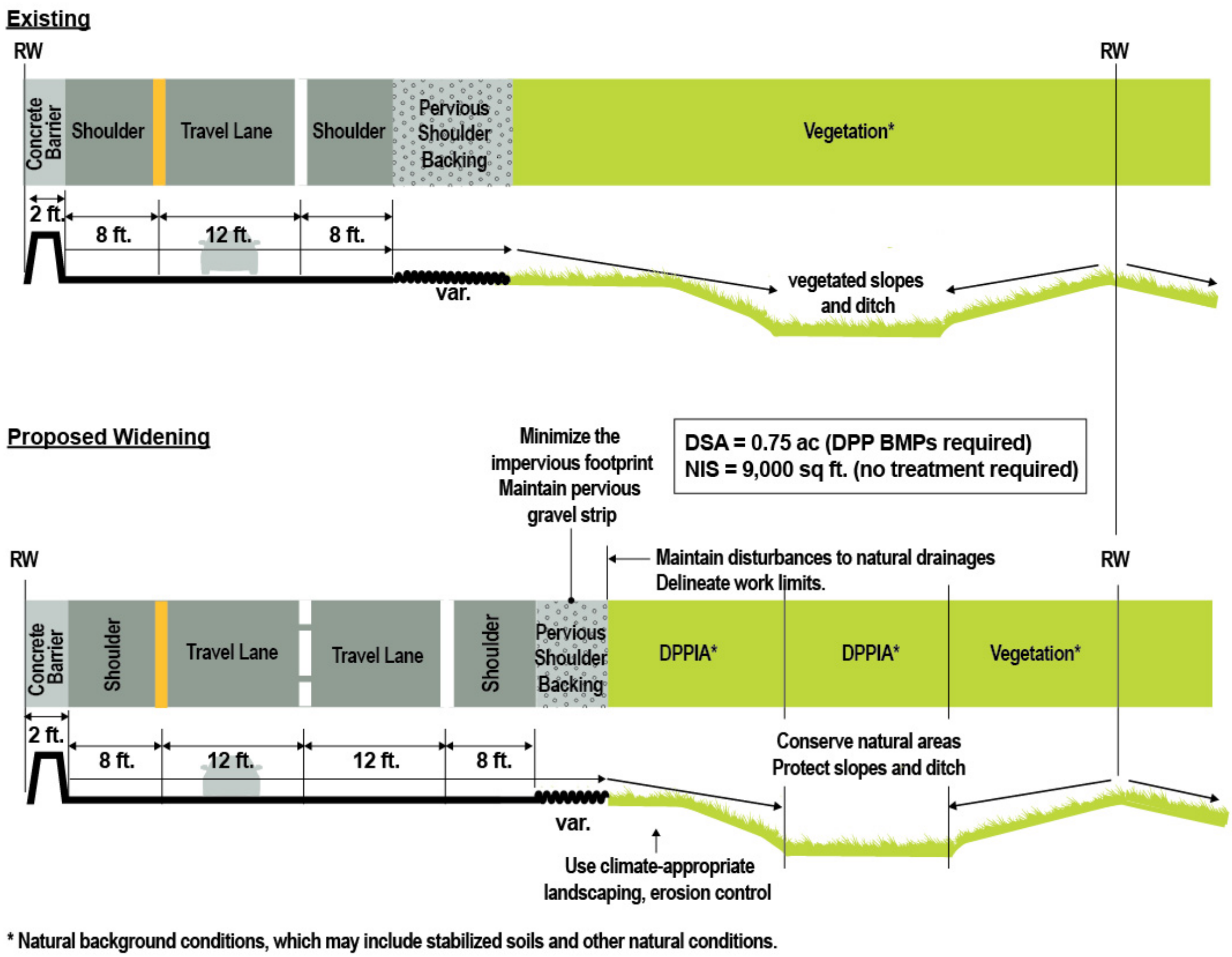
5.3 Treatment Best Management Practices Design Consideration

Treatment BMPs are used to treat runoff generated from the contributing drainage area. When a project is required to provide post construction treatment, the BMPs must treat an impervious area equal to the PCTA (see Section 4.3 for details on treatment areas). Treatment BMPs designed to treat the PCTA are to be considered according to the following priorities:

1. Infiltrate runoff from impervious surfaces equivalent to the PCTA, then
2. Treat excess runoff using LID based flow-through BMPs, then
3. Treat excess runoff using Caltrans approved, or pilot, Treatment BMPs, then
4. If 100 percent treatment of the runoff is not achieved, develop an alternative compliance strategy.

This process prioritizes landscape and soil based BMPs and along with the Checklist T-1, Part 1, achieves permit requirements. Each BMP must be sized to treat the applicable stormwater runoff criteria as described in Section 5.3.4.

Figure 5-3 is an example describing an evaluation of the post construction treatment priorities for a road widening project that has no trash requirement. Since the roadway sheet flows onto an existing stabilized slope, the PE first treats the water quality volume (WQV) through infiltration on the existing slope and ditch (e.g., DPPIA) before considering soil modification to improve infiltration. When 100 percent of the WQV is not infiltrated, other approved Treatment BMPs are evaluated.



* Natural background conditions, which may include stabilized soils and other natural conditions.

Figure 5-3. Highway Widening, Treatment Required

Consider existing features as post construction treatment during design of required project DPP and Treatment BMPs:

Step 1. *Calculate the WQV related to the PCTA.*

Step 2. *Determine existing infiltration capacity of the proposed DPPIA using the Infiltration Tool to determine the WQV infiltrated.*
If the WQV infiltrated is less than the WQV calculated in Step 1, consider amending the soils.

Step 3. *If WQV infiltrated by the DPPIA is still less than WQV calculated in Step 1, then evaluate the existing conditions to determine if an infiltration device can be sited. If the area cannot meet the criteria for an infiltration type BMP, determine if the biostrip or bioswale design criteria can be met. Consider modifying the area to meet the criteria.*

Step 4. *Quantify the impervious and pervious portions of the contributing drainage areas being treated. If the impervious portion is less than the PCTA, continue using Checklist T-1, Part 1 to consider other Treatment BMPs.*

Step 5. *Document all areas treated by the project in the SWDR. Tables E-1 and E-2 or equivalent tables can be used.*

When a project is being constructed solely to provide treatment to generate Alternative Compliance, the priorities above are still valid. PE is to use the Checklist T-1, Part 1 when designing Treatment BMPs to meet post construction, Statewide Trash Provisions, ASBS, and TMDL compliance.

5.3.1 Full-Capture Trash Devices

Caltrans has developed a Statewide Trash Implementation Plan to ensure compliance with the Statewide Trash Provisions. Projects that have a trash TMDL or are located within an STGA must consider full-capture trash devices if feasible. Full-capture trash devices trap all particles 5-millimeters or greater, and have a design treatment capacity that is either:

- Not less than the peak flow rate, Q, resulting from a 1-year, 1-hour storm for the contributing drainage area (full-capture flow (FCF), see Section 5.3.4.3), or
- Designed and sized to convey at least the same flows as the corresponding storm drain.

Projects that have both post construction and trash treatment requirements should consider Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems. These are certified full-capture trash devices that are also effective at removing other pollutants. Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems are a preferred treatment method because they remove multiple pollutants and can meet post construction, TMDL requirements, and STGA requirements. They are sized using the WQV or WQF then they are certified by showing adequate treatment capacity for either the full-capture flow (FCF) or the full-capture volume (FCV). The Caltrans approved Treatment BMPs that can be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems are:

- Bioretention
- Detention Basin
- Infiltration Trench and Basin
- Austin Media Filter (Earthen & Concrete Vault)
- Delaware Media Filter

The GSRD, Trash Net, and Capture Housing are all stand-alone full-capture trash devices. These devices provide only trash treatment. Consideration of these devices is appropriate for projects that do not have post construction treatment requirements or for projects that use a series of treatment controls. They are sized using the FCF.

5.3.2 Site-Specific Determination of Feasibility

Several factors must be considered to determine which BMPs are suitable for a given application. Site-specific conditions can affect operations, maintenance, construction costs, safety, and aesthetics. General criteria used during the evaluation of Treatment BMPs include site specific determination of technical feasibility and legal and institutional constraints.

Technical Feasibility: Any BMP under consideration must be technically feasible. Caltrans must be able to implement the BMP within the context of the state highway system. Feasibility also includes health, safety, and maintainability concerns. BMPs that substantially increase the risk to Caltrans staff or the public are considered infeasible.

The feasibility of a BMP is assessed using the following process:

1. Determine whether the site characteristics, particularly the soil characteristics, are appropriate to support implementation of the BMP (checklists are provided in the appendices for this purpose).
2. Calculate the WQV, WQF, FCV, or FCF that must be treated (See Section 5.3.4).
3. Configure the proposed BMPs needed to maximize the treatment of the WQV, WQF, FCV, or FCF. Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems are configured to maximize treatment of the WQV or WQF. This third step does not apply to Traction Sand Traps.
4. Use Appendix B and design guidance to evaluate the proposed BMP, giving proper consideration to clear recovery zones, setbacks from structures, hydraulic head, and maintenance access roads and ramps, as appropriate.

During the planning and project development process, multiple project alternatives may be evaluated. If a project requires the consideration of Treatment BMPs and it is ultimately found not feasible to treat all the PCTA within the project, then the PE shall discuss alternative compliance opportunities with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator and document coordination, the date, and decisions made in the SWDR.

Sites requiring extraordinary plumbing to collect and treat runoff (e.g., jacking operations under a highway, bridge deck collection systems) may be considered infeasible due to their associated costs. Sites requiring extraordinary features or construction practices (e.g., retaining walls, shoring) may be infeasible due to their associated costs relative to the cost of the BMP itself. The PE must use engineering judgment and collaborate with the PDT.

Legal and Institutional Constraints: The recommended BMP cannot compromise Caltrans compliance with other laws. For example, Caltrans must provide drainage under roadways to prevent water from accumulating up gradient and threatening the integrity of the roadbed and to limit encroachment of captured water on the traveled way. Caltrans cannot legally block historic drainage patterns or systems (e.g., runoff from farmland).

5.3.3 Treatment BMP Use and Placement Considerations

The physical dimensions of a BMP may have an important bearing on feasibility. The size of many BMPs is determined by the amount of runoff the system will be required to treat. The amount of runoff is affected by the location, land use, contributing drainage area, interflow, type, duration, and intensity of the storm, topography, geology and soil characteristics. For the design of Treatment BMPs, the district's hydraulics staff may need to be consulted.

Peak flow rates must be considered in the design of all highway drainage facilities including BMPs. The Design Storm is the particular event that generates runoff rates that the highway drainage facilities are designed to handle. For the purposes of this Project Planning and Design Guide (PPDG), the term "Design Storm" used in reference to drainage facilities design will refer to the peak drainage facility design event as determined in accordance with the HDM. Determining the Design Storm involves the selection of an appropriate design storm frequency for the specific project location under consideration. In order for a design frequency to be a meaningful criterion for roadway drainage design, it must be tied to an acceptable tolerance of flooding. Design water spread, encroachment upon the roadbed or adjacent property, is the tolerance of flooding directly related to roadway drainage design. HDM Chapter 831 provides a detailed discussion on how the probability of exceedance of the design storm and the acceptable tolerance to flooding depends on the importance of the highway and risks involved.

5.3.4 Determining Water Quality Volume (WQV) and Water Quality Flows (WQF)

Unlike flood control measures that are typically designed to store or convey the peak volumes or flows of infrequent (i.e., return period typically > 5 years) storm events, Treatment BMPs are designed to treat the lower volume or flows associated with more frequent storm events (i.e., return period < 2 year). The volume or flows associated with the frequent events are commonly referred to as the WQV for BMPs designed based on volume, and WQF for BMPs designed based on flow. Treatment BMPs are sized to accommodate the WQF or WQV from the contributing drainage area. The contributing drainage area is the surface area that drains to the BMP; it can be comprised of both impervious and pervious surfaces. When the Treatment BMP cannot be sized to treat the entire WQV or WQF, then consider sizing the BMP to treat a portion of the runoff.

Full-capture trash devices are sized to treat runoff generated by the smaller, 1-year, 1-hour event. The volume or flows associated with the 1-year, 1-hour events are referred to as the FCV for BMPs designed based on volume, and FCF for BMPs designed based on flow.

The Caltrans Permit requires that the stormwater runoff water volumes used for sizing BMPs be based on the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event (Water Quality event). Currently, NOAA Atlas 14 is used to obtain the 85th percentile 24-hour storm event and 1-year, 1-hour storm event and it does not incorporate Climate Change. However, NOAA is currently working on Atlas 15 which will take climate change into consideration. When NOAA Atlas 15 is updated, Caltrans will use it to address the issue of Climate Change.

WQV can be calculated by determining the Water Quality event depth, multiplying by the area, and the volumetric runoff coefficient. The depth is typically determined by using Basin Sizer (a Caltrans design tool), but other methods may be used to calculate the WQV. Basin Sizer can be downloaded from the following website:

http://svctenvims.dot.ca.gov/wqpt/basinsizer.aspx

Basin Sizer: This design tool allows the PE to select rainfall stations near the project site through a graphical interface of a map of California that shows rainfall stations, state and federal highways, and rivers. Once the PE has located the project site on the map, the PE chooses the rainfall station(s) closest to or most representative of the site to be used in the WQV/WQF calculations. When volume-based BMPs are being evaluated for the project, the PE uses the Caltrans tab. The Caltrans tab automatically calculates the 85th percentile 24-hour storm event based on the chosen rainfall station or can be an interpolation of multiple station data. This calculation is the storm event rainfall depth in inches. Once the precipitation depth is obtained from Basin Sizer, the PE then completes the WQV calculations. When flow-based BMPs are being evaluated for the project, the PE should use the rainfall runoff coefficients and intensities listed in Section 5.3.4.3. They are then used with the Rational Method to calculate WQF.

The Historic and California Stormwater Quality Association (CASQA) tabs in Basin Sizer include options for WQV sizing using the Maximized Volume Method, California Stormwater BMP Handbook Approach, and Urban Runoff Quality Management Approach. The WQV calculated using Basin Sizer Historic method will usually be an overestimate because of the composite runoff coefficient C which is intended to calculate peak discharges using the Rational Method. Therefore, the PE should use the precipitation depth from the Caltrans tab in Basin Sizer along with the volumetric runoff coefficient R_v in the Small Storm Hydrology Method described in the next section to calculate the project WQV.

For trash treatment, the 1-year, 1-hour precipitation depth is used in the WQV equation to calculate the FCV and the 1-year, 1-hour intensity is used in the WQF equation to calculate the FCF. The 1-year, 1-hour depth and intensity can be found using NOAA Atlas 14 online maps at:

https://hdsc.nws.noaa.gov/hdsc/pfds/pfds_map_cont.html

5.3.4.1 Volumetric Runoff Coefficient for Calculating Water Quality Volume

For volumetric BMP sizing, the following equation from the Small Storm Hydrology Method (SSHM) should be used, as it takes into account the smaller depth of the Water Quality event. This will replace the use of rational method C (runoff coefficient) values for the calculation of WQV and FCV.

$$V_R = R_v(P/12)A$$

Where:

V_R = Runoff volume (ft^3) (WQV, FCV)

R_v = Volumetric Runoff Coefficient (unitless)

P = Precipitation Depth (in) – from Basin Sizer for WQV, from NOAA Atlas 14 for FCV

A = Contributing Drainage Area (ft^2)

The SSHM is recommended for stormwater design to calculate the volumetric sizing of stormwater BMPs because it was developed specifically for this purpose, and it has been adopted by many municipalities and CASQA. For Caltrans implementation, a table of R_v values which represent a mix of both impervious and pervious areas is provided (see Table 5-2) and scenarios that are appropriate for highway use are identified. The highway design scenarios we expect designers to encounter and ways to calculate the water quality volume (WQV, FCV = V_R) are presented below:

1. For areas with over 50% impervious surfaces and that drain the impervious area to pervious area, use Table 5-2 based on the percent impervious of the CDA or use the Urbonas equation which is a single calculation for the entire CDA using a composite Rv.

   $V_R = R_v(P/12)A$, where V_R is the WQV or FCV of the entire CDA.

For the next geometric drainage scenarios, a composite V_R calculation is required, where V_{R1} (impervious) + V_{R2} (pervious) is calculated for the total WQV or FCV for the site.

$$V_{R1} = R_{v1}(P/12)A_1 \qquad V_{R2} = R_{v2}(P/12)A_2 \qquad V_{R1} + V_{R2} = V_{R\,total}$$

The R_v values for scenarios 2-4 should be taken from Table 5-2 for both impervious and pervious areas. For pervious areas determine the soil type and take a weighted average of the R_v appropriate for the site condition.

1. For projects that are designed with hydraulically separated pervious and impervious areas, determine separate R_v values, calculate separate WQVs or FCVs for impervious and pervious drainage areas, and then combine for total WQV or FCV.
2. For projects where the impervious surfaces are less than 50% of the drainage area of the site, determine separate R_v values, calculate separate WQVs or FCVs for pervious and impervious areas, and then combine for total WQV or FCV.
3. For projects where pervious areas drain to impervious areas, determine separate R_v values, calculate separate WQVs or FCVs for pervious and impervious areas, and then combine for total WQV or FCV.

Table 5-2. Volumetric Runoff Coefficients

Description	Volumetric Runoff Coefficient (R_v)
100% Impervious	0.89
90% Impervious	0.73
80% Impervious	0.60
70% Impervious	0.49
60% Impervious	0.41
50% Impervious	0.34
Clayey Soils [1]	0.22
Sandy Soils [1]	0.03

[1] *Value for an average California 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event depth of 1.26 inches*

The SSHM volumetric runoff coefficients shown in the table above are from *Caltrans Technical White Paper: Runoff Coefficient Evaluation for Volumetric BMP Sizing*, dated May 29, 2015.

As more data is received on this, the volumetric runoff coefficient table may be updated to reflect more accurate values for runoff from the highway environment.

5.3.4.2 Water Quality Volume and Water Quality Flow Combined Mechanism for Treatment

For locations where the entire WQV cannot be infiltrated, flow-through treatment devices must be considered for treatment of the remaining WQV. The Caltrans Infiltration Tool is a method for calculating the WQV treated; other methods may be used.

5.3.4.3 Water Quality Flows (WQF)

The Rational Method can be used for calculations of WQF and FCF. The calculations for runoff coefficients in HDM 819.2 are applicable for larger storms used for highway drainage design and flood flows and therefore may overestimate the WQF and FCF. The PE should use the flow-based runoff coefficients listed in Table 5-3 with the Rational Method to calculate WQF and FCF.

Table 5-3. Flow-Based Runoff Coefficients

Surface Type	Runoff Coefficient I
Roofs	0.90
Concrete	0.80
Stone, brick, or concrete pavers with mortared joints and bedding	0.80
Stone, brick, or concrete pavers with sand joints and bedding	0.10 – 0.70
Asphalt	0.70
Pervious concrete	0.10 – 0.60
Porous asphalt	0.10 – 0.55
Grid pavements with grass or aggregate	0.10
Crushed aggregate	0.10
Grass	0.10

The flow-based runoff coefficients shown in the table above are from *Runoff Coefficients for Estimating Water Quality Flow Rates (CTSW-TM-16-314.17.2D)*, February 8, 2017.

The rainfall intensities listed below are from the *Statewide Stormwater Management Plan* (SWMP) and have been previously negotiated with the California State Water Resources Control Boards (SWRCBs) and Regional Water Quality Control Boards (RWQCBs). These rainfall intensities should be used to calculate WQF as the basis for designing the approved flow-based Treatment BMPs.

The listed values of rainfall intensity are used in the Rational Formula (Q=CiA) to estimate runoff from contributing drainage areas that would discharge flow to flow-based Treatment BMPs. The resulting runoff rate would be the design WQF to be used at a specific site.

- Region 1 (North Coast): 0.22 inches/hour ("/hr) for Siskiyou and Modoc Counties, 0.27 "/hr for Trinity, Mendocino, Glen, and Lake Counties and 0.36 "/hr for Del Norte, Humboldt, Marin, and Sonoma Counties.
- Region 2 (San Francisco Bay): 0.20 "/hr region wide.
- Region 3 (Central Coast): 0.22 "/hr for Santa Cruz County and for that portion of San Mateo County within the region; 0.20 "/hr for Santa Clara County, 0.18 "/hr for San Benito, Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties and 0.26 "/hr for Santa Barbara County and that portion of Ventura County within the Region.
- Region 4 (Los Angeles): 0.20 "/hr region wide.
- Region 5 (Central Valley): 0.16 "/hr for portions of Lassen and Modoc Counties within the Region, all areas of Region below 1,000' elevation north of and including Sacramento and Amador Counties and below 2,000' elevation south of Sacramento and Amador Counties, and all elevations on the west side of the Region (rain shadow side of the Coast Range), 0.20 "/hr for elevations in the Sierra Nevadas between 1,000' and 4,000' in the north and between 2,000' and 4,000' in the south, and 0.24 "/hr for all elevations above 4,000' in the Sierra Nevadas
- Region 6 (Lahontan) Where there are location-specific requirements (Truckee River, East and West Forks Carson River, Mammoth Creek, and Lake Tahoe), the WQF will conform to the Basin Plan requirement for runoff from impervious areas. Where runoff from pervious areas contributes to the flow to the treatment device, the WQF value to be used will be as specified in the following two items:

- The WQF to be used for that portion of the Lahontan Region including Inyo County and areas southward will be 0.16 "/hr. The WQF to be used for pervious surface areas within the Mammoth Creek watershed will be 0.16 "/hr.
- For all other areas of the Lahontan Region other than as indicated in item a) above, the WQF to be used will be 0.20 "/hr. This includes pervious surface areas of the Truckee River, Carson River East and West Forks and Lake Tahoe Hydrologic units.

- Region 7 (Colorado River Basin): 0.16 "/hr region wide.
- Region 8 (Santa Ana): 0.20 "/hr region wide.
- Region 9 (San Diego): 0.20 "/hr region wide.

To calculate FCF as the basis of designing flow-based full-capture trash devices, the 1-year, 1-hour event intensity is obtained from the NOAA Atlas 14 online maps at:

https://hdsc.nws.noaa.gov/hdsc/pfds/pfds_map_cont.html

In addition to designing for the WQF or FCF, the PE must ensure that the flow-based Treatment BMPs include a bypass, an overflow device, or are sized to convey peak discharges from larger design storms consistent with Section 861.3 of the *HDM*.

5.3.5 Selection Prioritization of Treatment BMPs

The PE shall follow the Checklist T-1, Part 1 process when Treatment BMPs are required for the project. The PE then sites Treatment BMPs throughout the project that are designed to treat a cumulative impervious area that is equal to or greater than the PCTA. To assist the PE, Checklist T-1, Part 1 includes an overall project treatment tracking table, Table E-1. Table E-2 tracks the areas treated and percent WQV/WQF/FCV/FCF treated by each BMP.

When selecting the preferred BMPs, the PE should also consider information identified by the environmental document, which may affect the selection of Treatment BMPs for the design. Water quality requirements for TMDLs, 303 (d) listings, ASBS, highway operations (traction sand), trash, drainage, safety, and other feasibility parameters should all be considered in the final design of Treatment BMPs.

Appendix B provides general descriptions and information for the approved Treatment BMPs, as well as criteria for considering existing roadway features as Treatment BMPs. Design guidelines for each BMP can be found on the Department's website at:

https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/hydraulics-stormwater/treatment-bmp-design-guidance

5.3.6 Incorporation of Non-Approved Treatment BMPs

Only Treatment BMPs that have been approved for statewide use should be incorporated into projects. If project conditions prohibit the use of approved BMPs, then the PE must consult with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator. The district has the option of proposing the incorporation of a non-approved BMP as a pilot project (see BMP Development and Implementation in Section 4 of the SWMP). The Stormwater Advisory Teams (SWATs) and the appropriate HQ functional units must approve this proposal. The district's proposal to HQ for a pilot project should include the following information:

- Description of project (including why approved BMPs cannot be implemented)

- Description of proposed pilot BMP
- Cost of installation, maintenance, monitoring, and decommissioning (if not approved)
- Design calculations, plans, specifications or NSSPs, and maintenance protocols
- Anticipated life-cycle maintenance requirements
- Monitoring Program
- Evaluation criteria

After the SWATs and the HQ functional units review the submittals and agree that the BMP should be pilot tested, the district would be allowed to incorporate the non-approved BMP into their project. It should be noted that a pilot technology is normally approved only for deployment in a limited quantity within a given project. Pilot technologies are not typically deployed in large numbers within a single project or deployed within multiple projects unless it would be considered necessary to evaluate the performance under varying site conditions. The purpose of the pilot project is to evaluate the feasibility of a particular technology, with further deployment being dependent upon the outcome of the pilot project.

The pilot BMP design and the BMP contributing drainage areas must be documented in the Stormwater Data Report. The contributing drainage area documentation must include an accounting of impervious and pervious areas treated.

5.3.7 Documenting Treatment

The PE is responsible for quantifying and reporting the areas treated by the project BMPs. Document all treated areas in the project SWDR using Tables E-1 and E-2 or equivalent tables (see Section 6.6 for additional information). There is considerable information to be documented for each permanent BMP during the project development process. Information will be documented for individual BMPs, overall project compliance, and if applicable, Alternative Compliance use or generation.

Any project that reduces the effectiveness of an existing treatment control must provide equivalent treatment as described in Section 4.3.1. All projects that require post construction treatment must provide treatment for the entire PCTA (defined in Section 4.3):

*PCTA = NIS + ATA Condition 1; **OR** ATA Condition 2*

The total area to be treated by project BMPs can be summarized by the following equation (defined in Section 4.3):

Total Area to be Treated = NIS + ATA Condition 1 + Alternative Compliance; ***OR*** ATA Condition 2

If it is not feasible for the project to provide treatment for the entire PCTA, the PE must inform the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to develop an alternative compliance strategy.

Projects within TMDL areas where Caltrans is a named stakeholder, or ASBS areas, may have special treatment requirements set forth in the WQAR. Consult the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator for more information.

The PE is responsible for completing the treatment summary tables (Table E-1 Overall Project Treatment Summary Table and Table E-2 Individual Treatment BMP Summary Table). Districts may modify these tables based on their needs. The WQV, WQF, FCV, or FCF (%) Treated for each Treatment BMP must be reported in the TMT Tab of the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets.

6 Stormwater Data Report Development Process

6.1 Introduction

The Stormwater Data Report (SWDR) is a document that summarizes the stormwater quality issues and design decisions made regarding project compliance with the Department's National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Permit, commonly referred to as the Caltrans Permit. A SWDR is prepared for every project except for emergency projects done under Force Account. The purpose of this section is to provide a consistent approach in the preparation of the SWDR for different types of projects and to describe the report's evolution through the project development process. The SWDR and associated checklists are initiated in the Project Initiation Document (PID) phase, refined during the Project Approval/Environmental Document (PA/ED) phase, and finalized during the Plans, Specifications, & Estimates (PS&E) phase. The SWDR and its corresponding template and checklists are described in this section and are included in the appendices.

6.2 Project Types, Scopes, and Magnitude

The Department manages many types of projects with different scopes and magnitudes. For compliance with the Caltrans Permit, projects can be segregated into three major categories: routine maintenance projects, new development/redevelopment projects, Construction Manager/General Contractor (CMGC), locally funded, Job Order Contract (JOC), and design-build projects. While the information below is for standard Caltrans capital projects, it illustrates the appropriate SWDR timing for CMGC, design build and other projects.

6.3 How the SWDR Fits into the Project Delivery Process

6.3.1 Project Initiation Document (PID)

The purpose of PID is to establish a well-defined purpose and need statement and a proposed project scope with a reliable cost estimate and schedule. The PID is used for programming the project, for proceeding to the environmental evaluation, and for the presentation of project alternatives.

The PID process is intended to obtain management approval of candidate projects, identify right-of-way (RW) acquisition needs, and determine costs for programming the project. Therefore, it is essential that all work incidental to the project, including stormwater quality items, be included in the PID scope and cost estimates. It is understood, however, that a project's scope may change as environmental or other studies are completed.

A Preliminary Environmental Assessment Report (PEAR) is prepared by the Environmental Unit when requested by the Design Unit and is used to provide necessary information for the completion of a PID. The purpose of a PEAR is to determine whether there are any potentially significant environmental issues, including water quality, which could affect the viability of any project alternative.

The SWDR level of detail at this phase may be limited based on the available information developed for the project, and the SWDR should reflect the information presented in the PEAR and PID. The Project Engineer (PE) should prepare the SWDR in coordination with the designated Environmental Staff who prepared the PEAR to verify that the information included in both documents is consistent.

6.3.2 Project Approval/Environmental Document (PA/ED)

The PA/ED process is generally initiated after the PID is approved and the project is programmed. Under certain conditions, the PID and PA/ED phases are completed concurrently; when this occurs, the PE should coordinate the SWDR efforts with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator. At the PA/ED phase, the intent is to obtain management approval of a selected project alternative, identify RW acquisition needs, further define costs, and develop the necessary environmental documents in accordance with the *California Environmental Quality Act* and *National Environmental Policy Act* (CEQA/NEPA).

In general, the Environmental Unit, in consultation with the Project Development Team (PDT), will conclude if there is potential for one or more substantive water quality impacts to the project. If so, a Water Quality Assessment Report (WQAR) is prepared. The WQAR is typically prepared during the PA/ED phase of a project. The WQAR is a technical report included in the appendix of the CEQA/NEPA document and is typically prepared by the Environmental Unit. The PE should coordinate with the Environmental Unit staff and with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator to ensure updates to the SWDR are consistent with the project WQAR and/or approved Environmental Document. PID and PA/ED SWDRs are planning documents and shall not be referenced in the Environmental Document or the WQAR.

The PA/ED SWDR supports the Project Report and should not be signed until the Environmental Document is approved as the SWDR needs to reflect the preferred alternative.

6.3.3 Plans, Specifications, and Estimate (PS&E)

The purpose of the PS&E process is to prepare full, complete, and accurate plans, specifications, quantities, and estimates of cost for the selected project alternative including Best Management Practices (BMPs) and other water quality measures. These documents are used for eventual contract advertising and bidding on a project. The SWDR documents the stormwater quality strategy of the project and will be updated during this phase to document the design details of BMPs incorporated into the project.

6.4 Stormwater Data Report (SWDR)

The SWDR documents the relevant stormwater design decisions made regarding BMP considerations and potential water quality impacts.

Two goals of the SWDR are:

- To provide sufficient information at all phases to document the project's site data (see 6.4.3.2) and the overall stormwater quality strategies to meet the Department's regulatory commitments; and
- To obtain and document consensus between the different functional units and to document coordination efforts with the Regional Water Quality Control Board (RWQCB) regarding water quality issues.

There are five types of SWDRs including a Micro Form, a Short Form, and a Long Form. Additionally, a PID Project Initiation Report (PIR) Short Form SWDR and PID (PIR) Long Form SWDR have been developed to minimize the resources required for SWDR development at the PID phase.

See Appendix E to understand the use of these forms. The following provides general information on each section of the SWDR that should be discussed. Checklists that support each section of the SWDRs are provided in the appendices to assist the PE in developing the SWDR.

6.4.1 Cover Page

The SWDR cover page is intended to provide a brief summary of the stormwater quality issues and stormwater requirements applicable to the project.

The Micro SWDR is used for projects determined to have no stormwater impacts (e.g., sign board replacements, MBGR, or Crash Cushion replacements, HMA overlays, building interior remodels). The use of the form is at the discretion of the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator. Projects meeting the requirements of a Micro SWDR may develop one report that is applicable to all project phases (PID, PA/ED, and PS&E). The Micro SWDR is only updated when the project scope changes. The Micro SWDR must be signed by the PE (Licensed Engineer or Landscape Architect) in charge of the SWDR development and the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

The Short Form SWDR cover page lists questions that must be answered to determine if a project qualifies for preparation of a Short Form SWDR. The Short Form SWDR must be signed by the PE (Licensed Engineer or Landscape Architect) in charge of the SWDR development, the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

The Long Form SWDR must be signed by the PE (Licensed Engineer or Landscape Architect) in responsible charge of the project, the Project Manager (PM), the Maintenance Representative, the Landscape Architect, and the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator who verifies that stormwater quality design issues have been identified and accurately documented in the SWDR.

The PID (PIR) SWDR, both Short and Long form versions, are like the standard Short and Long Form described above but are only valid for the PID project phase. The specific difference is in the level of detail required to be completed for each SWDR section. The PID (PIR) SWDR is updated to a standard SWDR at the PA/ED Project phase.

The PE's stamp is only required at PS&E. The PS&E milestone is not complete until the SWDR is stamped by the PE, and signatures from the applicable functional unit representatives have been obtained. The District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator should be the last to sign the cover page.

6.4.2 Section 1 – Project Description

Section 1 of the SWDR, *Project Description*, is required for all project types and at all phases.

The project description should describe the type of project and the major engineering features and improvements proposed. The project description can be taken from other project reports. At the PID phase, the project description will describe all alternatives of the improvements considered. At the PA/ED phase, the project description will only include the preferred alternative. At the PS&E phase, the project description will summarize the major project engineering features of the selected alternative.

A description of how the disturbed soil area (DSA) was calculated must be provided in Section 1. At the PID and PA/ED phases, the DSA should consider all areas where ground disturbance is anticipated. During the PS&E phase, the DSA should include all areas of grading work (cut/fill), new impervious surface (NIS), and any unstabilized areas designated for construction staging and access to the project. Routine maintenance activities described in Section 4.2 above are exempt from the DSA calculation requirement in the Construction General Permit (CGP).

Describe whether Treatment BMPs are required by documenting the NIS, which includes the net new impervious (NNI) and the replaced impervious surface (RIS).

If the NIS is 10,000 ft^2 or more for highway facilities and 5,000 ft^2 or more for non-highway facilities, a description of how the PCTA was calculated must be provided. This will document the basis of the PCTA listed on the Long Form SWDR Cover Sheet. If NIS is calculated as less than 10,000 ft^2, document PCTA as "not applicable" on the SWDR Cover Sheet. Document the PCTA by determining the NIS and the Additional Treated Area (ATA) for the project, see Section 4.3. Describe any existing Treatment BMPs that are being removed or modified as part of the project and describe how the previously treated area is being addressed.

Note: Projects with a PID approval date prior to January 1, 2023 that commence construction before January 1, 2028 or within seven years of the PID approval, whichever is sooner, are required to provide treatment if the NIS is 1 acre or more. Projects meeting the above criteria may use the following sample text:

The PID for this project was signed on MM/DD/YYYY, and the commence construction date is MM/DD/YYY. Therefore, the project meets the exception granted under the Caltrans Permit (Section C3.10).

6.4.3 Section 2 – Site Data and Stormwater Design Issues

6.4.3.1 Checklists SW-1, SW-2, and SW-3

Section 2 of the SWDR summarizes the applicable information provided from Checklist SW-1, SW-2, and SW-3 in Appendix E. As the project progresses the checklists are updated and finalized. Checklists SW-1, SW-2, and SW-3 are provided for the purpose of assisting the PE in developing the SWDR and are not required to be attached to the SWDR, unless requested by the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

Using the categories in Checklist SW-1, list the references used to gather pertinent information required for stormwater planning and design. Checklist SW-1 should be completed at all phases, citing the source and date of the information collected for each entry and document pertinent information in the SWDR narrative.

Checklist SW-2 provides a guide to collecting information relevant to project stormwater quality issues. The PE should coordinate with other Caltrans functional units (e.g., Environmental, Landscape Architecture, Maintenance, Construction) and the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator as necessary when compiling and reviewing the information required by SW-2. This information is critical in facilitating the selection and design of the preferred BMPs.

Checklist SW-3 provides direction to the PE to avoid or reduce potential stormwater impacts. The planning phase represents the greatest opportunity to avoid adverse water quality impacts as alignments and RW requirements are developed and refined. Avoiding impacts may reduce or eliminate the need for mitigation measures. The PE should coordinate with the Environmental Unit when compiling and reviewing the information required by Checklist SW-3.

6.4.3.2 Discussion of Pertinent Data

The five main categories for site data collections are water quality, geotechnical, topographic, hydraulic, and climatic. This data should be collected from the various functional units. Field visits should also be conducted to gather pertinent data.

Project-specific information may vary depending on the project phase. General information from credible online sources, including Department websites (e.g., Water Quality Planning Tool) or other government websites may be used during the PID phase. As the project progresses the SWDR must be updated to reflect the new and updated project information. Generally, a Hydrology and Hydraulic Report/Drainage Report, a Geotechnical Design Report, and a Materials Report are prepared and the pertinent stormwater related data from these reports should be summarized in the SWDR.

Water Quality Data

The PE should coordinate with the Environmental Unit and the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to determine the water quality data to be presented. This coordination enables the PE to share project-specific information, and to ensure consistency between the evaluation of the project design or alternatives and the completion of the stormwater checklists.

- Identification of receiving water bodies:
  - Describe crossings and distance from the project's outfalls
  - Include the hydrologic area or sub-area name and/or number
  - Identify if any of the receiving water bodies are on the 303(d) list / describe pollutants of concern (POC)
  - Identify if the project is in a Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) watershed where Caltrans is a named stakeholder and elements of the TMDL Compliance Plan applicable to the project
  - Identify if the project is directly discharging to an ASBS and document the distance to the ASBS
  - Identify whether the project is within a Significant Trash Generation Area (STGA)
- Existing hazardous material/waste information:
  - Describe hazardous waste or contaminants that impact stormwater BMP (e.g., soils containing aerially deposited lead, groundwater contamination)
  - If the construction site area is known to be contaminated from past land uses, then the PE should give special consideration to including the additional analyses within the project. The District Hazardous Waste Coordinator and District NPDES Coordinator should be consulted to determine the necessary monitoring, so that it may be accounted for in the PS&E.
- Relevant Pollution Control Requirements
  - Identify which RWQCB(s) jurisdiction the Project is within and any pertinent regional criteria that may be applicable to Project (discuss project specific permit requirements in Section 5 of the SWDR, see Section 6.4.6)
  - Describe specific water quality objectives or requirements from the Basin Plan that apply to the Project
  - Describe elements of the TMDL Compliance Plan that apply if the project is within a TMDL watershed

  - Summarize existing Treatment BMP(s) within the project limits and describe how the BMP(s) or contributing watershed(s) will be impacted by the project
  - Summarize any additional water quality requirements applicable to the Project or that have been identified by the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator

If separate reports have been prepared for any of the above and the topic is pertinent to the project's stormwater quality strategy, summarize the data in the SWDR narrative.

Geotechnical Data

Geotechnical data should be included in the SWDR when there are mass stability issues or whenever there are geotechnical issues that should be considered in the development and implementation of Treatment BMPs. For projects where permanent stormwater treatment devices are proposed, infiltration testing and depth to seasonal high groundwater may be needed.

At the PID phase, if historic soil information or previous geotechnical reports from projects within the area are not available, the Natural Resources Conservation Service Soil Survey Reports and Maps can be used to identify general soil features including hydrologic soil groups and erosion potential. If earthen type BMPs are anticipated, coordination of geotechnical tests required for inputs to the Caltrans Infiltration Tool are recommended to be requested at the PID phase only if adequate funding and Treatment BMP locations are available. Refer to Appendix B and the OHSD design guidance website for information that is needed during BMP design.

At the PA/ED phase, preliminary geotechnical or site investigation studies are typically prepared for projects. These studies should be used to further develop the discussion of the geotechnical features within the project. Well records can provide information regarding the depth from surface to seasonal high groundwater.

At the PS&E phase, the project-specific Geotechnical Design Report is typically finalized and should be used to update geotechnical information presented in the SWDR. The SWDR should generally describe features that relate to stormwater quality design (e.g., types of soils, groundwater depth and conditions, dewatering operations that may be necessary). When stormwater treatment is required, this information may include infiltration rates and any detailed soil testing performed at proposed stormwater Treatment BMP locations.

Topographic Data

Survey needs should be evaluated and identified early in the PID process and throughout the entire project development process. After the first evaluation of survey needs, the PE should submit the initial survey request accompanied by a location map. At the PID and PA/ED phases, or for projects where detailed contour mapping is not available, general topographic data can be obtained from United States Geological Survey (USGS) Quad Maps and aerial mapping or photo mosaics.

During the PS&E phase, or as topographic and survey information becomes available, the SWDR should briefly describe:

- Survey of existing features that may be used for stormwater design
- Existing cover and types of vegetation present

Hydraulic Data

The SWDR should describe the general drainage patterns within a project area and discuss drainage improvements that may be incorporated into the project that have the potential to affect water quality. The USGS StreamStats can also be used during PID phase for determining rapid stability assessment (RSA) applicability. The SWDR should present the following hydraulic data as it becomes available, depending on the complexity and phase of the project:

- Rapid Stability Assessment (RSA): When an RSA is required, summarize the water bodies evaluated and if higher level analyses are necessary. Document the number of RSAs, and number of Levels 1-3 performed. Discuss additional work proposed for the project due to the Levels 1-3 performed
- Groundwater Data
- Stream Flow Data
- Drainage Area – Routes and patterns (define sub-basins)
- Identification of drainage areas affecting or tributary to drinking water reservoirs and/or recharge facilities as identified in the District Annual Workplan.

The local Maintenance Supervisor should be consulted to identify existing drainage and erosion problems.

Climatic Data

At all phases, general climatic data should be summarized. If vegetated stormwater measures are considered, it must be determined in consultation with District Landscape Architect (DLA) whether the area’s climate is favorable for long-term vegetation establishment. Precipitation information should be presented, as it is necessary for sizing potential BMPs.

The following rainfall information should be presented as applicable:

Caltrans Permit Post Construction Requirements:

- 85th percentile 24-hour storm event used for the design of water quality volume type Treatment BMPs
- Rainfall intensity used for the design of water quality flow type Treatment BMPs
- 1-year, 1-hour Full Trash Capture Storm if the project contains a STGA or is required to implement Trash Capture BMPs

CGP Requirements (at PS&E, as applicable):

- Rainfall totals from a 10-year, 24-hour event expressed in inches of rainfall for determining detention time for active treatment systems

6.4.4 Section 3 – Construction Site BMPs

Section 3 of the SWDR, Construction Site BMPs, is required for all project types and at all phases. All projects are required to consider and implement Construction Site BMPs to prevent discharge of sediment or contaminants from the construction site and impacting receiving waters. If the project site is subject to stormwater run-on flows from off-site sources, the PE must identify and quantify the expected flow rates so that appropriate control measures (i.e., pipe or channel) can be implemented to convey concentrated flows around or through the site. See Appendix C.2 for more information regarding design of clear water diversions.

TMDL specific requirements for construction need to be identified. Some TMDL watersheds will require ongoing RUSLE2 modeling to demonstrate compliance with TMDL requirements. These requirements need to be identified early so that the appropriate resources are allocated. Consult the District/Regional Design Stormwater or NPDES Coordinator for early determination of TMDL requirements. Any TMDL specific requirements will be detailed in the WQAR or equivalent when prepared.

The Construction Site BMP Consideration Form is a resource to assist in developing a Construction Site BMP strategy. Refer to 6.4.4.1 for documenting Construction concurrence.

At the PID phase, a general discussion of the expected Construction Site BMP strategy should be provided. The strategy should consider the potential impacts to water quality during construction, in accordance with Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) requirements of the CGP or the Water Pollution Control Program (WPCP). Appendix C provides a description of approved Construction Site BMPs, and Appendix F provides general guidance on estimating Construction Site BMP costs.

At the PA/ED phase, the Construction Site BMP strategy should be updated based on the selected alternative and planned geometry. Additionally, the strategy should be expanded based on findings from the related studies (environmental, geotechnical, etc.) prepared for the project.

At the PS&E phase, the Construction Site BMPs should be selected and documented. Checklists CS-1, Parts 1-6 are provided in Appendix C to assist the PE in selecting appropriate individual and lump sum Construction Site BMPs. Unless requested by the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator, these checklists are not required to be attached to the SWDR. The selection of Construction Site BMPs should be coordinated with the District Construction Stormwater Coordinator and Construction field personnel. To further identify Construction Site BMPs that are appropriate for a project, refer to the following:

- *Storm Water Quality Handbook – Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMP) Manual* https://dot.ca.gov/programs/construction/storm-water-and-water-pollution-control/manuals-and-handbooks
- Division of Construction – Stormwater Quality webpage (https://dot.ca.gov/programs/construction/storm-water-and-water-pollution-control) contains links to resources for developing a SWPPP, a WPCP, and stormwater quality information that can be included in the Information Handout.
- *California Stormwater Quality Association (CASQA)– Stormwater Best Management Practice Handbook Portal: Construction*

The SWDR should provide construction BMP estimate information:

- Provide an estimate (costs are for Caltrans internal use only) for Construction Site BMPs using the estimating methods in F.3 Estimating Methods. An appropriate estimate is required at all project phases. Caltrans Construction BMP Cost Estimator may be used to prepare the Construction BMP Estimate. Guidance can be found at the following website:

https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/cost-estimating-improvements

At PID and PA/ED, the following language could be used:

Project specific BMP measures will be specified and quantified during the design phase. Temporary construction BMPs have been estimated at (__%) of the total project cost ($____) in accordance with the Project Initiation Cost Estimate Method, Appendix F.3.1.

At PS&E, the Construction BMP Estimate is a required attachment and should be referenced in Section 3 of the SWDR.

- Identify existing features, structures, facilities, or practices that may be used by the Contractor during construction for stormwater quality purposes.
- Identify and quantify the expected stormwater run-on to the project site from off-site sources.
- Identify whether dewatering will be required during the construction of the project. Describe construction operations requiring dewatering. Refer to Site Dewatering Guidance for additional information.
- Describe non-standard BMPs necessary to protect water quality or as required by project-specific permits (e.g., Active Treatment System (ATS), clear water diversion).
- Describe TMDL specific construction requirements including prescriptive BMPs, and RUSLE2 modeling.

The BMPs identified in the SWDR should reflect the measures included in the plans, project specifications and bid items anticipated during the PS&E phase. The SWDR should describe the decisions and rationale behind the selection of BMPs, non-standard BMPs and specifications, or other specialty items related to stormwater compliance developed by the PE.

6.4.4.1 Construction Concurrence Documentation

Before requesting concurrence on the Construction Site BMP strategy, the PE should develop the SWDR and supporting documentation justifying BMP selection, quantities, locations, sampling/analysis, and monitoring requirements. Documentation may include maps showing upstream watersheds including calculations, design details, and BMP controls for site run-on, as applicable. This may be useful for determining Construction Site BMPs including those required to divert water around or through the project site. Consider using the Construction Site BMP Consideration Form when developing the BMP strategy.

6.4.4.2 CGP Coverage and Risk Level Determination

Generally, projects that disturb one acre or more of soil must apply for coverage under the CGP and will require a project risk level (RL) determination. The project RL determination should be summarized in Section 3 of the SWDR. Projects that disturb between 1 and less than 5 acres of soil and have a construction duration of less than one year may be exempt from the CGP through a Rainfall Erosivity Waiver. For projects that qualify for a Rainfall Erosivity Waiver, the PE must ensure the construction dates used to obtain the waiver are reflected in the project specifications and that the eligibility information is provided to the RE to enter into Stormwater Multiple Application Report Tracking system (SMARTS).

The Rainfall Erosivity Waiver eligibility is determined based on project location, length of construction period, and time of year. If the dates used to evaluate waiver applicability are changed, the project may no longer be eligible. If a waiver application is approved by the State Water Board, a unique waiver identification number will be issued and will be valid between construction start date and date of final stabilization.

The R factor is calculated using the *EPA Rainfall Erosivity Calculator* at:

https://lew.epa.gov/

Although use of the EPA Rainfall Calculator to determine for Erosivity Waiver and the R Factor is required by the CGP, it is not always available online. At such times, the California State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB) suggests the use of RUSLE2 or the use of the manual tabular method as described in *EPA 833-F-00-014 Environmental Protection Agency Fact Sheet 3.1*.

Project sites not hydrologically connected to waters of the United States can apply for a Notice of Non-Applicability (NONA) to be exempt from CGP coverage. If a NONA application is approved by the State Water Board, a unique NONA identification number will be issued. Include the No Discharge Technical Report in the RE File.

The Rainfall Erosivity Waiver, NONA, and RL determination should be performed and refined at each subsequent phase of a project as the project schedule is developed and detailed information regarding the existing site characteristics become available. Consult the Caltrans Risk Level Determination Guidance for additional information.

Risk Level Determination

The CGP contains a risk-based permitting approach by establishing three levels of risk possible for a construction site. The Risk Level (RL) is calculated in two parts: 1) project sediment risk, and 2) receiving water risk. The PE is to determine the RL for a project when a SWPPP under the CGP is to be prepared during construction. The RL determination quantifies sediment and receiving water characteristics and uses these results to determine the overall site RL, defined as either Levels 1, 2, and 3. Level 3 is the highest RL and requires more extensive monitoring and reporting. Projects with non-contiguous construction areas (more than ¼ mile apart) may be required to perform RL determinations at each area. A complete methodology for determining the RL for a project is available at:

https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/hydraulics-stormwater/bsdd-project-risk-level-determination-guidance

In addition to summarizing the RL determination in Section 3, the RL determination documentation is required as one of the Required Attachments of the SWDR.

6.4.4.3 Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and Water Pollution Control Program (WPCP)

The Caltrans Permit requires a SWPPP for every project that meets the definition of Construction as outlined in the CGP. Specifically, a SWPPP is required when one of the following conditions exists:

- The project involves one (1) acre or more of contiguous (less than ¼ mile apart) soil disturbance; or
- The RWQCB designates in writing that the project requires a SWPPP based upon water quality concerns, even if the project does not meet the preceding requirement.

The following project special conditions may apply:

- Projects that solely maintain the original line and grade, hydraulic capacity, and original purpose of the facility are defined as routine maintenance and excluded from coverage under the CGP;
- Projects that do not directly or indirectly discharge to a receiving water body can apply for a Notice of Non-Applicability (NONA) to be exempt from CGP coverage;
- Projects that have land disturbance between 1 and less than 5 acres and an R factor less than 5 may qualify for a Rainfall Erosivity Waiver (See Sections 1.4.4.1 and 6.4.4.20);
- All projects within the Lake Tahoe Hydrologic Unit must adhere to the general construction permit issued by the Lahontan RWQCB;
- Projects within tribal lands or federal reserves must adhere to the US EPA CGP;
- Projects, or portions thereof, that discharge to ASBS must be granted an approved exception by the SWRCB; and
- Projects, or portions thereof, that discharge to a combined sewer system or in combination with municipal sewage may be excluded from the CGP.

Consult with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator to determine if any of these exceptions apply. All applicable exceptions must be documented in the SWDR.

Projects that do not require a SWPPP must have a WPCP. The purpose of both the SWPPP and the WPCP is to identify construction/contractor activities that could discharge pollutants in stormwater, and provide descriptions of measures or practices to control these pollutants. Both the SWPPP and the WPCP are the responsibility of the Contractor to prepare.

6.4.4.4 Active Treatment Systems (ATS)

An ATS may sometimes be necessary to meet the effluent limits of the CGP for turbidity and pH in stormwater. Under the CGP, an ATS is recommended for use at high risk work sites, including those with limited space for sizing proper containment and detention facilities. Information on the use, selection, and cost estimating for ATS is provided in Appendices C and F.

If use of an ATS has been included in the design, summarize the evaluation of why additional Construction Site BMPs could not be used to comply with the CGP requirement in the SWDR narrative. Also, document the ATS design assumptions and include all design calculations as part of the Supplemental Attachments.

6.4.5 Section 4 – Maintenance BMPs

Section 4 of the SWDR, Maintenance BMPs, is required when Maintenance BMPs, independent of other treatment, are deployed on a project. These BMPs can be found in *Caltrans Stormwater Quality Handbook Maintenance Staff Guide* at the following website:

https://dot.ca.gov/programs/environmental-analysis/stormwater-management-program

The Maintenance Staff Guide is the operations and maintenance plan for the state highway system. It satisfies the Permit provision that BMPs be maintained.

If Maintenance BMPs are not deployed, then state "No Maintenance BMPs independent of other Treatment BMPs apply to this project". The PE should coordinate with the District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator or Maintenance Area Manager to determine Maintenance BMP needs on a project.

A typical Maintenance BMP related to stormwater quality that could be considered are anti-litter signs based on public need. Caltrans conducts a signage program that warns against dumping and littering. Another example is storm drain stenciling. Stenciling messages at storm drain inlets located at highway facilities such as park and ride lots, rest areas and vista points assists the Department in educating the public about stormwater runoff pollution. An important Maintenance BMP is Maintenance Vehicle Pullouts. The pullout prevents sediment tracking onto the road surface.

TBMP markers are required for all existing and newly installed Treatment BMPs, unless specifically requested to be omitted by the District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator. PEs should contact the District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator who can identify specific Maintenance BMPs such as Treatment BMP location signage (i.e., paddle marker) and storm drain stenciling including types, and specifications. Additional information on BMP marking is found in Appendix B.1.7.

Maintenance BMPs ancillary to Treatment BMPs should be described as part of the strategy in the Treatment BMP section.

6.4.6 Section 5 – Other Water Quality Requirements and Agreements

Section 5 of the SWDR, Other Water Quality Requirements and Agreements, is only required if project-specific permits, licenses, agreements, certifications (PLACs), or other communication related to stormwater or water quality apply to the project. If no project-specific PLACs or other communication or coordination with the RWQCB apply to the project, then state "No project-specific PLACs, or other communication or coordination with the RWQCB apply to the project."

The PE should consult with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator regarding the complexity of the project and the need to consult with the RWQCB or other permitting agencies at the PID phase of the project. Consultation with the RWQCB and local regulatory agencies at this early phase is strongly recommended to coordinate project issues and develop consensus for controversial or complex stormwater quality issues. The number of coordination meetings is dependent upon the complexity of the stormwater quality issues, stormwater pollutants involved, and project site constraints. This section should be updated when permits are received; however, it is understood that some permits are received just before the Ready-to-List (RTL) date, making it impractical to revise the SWDR.

Discussions that may take place to determine which permits and agreements are required include: identifying significant, unavoidable impacts to receiving waters; potential BMPs to meet a prescribed Waste Load Allocation (WLA) and TMDL for an impaired 303(d) listed water body; dewatering requirements (some RWQCBs may require a separate dewatering permit); ADL Agreement for regulated soils; potential impacts associated with spills, especially near municipal or domestic water supply reservoirs or potable water recharge facilities; and potential impacts of unique maintenance activities or known discharges.

The required permits may include, but are not limited to, the following:

- U.S. Army Corps of Engineer Permit (404)
- U.S. Coast Guard Permit
- California Department of Fish & Wildlife (Fish and Game codes 1601/1603)

- Coastal Development Permit
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service approval
- National Marine Fisheries Services Permit
- RWQCB Permit (401)
- Industrial General Permit (for onsite batch plants)

401 conditions typically include requirements for additional sampling and monitoring during in-water work such as temporary clear water diversions, and restrictive work windows. The 401 summarizes impacts to waters, wetlands, and other features under the RWQCB jurisdiction, and it presents the measures required to avoid, minimize, or mitigate these impacts. The conditions of the 401 are included in the Environmental Commitments Record and must be satisfied prior to acceptance of the Certificate of Environmental Compliance.

Local permits and agreements that may be required include:

- San Francisco Bay Conservation and Development Commission (BCDC) permit
- Tahoe Regional Planning Agency (TRPA) permit
- Flood control district permit
- Coastal development permit

Document relevant coordination efforts with any Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) entities within the project limits. Reference appropriate information in the PLACs and summarize issues impacting permanent BMPs in the SWDR narrative.

6.4.7 Section 6 – Permanent BMPs

6.4.7.1 Introduction

Permanent BMPs consist of Design Pollution Prevention, Treatment, and other permanent measures that are considered or implemented to remain in place after construction is completed and must be maintained.

In some cases, these permanent BMPs will be designed to meet the requirements of other agencies, permit conditions, or other agreements. Any BMP to be included outside of the requirements of this PPDG at the request of another agency should be discussed in the SWDR.

If DPP or Treatment BMPs are not deployed, then state “No [type] BMPs apply to this project.”

6.4.7.2 Design Pollution Prevention BMP Strategy

Permanent DPP BMP consideration is required for all projects with DSA and is described in Section 5. Discussion of DPP BMPs is recommended if any of the questions on Checklist DPP-1, Part 1 (Appendix A) is answered as yes. If all the questions on Checklist DPP-1, Part 1 are answered no, then discussion of DPP BMPs may not be necessary. While a discussion of DPP BMPs may not be required, all projects must incorporate certain minimum measures with respect to stormwater quality, which include the following:

- Minimize Impervious Surfaces: To reduce the volume of runoff.
- Prevent Downstream Erosion: Stormwater drainage systems will be designed to avoid downstream erosion.

- Stabilize DSA: DSA will be appropriately stabilized to prevent erosion.
- Maximize Vegetated Surfaces: To prevent erosion, promote infiltration (which reduces runoff), and remove pollutants from stormwater.

If a project includes new slopes steeper than 2:1 (h:v), then a Geotechnical Design Report should be prepared. Projects including slopes between 4:1 and 2:1 (h:v) should be coordinated with Division of Engineering Services (DES) Geotechnical Design unit. Refer to TBMP Design Guidance for additional requirements for steep slopes.

At the PID phase, refer to Section 5 and Appendix A to consider whether DPP BMPs may be required for the project. A general discussion should be provided describing the overall DPP strategy that will be considered to protect stormwater quality and describe measures that will be further evaluated as information becomes available. The discussion should document project slopes that are steeper than 2:1 (h:v).

Desktop research or previous studies from other completed projects may be the only available information to verify slope stability concerns, drainage information, or environmentally sensitive areas that should be protected.

At the PA/ED phase, the DPP BMP strategy discussion should be developed to address stormwater quality impacts from the selected project alternative to meet permit requirements. The DPP strategy should consider downstream effects and slope protection efforts based on planned geometrics, including measures to address the finding of the RSA, if conducted. These efforts include working with the appropriate functional units, and if necessary, the PDT to consider DPP elements. A discussion of measures necessary for preservation of vegetation, soils, and ESAs should be included.

The PA/ED SWDR should be completed in consideration of and in coordination with the functional units preparing the following, applicable project-related reports:

- Water Quality Assessment Report (WQAR)
- Rapid Stability Assessment (RSA)
- Initial Site Assessment
- Technical documents to support National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA)/California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA)

At the PS&E phase, the PE is to prepare full, complete, and accurate plans, specifications, and estimates of cost for the selected DPP BMPs within the construction limits. Before starting detailed design, the project data from the PA/ED phase should be reviewed as well as new information available from the following, applicable project-related reports:

- Drainage Report
- Rapid Stability Assessment (RSA), as applicable
- Geotechnical Design Report
- Materials Report
- Hazardous Waste Report
- Environmental Document (ED) (Completed during PA/ED process)

The PS&E documents and project-related reports must identify proposed engineering features, which includes DPP BMPs. DPP BMPs are not shown on stand-alone sheets, but are incorporated into other design elements, such as drainage or erosion control, so the discussion in the SWDR should summarize how these proposed efforts address stormwater quality concerns.

To assist with the preparation of the PS&E documents and the discussion in the SWDR, Checklists DPP-1, Parts 1-5 are provided in Appendix A. Consider using the sub-headings shown below for the type of information that could be described in the SWDR narrative. Coordination with DES Geotechnical Design unit on project slopes between 4:1 and 2:1 (h:v) should be documented at this phase.

Note that the bulleted information below may not be required or applicable to every project. Information to be included will depend on the nature of the project and the site conditions.

Downstream Effects Related to Potentially Increased Flow, Checklist DPP-1, Parts 1 and 2

- Identify any significant increase to velocity of downstream flow based on the design storm as defined in the *Highway Design Manual* (HDM) that will potentially increase scour and erosion.
- Describe Existing vs. Post Construction Conditions
- Describe channel condition and design (e.g., will the project discharge to unlined channels?)
- Identify hydraulic changes that may affect downstream channel stability (realignment, encroachment, etc.)
- Summarize RSA findings and measures proposed to address findings

Slope/Surface Protection Systems, Checklist DPP-1, Parts 1 and 3

- Describe existing and proposed slope conditions
- Describe cut and fill requirements
- Describe the permanent erosion control strategy (e.g., plants, soils, mulch, blankets, establishment periods)
- Comply with the local Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance (WELO). When a WELO is not available, follow the California Department of Water Resources MWELO requirements per Section 6.4.7.5
- Describe how final soil stabilization will be achieved. Summarize any hard surfaces (e.g., rock blankets, paving)

Concentrated Flow Conveyance Systems, Checklist DPP-1, Parts 1 and 4

- Briefly describe the Concentrated Conveyance Systems to be implemented for the project

Preservation of Existing Vegetation, Soils, and Surface Water Buffer Areas, Checklist DPP-1, Parts 1 and 5

- Describe area(s) of clearing and grubbing identified and defined in the contract plans
- Describe existing pre-construction practices, if any, which are already in place to reduce sediment and other pollutants in stormwater discharges. These permanent control practices may consist of rock slope protection, slope paving, engineered permanent erosion control features, including those used for post construction treatment and existing stormwater Treatment BMPs

- Describe area(s) on the plans that will be placed off-limits to the contractor, if applicable (e.g., ESA areas, DPPIAs, surface water buffer areas [see Section C.1.1.13])

DPP BMPs that are infiltrating stormwater will be documented under the Treatment BMP strategy section.

6.4.7.3 Treatment BMP Strategy

Discussion of Treatment BMPs is required when the Evaluation Documentation Form (EDF) concludes that treatment is required as described in Section 4. However, even when treatment is not required, if DPPIAs have been identified that could provide treatment to generate Alternative Compliance, then document this information after consultation with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator.

If Treatment BMPs are required, Checklist T-1, Part 1 in Appendix E provides guidance on determining which Treatment BMPs to consider and is a supplemental attachment to the SWDR at all phases. Once Checklist T-1, Part 1 is completed, the PE can refer to Checklist T-1, Parts 2 – 11 in Appendix B for feasibility and design considerations regarding the specific Treatment BMPs; only attach these checklists if requested.

At the PID phase, complete the EDF based on available information and anticipated project impacts. At this phase, limited information will be available related to determining if Treatment BMPs are required. The PE should review Checklist T-1, Part 1 with all available information and based on the findings of Checklist T-1, Part 1, review the Feasibility questions of Checklist T-1, Parts 2 – 11 for the BMPs considered for the project. Other considerations at the PID phase include:

- Performing a field review of area.
- Analyzing project alternatives to develop a general overview of the potentially feasible BMPs for each alternative.
- A general discussion of BMP alternatives for each project alternative presented at PID. This may include the location of permanent BMPs and acquisition of RW, which is considered for funding allocation.
- The Geotechnical Design Report, Materials Report, and Drainage Report are initiated. Information from draft reports should be used when evaluating BMPs. A final report on materials and geotechnical issues is not required at this phase, but a draft report would be appropriate.
- BMPs must be considered as early as possible. Costs developed at this phase will be used for programming purposes; consequently, the analysis should be of sufficient detail to identify all potential BMP costs to the extent necessary.

At the PA/ED phase, the PE must review and update the EDF for the selected project alternative. If Treatment BMPs are required, a discussion of the selected project alternative scope as it relates to Treatment BMPs should be included.

Decisions and actions at this phase related to Treatment BMPs include, but are not limited to, the following items:

- Determine if the scope has changed since the PID and if so, how stormwater quality issues are affected[1]
- Evaluate potential stormwater quality impacts and options for avoiding or reducing these impacts
- Evaluate Treatment BMP applications based on the SWDR checklists and the WQAR
- Perform field review of the proposed BMP sites
- Develop calculations and supporting information for sizing Treatment BMPs.
- Identify any right-of-way needs for TBMP placement. Right-of-Way Data Sheets require preparing right-of-way cost estimates and cost estimate maps

The PE will coordinate with the appropriate PDT members to answer and complete Checklist T-1, Parts 1 – 11, and feasibility and design questions for the Treatment BMPs being considered for the project. These coordination efforts include:

- Providing information, such as soil types, groundwater information, side slope recommendations, slide locations, etc.; and
- Prepare base maps and plan sheets for PA&ED development and RW maps to identify areas needed for tentatively selected BMPs and their potential impacts.

If the project cannot treat the PCTA, then the PE, in consultation with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator, will document a proposed alternative compliance strategy in the SWDR narrative.

At the PS&E phase, the EDF and T-1 checklists are reviewed and updated. Treatment BMPs that will be implemented as part of the project are designed. Site investigations and screening for Treatment BMPs are continued during the PS&E process as needed.

The PE is responsible for quantifying and reporting the impervious and pervious areas treated by the permanent BMPs. Projects that require Treatment BMPs must complete Tables E-1, Overall Project Treatment Summary Table, and E-2. Individual Treatment BMP Summary Table. Districts may modify these tables based on their needs. The WQV, WQF, FCV, or FCF (%) Treated for each Treatment BMP must be reported in the TMT Tab of the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets.

The impervious and pervious areas treated within the Caltrans RW must be tracked separately from the areas treated outside of the Caltrans RW. The PE is responsible for completing the summary tables.

Decisions and actions at this phase related to Treatment BMPs include, but are not limited to, the following items:

- Determine if the project scope has changed since the PA/ED phase and, if so, how stormwater quality issues are affected
- Review stormwater regulations for any changes that may affect the project

[1] Scope changes for projects with an initial PID date prior to January 1, 2023 may impact treatment BMP thresholds on the project. Consult with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

- Reevaluate BMP deployment strategy and design and siting criteria
- Update or revise Treatment BMP calculations and supporting information for sizing Treatment BMPs
- Perform a field review of the proposed BMP sites
- Finalize plans showing BMP deployment (e.g., Contour Grading, Drainage Plan, Erosion Control, WPCDs)
- Coordinate utilities – identify, pothole, protect, remove and/or relocate utility facilities as necessary to clear and certify RW for deployment of stormwater BMPs

Overall project compliance, and if applicable, Alternative Compliance (used or generated) must be documented in Section 6 of the SWDR for all projects using the E-1 and E-2 tables.

If it was determined during the PA/ED or PS&E phase that alternative compliance measures are required to treat the PCTA, then the PE shall coordinate with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to develop an Alternative Compliance strategy.

The PE is to develop an estimate (for internal Caltrans use only) for each individual Treatment BMP or each DPP BMP that is being used for post construction treatment. These costs will be included in the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets and Stormwater Portal, at PS&E.

6.4.7.4 Validation of Final Soil Stabilization

Final soil stabilization of the construction site is a condition of the CGP. The CGP defines final stabilization (of soil disturbed by construction activity) to be the condition in which a project site does not pose any additional sediment discharge risk than it did prior to beginning project construction. The CGP presents three methods for demonstrating the final soil stabilization criteria stated in the CGP which are stand-alone and at the discretion of the permittee (Caltrans).

The SWDR must describe how final soil stabilization will be achieved and which method will be used. The methods are described in Section III.H.4.h of the CGP:

1. “70% Final Cover Method, - no computational proof required.”
2. “RUSLE or RUSLE2 Method, - computational proof required.”
3. “Custom Method, the discharger (i.e., Caltrans) may request approval from the Regional Water Board to use a method or analytical model other than Section III.H.4.h.i and 4.h.ii above to demonstrate that the site complies with the “final stabilization” requirements. Photos of all site areas are required to verify the custom method used.”

To qualify for termination of permit coverage, all of the conditions listed in Conditions for Termination of Coverage in Section III.H.4 of the CGP must be met. This includes the selected method, photographs, and supporting documentation.

The PE can reference the Department’s *Design Guidance for Final Soil Stabilization,* California Department of Transportation, which includes example SWDR text, at the following website:

https://dot.ca.gov/-/media/dot-media/programs/design/documents/dg-final-soil-stabilization-2016-03-18-a11y.pdf

6.4.7.5 Compliance with Local and Model Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance (MWELO)

When a local WELO or MWELO applies to the project, the Landscape Architect (LA) will provide the necessary information, as required by the local municipality or water agency, and will use narrative to describe how the project complies with the local WELO or MWELO. Where a local WELO does not apply, the LA will follow MWELO. For example, at PID and PA/ED LA may state: “The Maximum Applied Water Allowance (MAWA) and Estimated Total Water Use (ETWU) for this project will be provided at PS&E.” At PS&E LA may state: “This project complies with MWELO as it seeks to minimize erosion, limit soil compaction, minimize stormwater runoff, maximize infiltration, encourage healthy plant growth, and use irrigation water efficiently.” The MWELO Excel Worksheet, which includes all required calculations, is a Supplemental Attachment at PS&E. Where the local WELO applies, the required calculations are included in place of the MWELO Excel Worksheet.

For SWDRs at PS&E the LA should summarize and provide the following:

- The locally required WELO calculations or MWELO Excel Worksheet which includes all required calculations
- If the local water purveyor or permitting agency has requirements beyond what is required by the MWELO, describe coordination and the process to resolve any conflicts

The following project conditions do not require compliance with MWELO:

- This project does not include irrigated landscape area;
- The new landscaped area is less than 500 ft^2;
- The rehabilitated landscaped area is less than 2,500 ft^2;
- It is an ecological restoration (habitat mitigation) project without a permanent irrigation system;
- It is an erosion control (slope repair) project without a permanent irrigation system; or
- It is a revegetation project with a temporary irrigation system.

6.4.8 Required Attachments

The required attachments of a SWDR vary upon the type and phase of project; the list of required attachments is shown in Appendix E. Required attachments that must be included for all SWDRs at all phases are a Vicinity Map, and the Evaluation Documentation Form. All other required attachments are based on the water quality requirements of a given project. For example, in relation to the CGP, either a copy of the erosivity waiver or the risk level determination should be attached.

This section only discusses required SWDR attachments not already discussed in this Project Planning and Design Guide (PPDG).

6.4.8.1 Vicinity Map of the Project Area

A vicinity map that clearly identifies the location and limits of a project should be attached to the SWDR. When available, the use of the title and location map (cover page) from the contract plans is recommended. If not shown on the cover page, or if an independent vicinity map is prepared, the following are recommended items that should be provided:

- Legend
- Begin and end work stations, and begin and end construction stations and post miles
- Project ID (EA)
- Name and flow directions of nearby creeks, streams, and rivers
- North arrow and scale
- Adjacent roads, routes, or landmarks to assist in location of the project
- Name of the county, city, or identification of nearest city

6.4.8.2 Stormwater Data Report (SWDR) Attachment for Stormwater Multiple Application Report Tracking System (SMARTS) Input

Projects that are required to comply with the CGP must attach the "SWDR Attachment for SMARTS" Input at PS&E. The information on this form will assist Department staff start the Notice of Intent (NOI) process on SMARTS. The information in this attachment summarizes the Permit Registration Documents (PRD) information in a format consistent with SMARTS; this information includes the location of the project, total DSA, changes in impervious area, risk level determination, and expected method to achieve final stabilization in compliance with the CGP. A copy of the attachment is included in Appendix E or can be downloaded from the Department's website.

The 2022 CGP requires the TBMP plans and calculations (submitted or approved) as a Permit Registration Document when filing the NOI in SMARTS. Upload final plans and TMT tab from the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets.

6.4.9 Cost Estimating for BMPs

6.4.9.1 Project Planning Cost Estimates (PPCE) (PID and PA/ED)

The PE will typically use the Project Initiation Cost Estimate Method during the PID (and maybe the PA/ED) phase to estimate costs for stormwater related items. Depending upon the information available, the Project Design Cost Estimate Method (see 6.4.9.2) may be used at PA/ED. These costs will be used when developing the Project Planning Cost Estimate (PPCE). The project report (PR) cost estimate is prepared as part of the PA/ED process. The PR cost estimate is prepared using the same format as used to prepare the PID cost estimate; however, since the project alternative has been selected, the PPCE will be more refined. Appendix F of this document provides details on the methods for cost estimating stormwater BMPs as part of the overall project cost.

Topics to be discussed and considered during the preparation of the PPCE as it relates to stormwater related items include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Bid data from actual projects
- Sampling and Analysis Plans

- Temporary items listed and the costs for SWPPP or WPCP development and implementation
- Sensitive environments
- Highway planting contracts
- Supplemental funds
- Costs for potential stormwater BMPs
- Available cost options (see Appendix F)

The following functional units shall verify the completed PPCE: Stormwater Program Coordination, Landscape Architecture, Hydraulics, Environmental, Maintenance, and Right-of-Way.

6.4.9.2 Preliminary Engineer's Cost Estimates (PECE) (PS&E)

The PE will typically use the Project Design Cost Estimate Method during the PS&E phase to estimate costs for stormwater related items. These costs will be used when developing the Preliminary Engineer's Cost Estimates (PECE).

Preliminary Engineer's Cost Estimates (PECE) are initiated after the PR approval and are updated until completion of the PS&E process. These estimates are categorized as either preliminary or final. PECEs focus on the construction costs of the project, including stormwater BMPs, and are input into the AASHTOWare Project Estimate. PECEs should be considerably more detailed than PPCEs due to the completion of engineering and other studies (environmental, geotechnical, etc.) and the availability of information such as final contour mapping, materials, and drainage information, etc. Appendix F of this document provides detail on the Project Design Cost Estimate Method to include stormwater BMPs as part of the overall project cost.

The PE and the appropriate functional units verify the completed PECE.

6.4.9.3 Incorporating Stormwater BMPs into Projects

Plans showing stormwater BMP deployment are a supplemental attachment to the SWDR. PEs are required to select and estimate stormwater BMPs when developing the PS&E package. At a minimum, designers must provide a quantity table on the Summary of Quantities sheet indicating locations or stationing of these BMPs, as part of the PS&E package. In addition, all permanent BMP used for post construction treatment shall be identified on the plans (e.g., Layout Sheets, Drainage Plans). The determination of the degree and level of detail of stormwater BMPs to be included in the contract documents should be discussed between district construction and design staff during all phases of the project. District maintenance should also be consulted when incorporating permanent BMPs.

Quantity summaries must be included in the project plans to aid in determining the location and quantities for items which are located throughout the plans. The intent of having a quantity summarized is to have one location in the plan which shows the total project quantity for an item and that total corresponds to the quantity shown in the Engineer's Estimate.

Based on the intent of the quantity summaries, items without a quantity or items which are not location specific do not need to be listed. An example of this would be a Portable Temporary Concrete Washout. Other examples would include stormwater lump sum items that are not location dependent and administrative bid items (e.g., SWPPP/WPCP, Sampling and Analysis Day, Job Site Management).

Items which represent an on-site facility (e.g., Temporary Concrete Washout, Temporary Clear Water Diversion, Temporary Active Treatment System, and Biofiltration Swale) should be included in the quantity sheets.

Consult the Office Engineer for additional questions regarding appropriate items for quantity sheets.

Pertinent information used to develop the stormwater BMP strategy and quantities must be provided in the Resident Engineer file and made available in the Information Handout.

6.5 Resident Engineer's (RE) File

Stormwater quality information necessary to assist the RE in understanding the design decisions for BMP use and stormwater quality related features should be readily available within the SWDR. Provide a final copy of the PS&E SWDR, Treatment BMP Tables, and drainage plans to Construction for inclusion in the RE File. Consult the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator regarding additional information for the RE File. Provide the RE a copy of the SWDR attachment for SMARTS input form. Do not share the SWDR with the contractor.

If the project discharges to a TMDL listed watershed and requires RUSLE2 calculations during construction, ensure that the pre- and post-project RUSLE2 calculations are provided to the RE for the contractor's use.

6.6 SWDR Summary Spreadsheets

The Caltrans Permit requires collecting project data at all project phases. Caltrans maintains a Stormwater Portal database to track and report SWDR and Treatment BMP data as required by the Permit. The SWDR Summary Spreadsheets contain the data agreed to be collected for all Caltrans projects requiring a SWDR. Refer to the Caltrans SWDR Summary Spreadsheets User Guide[2] for additional information. See your District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to determine who is responsible to input the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets data into the Stormwater Portal (refer to Implementation of Caltrans Stormwater Portal memo dated April 29, 2016).

The SWDR Summary Spreadsheets are a required attachment to the SWDR Long Form at PS&E only and the data in the spreadsheets is required to be collected for Stormwater Portal entry. Districts may use the spreadsheets to collect the data and attach to the SWDR or the District/Region may use alternate summary forms to collect the data. The district designated representative then transfers the data to the Stormwater Portal. PEs may opt to directly input the data into the Stormwater Portal. See your District/Regional NPDES Coordinator or district policy for methodology to use. Whatever the method chosen, the District/Region will enter the project data into the Stormwater Portal database. The data must be entered in a timely enough fashion that it is available for Annual Report and District Annual Workplan reporting.

[2] This document including SWDR Summary Spreadsheets can be found on the web at the following site: https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/hydraulics-stormwater

If Treatment BMPs are included in the project:

- It is understood that not all the information related to Treatment BMPs can be documented at the planning phases. However, the Treatment BMP Summary Spreadsheets should be incorporated at the planning phases when data is available.
- During the PS&E phase the estimated cost of each Treatment BMP must be included in the SWDR and entered into the Stormwater Portal.
- Based upon information submitted by the PE in Tables E-1 and E-2, the District/Region, in accordance with its assigned policies, and in consultation with the PDT and project sponsor, is responsible for assigning and crediting areas treated by the project and is responsible for entering the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets project data into the Stormwater Portal database.
- If a Treatment BMP is constructed in a TMDL watershed with multiple pollutants, input the Treatment BMP once on the TMT Tab of the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets and/or Stormwater Portal. District Environmental Staff will calculate and report waste load reductions.

The PE is responsible for completing Tables E-1 and E-2, or their equivalent, and including them in the SWDR in accordance with district policy. The WQV, WQF, FCV, or FCF (%) Treated for each Treatment BMP must be reported in the TMT Tab of the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets.

APPENDIX A: APPROVED DESIGN POLLUTION PREVENTION BMPS AND CHECKLISTS

A.1 Required Minimum Design Elements for Stormwater Control

The PE must consider, and as appropriate, incorporate Design Pollution Prevention Best Management Practices (DPP BMPs) into a project to minimize impacts to water quality. These BMPs were developed in response to the three following design objectives:

- *Prevent Downstream Erosion:* Stormwater drainage systems will be designed to avoid causing or contributing to downstream erosion;
- *Stabilize Disturbed Soil Areas (DSA):* DSA will be appropriately stabilized to prevent erosion after construction; and
- *Maximize Vegetated Surfaces Consistent with Existing Caltrans Policies:* Vegetated surfaces prevent erosion and promote infiltration which reduces runoff.

The DPP BMP categories listed below and described in the following sections are designed to accomplish these objectives:

- Consideration of Downstream Effects Related to Potentially Increased Flow
- Preservation of Existing Vegetation
- Concentrated Flow Conveyance Systems
- Slope/Surface Protection Systems

If any project Design Pollution Prevention BMP creates concentrated flows, refer to Chapter 860 Roadside Channels of the Highway Design Manual (HDM). If velocities and shear stress exceed allowable limits for bare soil, the Project Engineer (PE) must consider channel lining (refer to Table 865.2 of the HDM). See Topics 864 and 865 of the HDM.

A.2 Consideration of Downstream Effects Related to Potentially Increased Flow

Description:

Changes in the velocity or volume of runoff, the sediment load, or other hydraulic changes from stream encroachments, crossings, or realignment may affect downstream channel stability. An estimate of the runoff coefficient based on the design storm for each watershed within the project site before and after construction should be considered (HDM, Section 800).

Caltrans will evaluate the effects of the potentially increased flow on the downstream channel stability using the Rapid Stability Assessment (RSA) approach (see Section 1.4.2.1). If the RSA indicates potential channel instability, more detailed engineering analyses are required to determine if countermeasures are needed to stabilize the crossing.

Appropriate Applications:

During the design of both new and reconstructed facilities, Caltrans may include new road surfaces or additional surface paving to enhance the operational safety and functionality of the facility. The PE must consider the effect of collecting and concentrating flows in roadside ditches, storm drain systems, or the effect of re-directing flows to Treatment BMPs. Diversions or overflows from large storm events in these instances may create concentrated discharges in areas that have not historically received these flows.

Implementation:

If these changes result in an increased potential for downstream effects in channels, Caltrans will consider the following:

- Reduction of total paved area;
- Modifications to channel lining materials (refer to Table 865.2 of the HDM), including but not limited to vegetation, geotextile mats, and hard surfaces;
- Energy dissipation devices at culvert outlets;
- Smoothing the transition between culvert outlets/headwalls/wingwalls and channels to reduce turbulence and scour;
- Incorporating peak flow attenuation facilities into designs to reduce peak discharges;
- Modifications to site soils to improve infiltration; and
- Integration of site design principles and sustainable infrastructure, as defined in Section 5.2.

Caltrans will implement appropriate measures to ensure that runoff from Caltrans facilities will not significantly increase downstream effects.

A.3 Preservation of Existing Vegetation

Description:

Preservation of existing vegetation involves the identification and protection of desirable vegetation that provides erosion and sediment control benefits and infiltration benefits. This DPP BMP category can include existing, non-vegetated slopes that are stabilized and that provide infiltration benefits for flows from paved areas. When feasible these existing areas should be considered for use as a DPPIA. If the area is identified as DPPIA, it should be evaluated as treatment. See Appendix B.2.

Appropriate Applications:

Caltrans will preserve existing vegetation at areas on a site where no construction activity is planned or will occur at a later date. If the area preserved also promotes infiltration from a paved area, it should be tracked and documented as treatment.

Implementation:

The following general steps should be taken to preserve existing vegetation:

- Identify and delineate in contract documents all vegetation to be retained;
- Delineate on plans the areas to be preserved in the field prior to the start of soil-disturbing activities;
- Minimize disturbed areas by locating temporary roadways to avoid stands of trees and shrubs and to follow existing contours to reduce cut and fill;

- When removing vegetation, consider impacts (increased precipitation exposure or wind damage) to the adjacent vegetation that will be preserved: and
- Avoid grubbing when removing vegetation. Much of the native vegetation will resprout from the roots when left in place after clearing vegetation for site access.

If the preserved area promotes infiltration and receives runoff from a paved area, track and document the area as treatment.

A.4 Concentrated Flow Conveyance Systems

Concentrated flow conveyance systems consist of permanent design measures that are used alone or in combination to intercept and divert surface flows and convey and discharge concentrated flows with a minimum of soil erosion. Follow the requirements of the HDM where channelized flow is required.

Infiltration potential for concentrated flow conveyance systems should be considered. If the system promotes infiltration of highway runoff from a paved area, it should be identified as a DPPIA and evaluated as treatment. See Appendix B.2.

Ditches, Berms, Dikes, and Swales

Description:

These are permanent devices typically used to intercept and direct surface runoff to a drainage facility or stabilized watercourse.

Appropriate Applications:

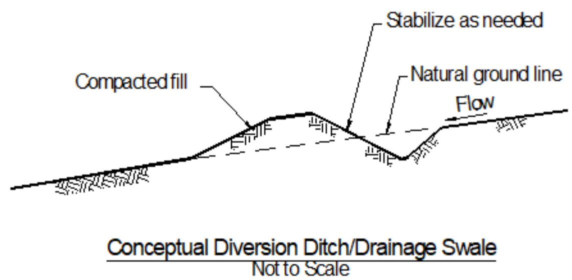
Ditches, berms, dikes, and swales are typically implemented:

- At the top of slopes to divert run-on from adjacent slopes and areas;
- At bottom and mid-slope locations to intercept sheet flow;
- At other locations to convey concentrated flows to overside drains, stormwater drainage inlets (catch basins), pipes, stabilized watercourses, and channels;
- To intercept runoff from paved surfaces; or
- Along roadways and facilities subject to flooding.

Implementation:

- Design must be in accordance with Chapter 800 of the HDM;
- Review project conditions with the intent of removing any dike not required to meet project goals. Promote sheet flow from paved surfaces to stabilized slopes where feasible.
- Design BMPs based on careful evaluation of risks due to erosion, overtopping, and flow backups or washout;
- Consider outlet protection where localized scour is anticipated;
- Examine the site for run-on from off-site sources; and
- Consider installing and utilizing permanent dikes, swales, and ditches early in the construction process.

Ditches, berms, dikes, and swales are shown in Figure A-1.



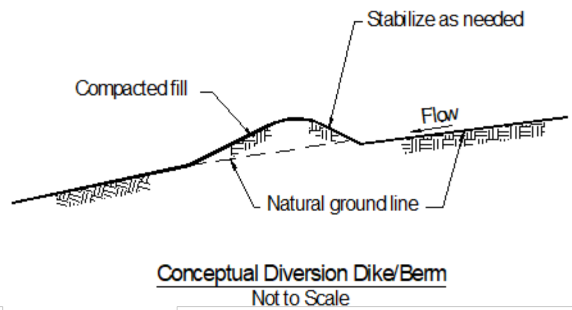


Figure A-1. Ditches, Berms, Dikes, and Swales

Note: Actual layout determined by design.

Overside Drains

Description:

Overside drains are conveyance systems used to protect slopes against erosion by collecting surface runoff from the roadbed, the tops of cuts or from benches in cut or fill slopes and conveying it down the slope to a stabilized drainage ditch or area. Overside Drains may take the form of pipe downdrains, flumes, or paved spillways.

Appropriate Applications:

Overside drains are typically used at sites where slopes may be eroded by concentrated flows.

Implementation:

- Design must be in accordance with Chapter 830 of the HDM (see Topic 834.4);
- Paved spillways are recommended on side slopes flatter than 4:1 (h:v). On steeper slopes, pipe downdrains should be used;
- Pipe downdrains are metal pipes adaptable to any slope. They are recommended where side slopes are 4:1 (h:v) or steeper;
- Flume downdrains are rectangular corrugated metal flumes with a tapered entrance. They are best adapted for low flow rates on slopes that are 2:1 (h:v) or flatter;
- Pipe and flume downdrains shall be securely anchored to the slope; and

- Drainage from benches in cut and fill slopes should be removed at intervals ranging from 300 to 500 feet.

An overside drain is shown in the *Standard Plans*, Figure D87D.

Flared Culvert End Sections

Description:

These are devices typically placed at inlets and outlets of pipes and channels to improve the hydraulic operation, retain the embankment near pipe conveyances, and to help prevent scour and minimize erosion at these inlets and outlets.

Appropriate Applications:

Use flared culvert end sections at outlets and inlets of culverts.

Implementation:

- Design must be in accordance with Chapter 800 of the HDM (see Topics 823 through 827); and
- Use with other outlet protection/velocity dissipation devices as appropriate.

A flared culvert end section is shown in Figure A-2 (see *Standard Plans* Figures D94A and D94B); other options are shown in the *Standard Plans*.

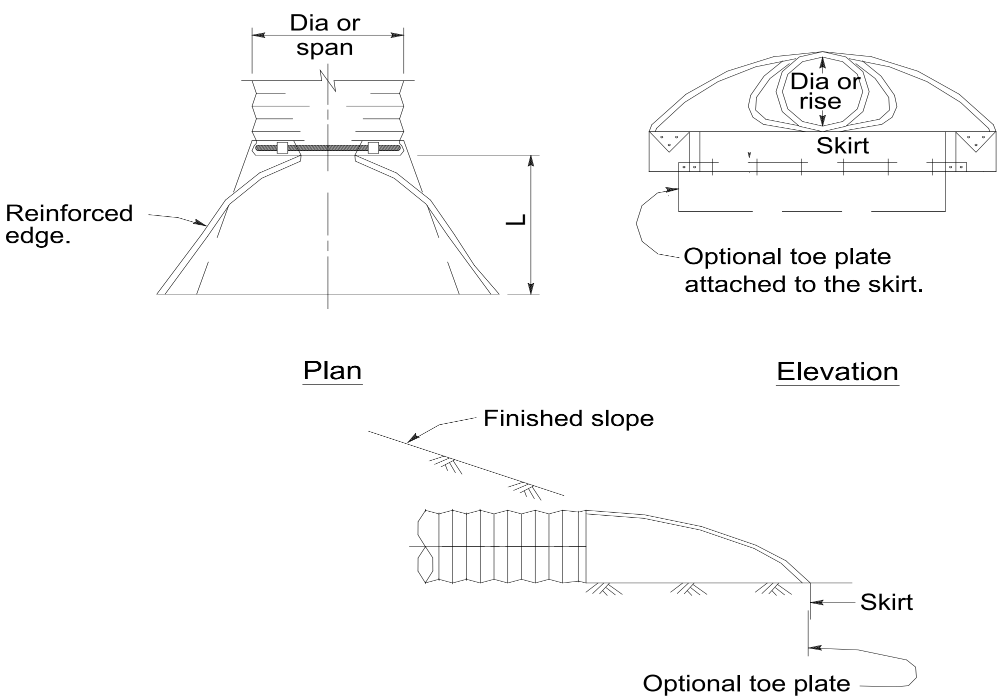


Figure A-2. Flared Culvert End Section

Outlet Protection/Velocity Dissipation Devices

Description:

These devices are typically placed at pipe outlets to reduce the velocity and/or energy of exiting stormwater flows to non-erosive levels prior to downstream discharge.

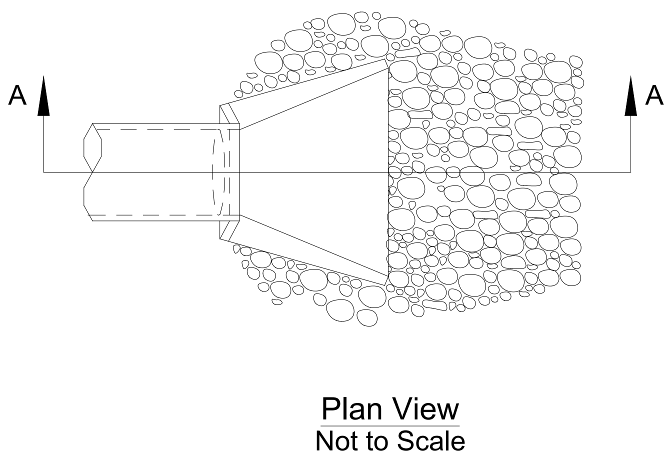
Appropriate Applications:

These devices are typically used at the outlets of pipes, drains, culverts, slope drains, diversion ditches, swales, conduits or channels, where localized scouring is anticipated.

Implementation:

- Design must be in accordance with Chapter 800 of the HDM (see Topic 827 and Chapter 870);
- Install rock slope protection, grouted rock slope protection, or concrete apron at selected outlet;
- Apron length (L) is related to outlet flow rate and tailwater level; and
- For proper operation of apron, align apron with receiving stream and keep straight throughout its length.

An example of an outlet protection/velocity dissipation device is shown in Figure A-3.



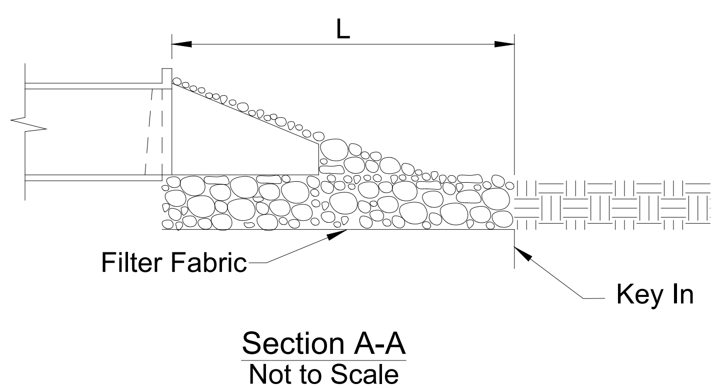


Figure A-3. Outlet Protection/Velocity Dissipation Device

A.5 Slope/Surface Protection Systems

Surface protection consists of permanent design measures that are used alone or in combination to minimize erosion from completed slopes. Vegetated surfaces may offer several advantages to paved surfaces, including lower runoff volumes and slower runoff velocities, increased times of concentration, and lower cost. However, where site or slope-specific conditions would prevent adequate establishment and maintenance of a vegetative cover, hard surfacing should be considered.

Infiltration potential for project areas that incorporate vegetated surfaces, soil amendments, and hard surfaces (e.g., rock) for surface protection should be considered. If the protected area promotes infiltration of pavement runoff, it may be identified as a DPPIA and evaluated as treatment. See Appendix B.2.

Vegetated Surfaces

Description:

Vegetated surfaces should consist predominantly of established native grasses and mixed shrubs. The purpose of a vegetated surface (from a water quality perspective) is to prevent surface erosion that can cause downstream pollution. Vegetated surfaces may additionally improve infiltration which removes sediment and may reduce pollutants in stormwater and non-stormwater runoff.

Bioengineering measures, such as soil wraps, willow planting poles, and willow fascines may be utilized as slope/surface protection measures. The measures should be coordinated with the District Landscape Architect (DLA) and District Hydraulics; applicable standard plans should also be reviewed.

Appropriate Applications:

Vegetated surfaces should be established on DSA after construction activities in that area are completed, and after the slope has been prepared. Vegetated surfaces should only be considered for areas that can support the selected vegetation long-term.

Implementation:

The following approach is typically implemented by the DLA unless otherwise noted:

- An evaluation of the site is done to determine the appropriate vegetation and planting strategy. In general, the site evaluation considers soil type and nutrient condition, site topography, climate and season, types of appropriate native and adapted vegetation suitable for the site, and maintenance requirements;
- Vegetated surfaces are designed to provide short and long term protection of the DSA. Vegetation will minimize overland and concentrated flow depths and velocities and maximize contact time between water and vegetated surfaces. This will enhance infiltration and pollutant removal opportunities. Shear stress and velocity calculations are the responsibility of the PE.;
- When feasible, existing topsoil, duff, and vegetation shall be harvested and stockpiled during construction. Stockpiled materials are used to prepare DSA prior to seeding operations; and

- When topsoil and vegetation are not available, compost and mulch are a desired option. They promote seed germination, infiltration, increase soil water holding capacity and plant growth, and provide surface protection.

Slope Roughening/Terracing/Rounding/Stepping

Description:

A rough surface can be added to a slope by various methods all of which run parallel to the slope contour over the entire face of the slope. The purpose of slope roughening is to prevent surface erosion that can cause downstream pollution by reducing the velocity of surface runoff.

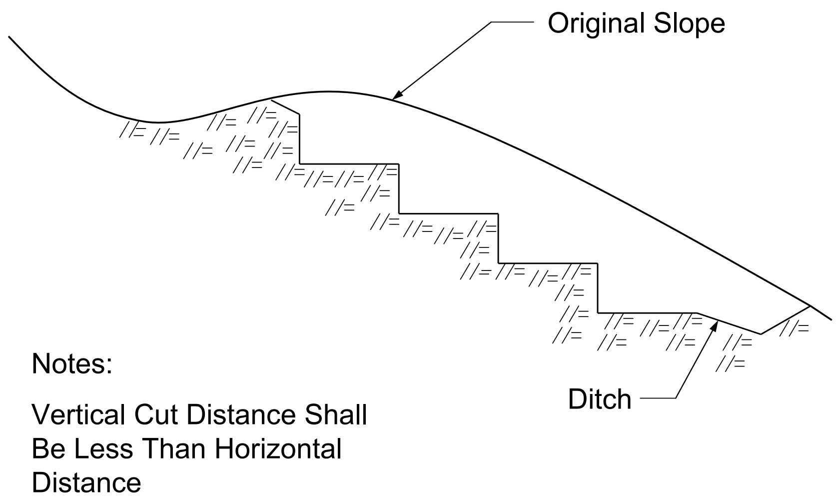
Appropriate Applications:

Slope roughening should be established on DSA after construction activities in that area are completed and prior to application of topsoil, where applicable. The method of slope roughening is determined based on the steepness of the slope, the type of slope, soil characteristics, and future maintenance requirements.

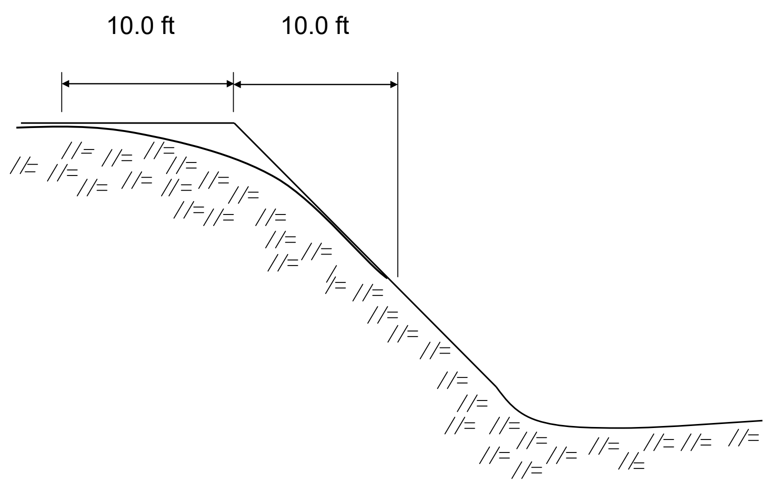
Implementation:

- Roughening and terracing are techniques for creating furrows, terraces, serrations, stair-steps, or track-marks on the soil surface. These treatments increase adhesion of erosion control materials and improve vegetation establishment.
- Slope rounding is used to minimize the formation of concentrated flows; and
- Roughening is used on embankment or cut slopes, prior to the application of temporary or permanent erosion control.

Slope roughening, terracing, rounding, and stepping should be implemented as shown in Figure A-4; slope rounding is the default technique and slope roughening, terracing, and stepping can be used when slope rounding is not used.

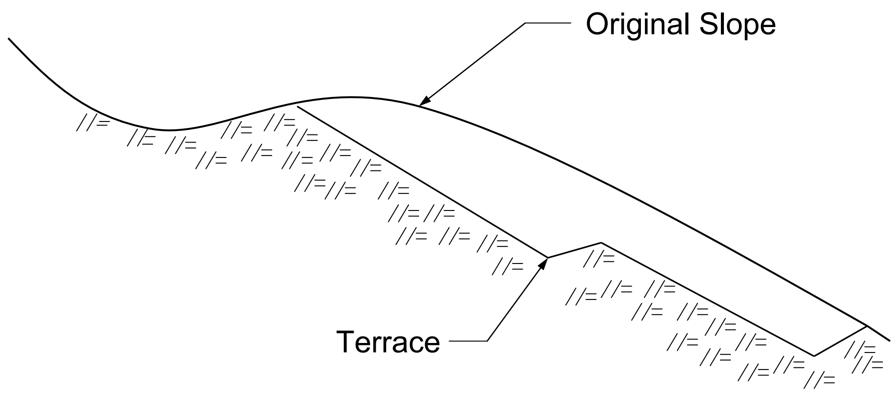


Stepped Slope (Not to Scale)

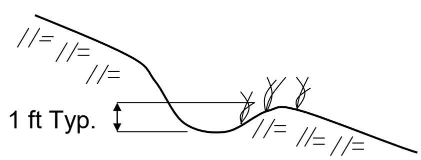


Slope Rounding

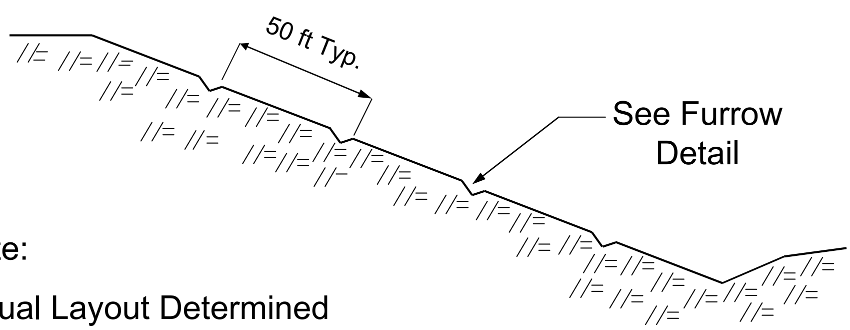
Figure A-4. Slope Rounding, Stepping, Terracing, and Contouring



Terraced Slope (Not to Scale)



Furrow Detail



Note:

Actual Layout Determined by Design

Contour Furrows (Not to Scale)

Figure A-4. Slope Rounding, Stepping, Terracing, and Contouring (Continued)

Hard Surfaces

Description:

Hard surfaces consist of placing concrete, rock, or rock and mortar slope protection. Vegetation may be used in conjunction with the protection system when feasible. The PE needs to consider the effects of increased runoff from impervious areas.

Appropriate Applications:

Apply on DSA where vegetation would not provide adequate erosion protection. Hard surfaces are also considered where it is difficult to maintain vegetation.

Implementation:

- Rock Slope Protection (RSP) (See the *HDM Section 870*.)
  - Angular rock of specified size is placed over fabric and used to armor slopes, streambanks, etc.;
  - RSP consists of placing revetment-type rock courses;
  - Remove loose, sharp, or extraneous material from the slope to be treated;
  - Place underlayment fabric loosely over the surface so that the fabric conforms to the surface without damage; there are fabric and other options to consider from DIB 87 to potentially promote infiltration and vegetative growth if desired. Equipment or vehicles should not be driven directly on the fabric;
  - Excavate a footing trench along the toe of the slope; and
  - Local surface irregularities should not vary from the planned slope by more than 1.0 feet (ft.) as measured at right angles to the slope.
  - Soil filled/vegetated RSP- Plant roots can be added to provide additional bio-technical reinforcement of the slope.
- Concreted RSP:
  - Angular rock of specified size is placed over fabric;
  - Concrete is placed into the rock interstices by gravity flow and a minimum of brushing and troweling; and
  - Used to armor streambanks.
- Rock Blanket:
  - Consists of round cobble rock placed as a landscape feature in areas often used for maintenance worker safety.
- Sacked Concrete Slope Protection:
  - Bags are filled with concrete mix and stacked against the slope to cure. Rebar can be driven into the wet mix and bags.
  - Used to create revetment or bank protection.

- Slope Paving:
  - Used almost exclusively below bridge decks at abutments.
  - Provides erosion control and soil stabilization in areas too dark for vegetation to establish.
  - May be constructed of finish poured Portland Cement Concrete (PCC), shotcrete, or masonry paving units.
- Articulated Revetments:
  - Mattresses composed of concrete units that are interlocked or interconnected with cables.
  - Used as channel lining or revetment.
- Gabions:
  - Wire cages filled with rock. These units are then constructed into structures of various configurations.
  - Used for channel linings and revetment.
- Turf Reinforcement Mats
  - Permanent rolled erosion control product composed of non-degradable synthetic fibers, filament, nets, wire mesh, and other materials processed into a three dimensional matrix filled with soil or rock.
  - Used for slope protection or channel lining.
- Cellular Confinement
  - Permanent rolled erosion control product composed of non-degradable, flexible honeycomb three-dimensional structure fabricated from light stabilized polyethylene plastic filled with rock.
  - Used for slope protection or channel lining.
- Vegetated Revetments

A.6 Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) BMP Checklists

Checklist DPP-1, Parts 1 – 5 are provided on the following pages to assist the PE in developing the DPP BMP strategy and completing the DPP section of the project SWDR. The checklists are provided as a tool for DPP BMP consideration purposes only. When used, the checklists should be kept in the project file, and not attached to the SWDR, unless requested by the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

Design Pollution Prevention BMPs
Checklist DPP-1, Part 1

Prepared by: ________	Date: ______________________	District-Co-Route: ___________
PM: ________________	Project ID/EA: ______________	RWQCB: ___________________

Consideration of Design Pollution Prevention BMPs

Consideration of Downstream Effects Related to Potentially Increased Flow [to streams or channels]

Will the project increase velocity or volume of downstream flow? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA

Will the project discharge to unlined channels? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA

Will the project encroach, cross, realign, or cause other hydraulic changes to a stream that may affect downstream channel stability? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA

If Yes was answered to any of the above questions, consider ***Downstream Effects Related to Potentially Increased Flow***, complete the Checklist DPP-1, Part 2.

Slope/Surface Protection Systems

Will the project create new slopes or modify existing slopes? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA

If Yes was answered to the above question, consider ***Slope/Surface Protection Systems***, complete the Checklist DPP-1, Part 3.

Concentrated Flow Conveyance Systems

Will the project create or modify ditches, dikes, berms, or swales? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA

Will project create new slopes or modify existing slopes? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA

Will it be necessary to direct or intercept surface runoff? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA

Will cross drains be modified? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA

If Yes was answered to any of the above questions, consider ***Concentrated Flow Conveyance Systems***; complete the Checklist DPP-1, Part 4.

Preservation of Existing Vegetation, Soils, and Surface Water Buffer Areas

It is the goal of the Stormwater Program to maximize the protection of desirable existing vegetation, soils, and surface water buffer areas to provide erosion and sediment control benefits on all projects. ☐ Complete

Consider ***Preservation of Existing Vegetation, soils, and surface water buffer areas***, complete the Checklist DPP-1, Part 5.

Design Pollution Prevention BMPs
Checklist DPP-1, Part 2

Prepared by: ________	Date: ______________________	District-Co-Route: ___________
PM: ________________	Project ID/EA: ______________	RWQCB: ___________________

Downstream Effects Related to Potentially Increased Flow

1. Review total paved area and reduce to the maximum extent practicable. ☐ Complete
2. Review channel lining materials and design for stream bank erosion control. ☐ Complete
   a. See Chapters 860 and 870 of the HDM. ☐ Complete
   b. Consider channel erosion control measures within the construction limits as well as downstream. Consider scour velocity. If erosion control measures are required downstream of construction limits obtain the appropriate permits and right-of-way documents to include work within the construction limits. ☐ Complete
3. Include, where appropriate, energy dissipation devices at culvert outlets. ☐ Complete
4. Ensure all transitions between culvert outlets/headwalls/wingwalls and channels are smooth to reduce turbulence and scour. ☐ Complete
5. Include, if appropriate, peak flow attenuation basins or devices to reduce peak discharges. ☐ Complete
6. Calculate the water quality volume infiltrated within the project limits. These calculations will be used in the Checklist T-1, Part 1. ☐ Complete

Design Pollution Prevention BMPs
Checklist DPP-1, Part 3

Prepared by: ________	Date: ______________________	District-Co-Route: ___________
PM: ________________	Project ID/EA: ______________	RWQCB: ___________________

Slope / Surface Protection Systems

1. What are the proposed areas of cut and fill? (attach plan or map) ☐ Complete
2. Were benches or terraces provided on high cut and fill slopes to shorten slope length? ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Were concentrated flows collected in stabilized drains or channels? ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Are new or disturbed slopes > 4:1 horizontal:vertical (h:v)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, District Landscape Architect is responsible for an erosion control strategy and may prepare an erosion control plan.

5. Are new or disturbed slopes > 2:1 (h:v)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, DES Geotechnical Design unit must prepare a Geotechnical Design Report, and the District Landscape Architect should prepare or approve an erosion control plan. Concurrence must be obtained from the District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator for slopes steeper than 2:1 (h:v).

Vegetated Surfaces

1. Identify existing vegetation. ☐ Complete
2. Evaluate site to determine soil types, appropriate vegetation and planting strategies. ☐ Complete
3. How long will it take for permanent vegetation to establish? ☐ Complete
4. Plan transition BMPs from construction to permanent establishment. ☐ Complete
5. Have vegetated areas and supporting permanent irrigation systems been designed to comply with the Model Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance (MWELO) or local WELO? ☐ Yes ☐ No
6. Minimize overland and concentrated flow depths and velocities ☐ Complete

Hard Surfaces

1. Are hard surfaces minimized? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   Review appropriate SSPs for Vegetated Surface and Hard Surface Protection Systems. ☐ Complete

Design Pollution Prevention BMPs
Checklist DPP-1, Part 4

Prepared by: ________	Date: ____________________	District-Co-Route: __________
PM: _______________	Project ID/EA: ____________	RWQCB: __________________

Concentrated Flow Conveyance Systems

Ditches, Berms, Dikes and Swales

1. Consider Ditches, Berms, Dikes, and Swales as per Topics 813, 834.3, 835, and Chapter 860 of the HDM. ☐ Complete
2. Review existing and proposed conditions to remove any dike not required for slope stability, erosion control, and water conveyance. ☐ Complete
3. Evaluate risks due to erosion, overtopping, flow backups or washout. ☐ Complete
4. Consider outlet protection where localized scour is anticipated. ☐ Complete
5. Examine the site for run-on from off-site sources. ☐ Complete
6. Consider permissible shear and velocity when selecting lining material (See Table 865.2 in the HDM). ☐ Complete

Overside Drains

1. Consider downdrains, as per Index 834.4 of the HDM. ☐ Complete
2. Consider paved spillways for side slopes flatter than 4:1 h:v. ☐ Complete

Flared Culvert End Sections

1. Consider flared end sections on culvert inlets and outlets as per Chapter 827 of the HDM. ☐ Complete

Outlet Protection/Velocity Dissipation Devices

1. Consider outlet protection/velocity dissipation devices at outlets, including cross drains, as per Chapters 827 and 870 of the HDM. ☐ Complete

Review appropriate SSPs for Concentrated Flow Conveyance Systems. ☐ Complete

Design Pollution Prevention BMPs
Checklist DPP-1, Part 5

Prepared by: ________	Date: ______________________	District-Co-Route: ___________
PM: ________________	Project ID/EA: ______________	RWQCB: ____________________

Preservation of Existing Vegetation, Soils, and Surface Water Buffer Areas

1. Review Preservation of Property, (Clearing and Grubbing) to reduce clearing and grubbing and maximize preservation of existing vegetation, soils, and surface water buffer areas. ☐ Complete

2. Has all vegetation, soils, and surface water buffer areas to be retained been coordinated with Environmental, and identified and defined in the contract plans ☐ Yes ☐ No

3. Have steps been taken to minimize disturbed areas, such as locating temporary roadways to avoid stands of trees and shrubs and to follow existing contours to reduce cut and fill? ☐ Complete

4. Have impacts to preserved vegetation, soils, and surface water buffer areas been considered while work is occurring in disturbed areas? ☐ Yes ☐ No

5. Are all areas to be preserved delineated on the plans? ☐ Yes ☐ No

APPENDIX B: APPROVED TREATMENT BMPS AND CHECKLISTS

B.1 Treatment BMPs

This Appendix provides design guidelines for the Caltrans-approved Treatment Best Management Practices (BMPs) listed in Table 3-4. These BMPs have been approved for statewide use. The PE must incorporate Treatment BMPs to treat an impervious area equal to the PCTA as defined in Section 4.3 when a project has been determined by the EDF to require treatment. Treatment BMPs are considered for the project according to the following Caltrans Permit based priorities:

1. Infiltrate all runoff from impervious surfaces equivalent to the PCTA, then
2. Treat excess runoff using LID based flow-through BMPs, then
3. Treat excess runoff with Caltrans approved, Treatment BMPs using the Targeted Design Constituent (TDC) approach as described in Section B.1.2, then
4. If 100 percent treatment of the runoff is not achieved, develop an alternative compliance proposal.

B.1.1 Infiltration Requirements and Tools

Infiltration of runoff from impervious surfaces must be considered first. The Project Engineer (PE) is to maximize infiltration on the project unless infiltration is not recommended in the approved Geotechnical Design Report. The site must be cleared for hazardous contaminants prior to consideration of infiltration. Areas to be considered for infiltration should be identified by Project Approval/Environmental Document (PA/ED) for assessment of any environmental impacts.

The Caltrans Infiltration Tool can be used to estimate infiltration provided by specific BMPs during design. See link below for details.

https://www.owp.csus.edu/research/caltrans-infiltration-tool.php

B.1.2 Targeted Design Constituent (TDC)

A TDC is defined as a pollutant that has been identified during Departmental runoff characterization studies to be discharging with a load or concentration that commonly exceeds allowable standards and which is considered treatable by currently available Department-approved Treatment BMPs. The TDC approach is the Department's statewide design guidance to address the "Primary Pollutants of Concern." The TDC approach is used when designing Treatment BMPs.

TDCs are: phosphorus; nitrogen; total copper; dissolved copper; total lead; dissolved lead; total zinc; dissolved zinc; sediments; general metals [unspecified metals]. <u>A project must consider treatment of identified TDCs when a water body affected by the project is 303(d) listed for one or more of these constituents. Consider using the Water Quality Planning Tool to determine these areas; this information should also be in the WQAR</u>. If a pollutant of concern (POC) is not specifically listed in Section 3.2.5 or as a TDC, then when considering Treatment BMPs, use Matrix A for general purpose pollutant removal.

The Caltrans Permit prohibits the discharge of trash to surface waters of the State. Full-capture trash devices are required in areas designated as Significant Trash Generation Areas (STGAs) and areas with a trash TMDL. Full-capture trash devices are described in Section B.8 below. Projects that also have a post construction treatment requirement should consider the use of Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems described in Section B.1.4 below.

B.1.3 Incorporation of Existing Features as Treatment BMPs

Some existing features within the RW may be considered as Treatment BMPs even if they were not originally designed with that intent, provided that the existing features meet the criteria in these guidelines. These features (e.g., DPPIAs, vegetated swales, detention basins) may perform the same functions as Treatment BMPs but were not classified as Treatment BMPs at the time they were constructed. These features should be evaluated for possible classification as Treatment BMPs. Consider the following:

- Determine the contributing drainage area to the existing feature and determine the associated water quality volume (WQV) or water quality flow (WQF);
- Verify that the Applications/Siting criteria for the Treatment BMP listed in Appendix B is met at the existing location; and
- Verify that the Design Factors of the Treatment BMP listed in Appendix B are met at the existing location.

Once these items are considered, the features that are under consideration for classification as Treatment BMPs should be discussed with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator and the Project Development Team (PDT). A final decision should be made after examining all the issues (e.g., water quality benefits versus changes in maintenance practices, future projects affecting the proposed Treatment BMP location).

If an existing feature is determined to be the functional equivalent of an approved Treatment BMP and classification as a Treatment BMP is accepted, then document the location in Section 6 of the Stormwater Data Report (SWDR) and document the area treated on Table E-2. Districts may use a modified table based upon their needs. See Section 6.6 for additional information.

B.1.4 Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems

Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems are treatment designs that have multiple environmental benefits such as trash capture and pollutant removal, including infiltration of stormwater runoff. While the GSRD, Trash Nets, and Capture Housing target trash only, Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems are certified full-capture trash devices that are also effective at removing other pollutants. Projects that have both post construction and trash treatment requirements should consider Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems. Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems are a preferred treatment method because they remove multiple pollutants and can meet post construction, trash TMDL, and STGA requirements.

The Caltrans approved Treatment BMPs that can be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems are:

- Bioretention
- Detention Basin
- Infiltration Trench and Basin
- Austin Media Filter (Earthen & Concrete Vault)
- Delaware Media Filter

Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems are sized using the WQV or WQF and then certified by showing adequate treatment capacity for the 1-year, 1-hour storm event, either the FCV or FCF. Refer to the *Caltrans Multi Benefit Treatment BMP Trash Full Capture Requirements Design Guidance* for complete guidance on meeting certification requirements.

B.1.5 Interaction with other Caltrans Functional Units

Besides District Design, other functional units may play a significant role in the implementation of the various Treatment BMPs into a project. These units should be consulted during the selection and design of Treatment BMPs.

- District Landscape Architecture will select vegetative cover for many of the Treatment BMPs (e.g., biofiltration BMPs), and should be consulted on visual issues for all the Treatment BMPs.
- District Maintenance must be consulted to ensure that they can safely access and cost effectively maintain the deployed Treatment BMPs.
- District Hydraulics must ensure proper hydraulic design as it is critical to the safe and efficient operation of all Treatment BMPs; this task is performed by either the PE or by District Hydraulics depending upon the district and level of complexity of the design.
- Geotechnical Services will conduct site investigations for Infiltration Devices and other Treatment BMPs.
- District Traffic Operations should be consulted when considering placement of Treatment BMPs in or near Clear Recovery Zones.
- The District Environmental Unit plays a significant role in the environmental assessment of the project and in the environmental clearance of sites for proposed Treatment BMPs.
- The District/Regional NPDES Coordinator and/or the Design Stormwater Coordinator plays a significant role by assisting in the interpretation of the Project Planning and Design Guide (PPDG), and by reviewing SWDRs produced for the Project Initiation Document (PID), Project Approval/Environmental Document (PA/ED), and Plans, Specifications, and Estimates (PS&E) phases of the project.
- District Construction will help to identify potential constructability issues with proposed Treatment BMPs.

Other units may have a role in developing appropriate Treatment BMP strategies; therefore, the PE must identify key project information and coordinate with other Functional Units throughout each project phase.

B.1.6 Hydraulic Issues Related to Treatment BMPs

Treatment BMPs are designed for water quality purposes, but they must also operate safely and effectively as part of the overall highway drainage system; because of this, hydraulic design issues must be carefully evaluated during the consideration and project development processes for Treatment BMPs, especially regarding any upstream or downstream effects that would impact highway drainage. While some aspects of hydraulic engineering are presented in this handbook, those presented will focus on the site-specific design of a Treatment BMP, and not on all aspects of hydraulic or hydrologic engineering. Instead, the PE is referred to Section 800 of the *Highway Design Manual* (HDM), the HQ Office of Hydraulics and Stormwater Design (OHSD), and the District Hydraulics Unit (e.g., when a Treatment BMP is used for the dual purposes of peak flow attenuation and water quality treatment).

B.1.6.1 Treatment BMPs as a Component of the Drainage System

Several of the Treatment BMPs can be designed to work either online or offline. When placed ‘online’, the BMP is located in the drainage flow path of the runoff and the BMP must convey runoff by passing all flows through the BMP itself. Flows up to the Water Quality event are treated by the BMP, while larger design storm events are safely passed through the BMP without adversely impacting the upstream drainage systems, but without treatment. In contrast, ‘offline’ Treatment BMP systems primarily receive runoff from storm events up to and including the Water Quality event, while larger events are diverted around the Treatment BMP by an upstream flow splitter device.

There are potentially different impacts and design issues associated with online versus offline placement, and these should be discussed with District Hydraulics. Offline devices should be prioritized over online devices.

Those Treatment BMPs that are designed for online placement must also safely pass peak design flows. The release of larger events can be accomplished through use of a flow splitter or weir. The overflow event used in the design of the flow splitter or weir must be consistent with the intensity, duration, and frequency of the rainfall event used in the roadway drainage design as discussed in HDM – Topic 831. Refer to *Caltrans Flow Splitters Design Guidance* for complete guidance on design of flow splitters.

Associated with the overflow event, a minimum freeboard of 12 inches or as stated in the individual design guidance should be provided between the surface water elevation during the overflow event and the lowest elevation of the confinement (e.g., the lowest elevation at the top of berm or vault) to provide assurance of the physical integrity of the Treatment BMP and downstream facilities. This distance is referred to as the “freeboard” (see Topic 868 of the HDM).

B.1.6.2 Use of Peak Flow Attenuation Devices as WQV-Based Treatment BMPs

Peak attenuation devices are deployed on projects to meet the highway drainage requirements of the HDM. When deployed, they may be designed and evaluated as post construction treatment, or Alternative Compliance. Be sure to coordinate with the District Hydraulics Unit for design of peak attenuation devices.

B.1.7 Paddle Markers

Treatment BMP paddle markers are required on every project for which treatment BMPs are deployed except as provided below. The PE must consult with the District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator for placement of the paddle markers. In some cases, the District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator may request that the traditional paddle marker not be placed. For these cases, an alternative marker may be used (e.g., concrete stamp), or the paddle marker can be omitted.

If the TBMP is a structure, such as a GSRD or Traction Sand Trap, then only one paddle marker shall be used. Linear TBMPs require a paddle marker at the beginning and end of the TBMP. The markers represent a perpendicular line to the travel lane, driving in the direction of travel for the side containing the TBMP. The first marker should be placed at the first perpendicular line encountered and marked as “begin” and the second perpendicular line should be marked as “end,” regardless of the TBMP flow direction.

For TBMPs on the Northbound and Eastbound directions of travel, the post miles will increase from Beginning of TBMP to the End of TBMP. When the direction of travel is either Southbound or Westbound the post miles will decrease from Beginning of TBMP to the End of TBMP. The final location of the marker is determined by Resident Engineer in construction after consulting the District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator.

B.1.8 Caltrans Treatment BMP Website

For design guides for all of the Caltrans approved Treatment BMPs, go to the following website:

https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/hydraulics-stormwater/treatment-bmp-design-guidance

This guidance includes tools for each Treatment BMP such as:

- Design Guidance
- Plans
- Specifications
- Illustrations
- Application/Siting Criteria
- Preliminary Design Factors
- BMP Capital
- Maintenance Costs
- Constituents Treated
- Effectiveness/Performance
- Design Spreadsheets
- Lessons Learned

B.2 Design Pollution Prevention Infiltration Areas (DPPIA)

Design Pollution Prevention Infiltration Areas (DPPIAs) are vegetated and non-vegetated areas that have been designed or evaluated for infiltration capabilities. Pollutants are removed primarily through infiltration of surface discharge through the soil, sedimentation, and adsorption to soil particles. When vegetation is incorporated into the DPPIA, additional pollutant removal is provided by filtration through the vegetation.

The following sections give a brief overview of DPPIAs and a summary of design criteria.

B.2.1 Description

DPPIAs are sized to capture the WQV, or a portion thereof, generated by the contributing drainage area. The area is calculated and used to either address the post construction treatment requirement or to generate Alternative Compliance. A DPPIA may be a new, modified, or existing slope, ditch, embankment, roadside area, or facility within the project limits that may be used to achieve treatment requirements. A schematic illustration of a DPPIA is shown in Figure B-1.

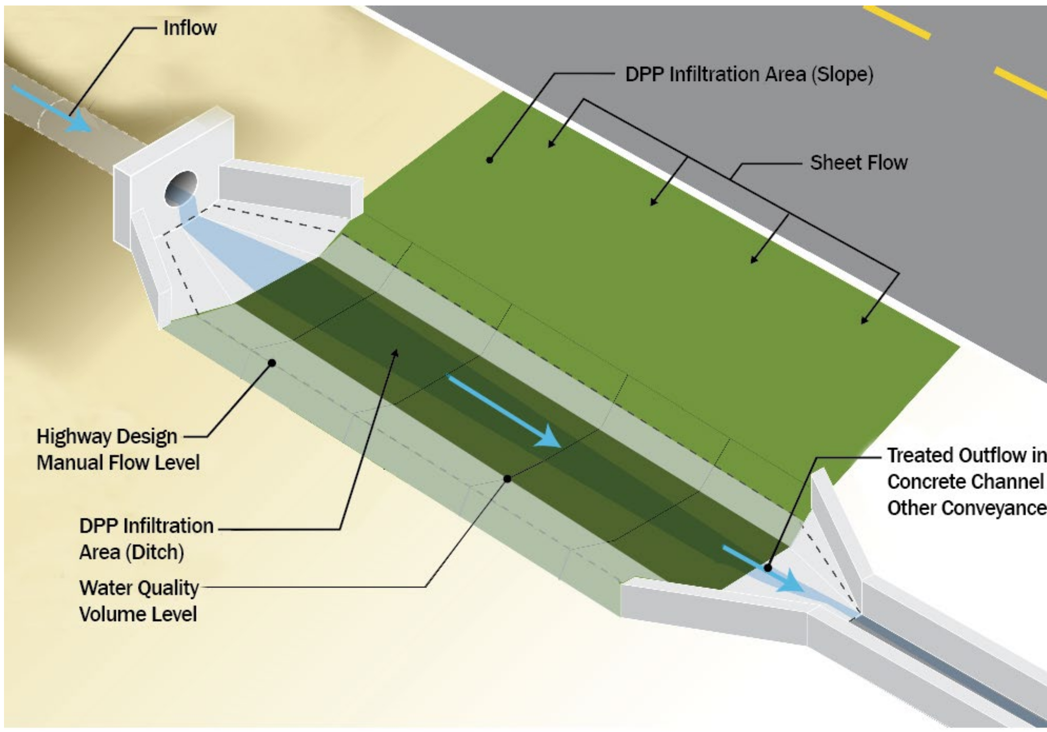
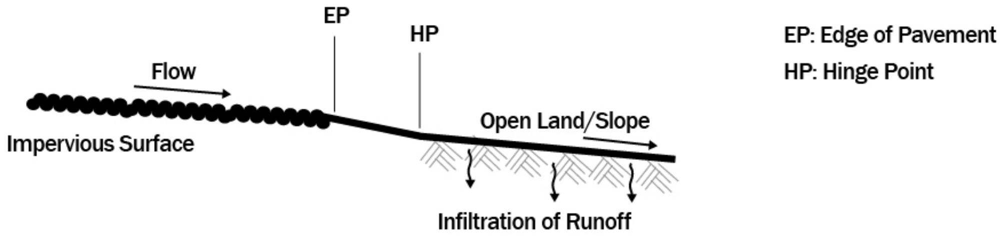
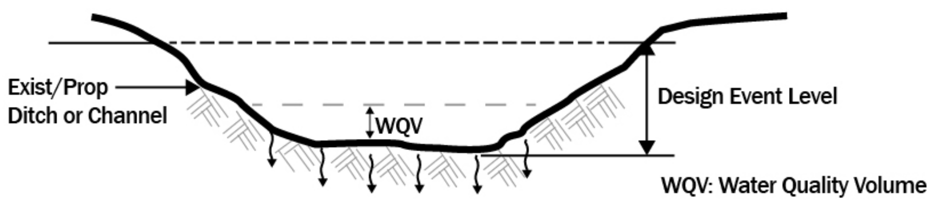


Figure B-1. Schematic of a DPPIA



SLOPE



DITCH CHANNEL

Figure B-1. Schematic of a DPPIA (continued)

B.2.2 Appropriate Applications and Siting Criteria

DPPIAs should be used to meet project treatment requirements and maximize infiltration. These areas must be stabilized to prevent erosion and are most commonly used within pervious roadway embankment areas. DPPIAs are not only used as a treatment mechanism for pollutants but are used to maximize infiltration and reduce discharges downstream.

In areas of high fire risks, vegetated DPPIAs may still be used from 3'-10' from edge of pavement, as well as beyond 10'. Caltrans has to balance the competing goals of using soil based LID treatment BMPs to meet NPDES requirements and incorporating fire suppression strips to reduce fire risks. The NPDES Permit requires Caltrans to prioritize infiltration of the water quality volume and use soil based BMPs. When siting TBMPs, maintain the historic 3' strip area with no vegetation. From 3-10' from the edge of pavement, vegetated TBMPs may be used with grass species that can be cut low to reduce fire risk but keep roots and low vegetation which will still provide the function of the biofiltration strip or vegetated DPPIA. Siting vegetated TBMPs within 10' of the EP must be coordinated with District Maintenance and HQ Maintenance Vegetation and Wildfire Management. This should be written in the SWDR and comments/notes on the TMT tab of the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets for each TBMP. In addition to vegetated TBMPs, if space is limited, a non-vegetated DPPIA can be sited at the EP (within the shoulder backing area) and extend out as needed for treatment volumes. See DPPIA design guidance and Biofiltration TBMP design guidance.

B.2.3 Factors Affecting Preliminary Design

Siting and design criteria are summarized in Table B-1 below.

Table B-1. Summary of DPPIAs Siting and Design Criteria

Description	Applications/Siting	Preliminary Design Factors
DPPIAs are vegetated and non-vegetated land areas over which stormwater flows. DPPIAs treat the WQV. Treatment Mechanisms: • Infiltration Pollutants primarily removed: • Total Suspended Solids • Particulate Metals • Nutrients • Dissolved Metals • Turbidity	• If proposed location is above contaminated soils or groundwater plumes, coordinate with District/Regional NPDES Coordinator and District Hazardous Waste Coordinator for direction. • Sites where retention/infiltration might result in geotechnical or structural instability should be excluded • The DPPIA should be designed to protect surface and ground water beneficial uses • Existing areas (protected from construction disturbance) may be used for DPPIA. • In high fire risk areas, maintain a 3' strip at EP with no vegetation. Beyond 3' from the EP, choose vegetation which can be mown in coordination with District and HQ Maintenance and Wildfire Management.	• Use representative infiltration or permeability rate to size the area. • Design slope to prevent erosion where concentrated flows can create rills and gullies by providing appropriate protection. • Consider incorporating amendments to enhance infiltration and/or climate appropriate vegetation. • Consider using the Caltrans Infiltration Tool to appropriately size the BMP. • When soil amendments are proposed within the CRZ, validate that the desired soil amendment can be structurally compacted and still provide enhanced infiltration.

B.2.4 Checklist

Checklist T-1, Part 11 is provided to assist the PE in evaluating the feasibility of DPPIAs for a project and identifies design elements that should be considered in the design of DPPIAs. The checklist is provided as a tool and does not need to be attached to SWDR or submitted as part of the PID, PA/ED, or PS&E process.

Treatment BMPs
Checklist T-1, Part 11

Prepared by: _______ Date: ____________________ District-Co-Route: _________

PM: ______________ Project ID/EA: ____________ RWQCB: ________________

DPPIAs

Feasibility[1]

1. Does local Basin Plan or other local ordinance provide influent limits on quality of water that can be infiltrated, and would infiltration pose a threat to groundwater quality? ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Does infiltration at the site compromise the integrity of any slopes in the area? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes" to any question above, DPPIAs are not feasible; stop here and consider other approved Treatment BMPs.
3. Are DPPIAs proposed at sites where known contaminated soils or groundwater plumes exist? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes", consult with District/Regional NPDES Coordinator about how to proceed.
4. If adequate area cannot be obtained, document in Section 6 of the SWDR that the inability to obtain adequate area prevents the incorporation of these Treatment BMPs into the project. ☐ Complete

Design Elements

*** Required Design Element** – A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element** – A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Has native soil gradation and infiltration rate been determined (see Design Guidance for more detail)? (Must be completed for PS&E level design.) * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Has the infiltration rate of the DPPIA been calculated and maximized through amendments where appropriate? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If yes and soil amendments are proposed within the CRZ, validate that the amendment can be structurally compacted and still provide enhanced infiltration. ☐ Complete
3. Is the DPPIA capacity sufficient to capture the WQV, or portion thereof ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "No", document the percentage and amount of the WQV captured. ☐ Complete
4. Is a surface reinforcing material required? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes", select material based on the permissible shear and velocity (refer to HDM Chapter 860 and Table 865.2).* ☐ Complete

---

[1] This feasibility evaluation is applicable to areas that are being modified for infiltration as part of the project treatment strategy. For existing areas within the project limits that are being delineated as DPPIAs, proceed to the Design Elements section.

B.3 Infiltration Devices

An Infiltration Device is designed to remove pollutants from surface discharges by capturing the WQV, or a portion thereof, and infiltrating it directly into the soil rather than discharging it to surface waters. Infiltration devices may be configured as basins, trenches, or galleries.

Infiltration Basins and Trenches may be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems when a project has both post construction and trash treatment requirements. Refer to *Caltrans Multi Benefit Treatment BMP Trash Full Capture Requirements Design Guidance* for complete guidance on meeting certification requirements.

The following sections give a brief overview of infiltration devices and a summary of design criteria. The PE shall refer to *Caltrans Infiltration Basins Design Guidance, Caltrans Infiltration Trenches Design Guidance*, and *Caltrans Infiltration Gallery Design Guidance* for complete guidance on design criteria, site evaluation, and preliminary and final design.

B.3.1 Description

Infiltration Basins are a volume-based Treatment BMP that temporarily store runoff in bermed or excavated areas for infiltration over a limited period. During a storm, runoff enters the Infiltration Basin during which time the water level in the basin rises. During the rainfall, and for some time after it ends, the runoff infiltrates into the soil through the invert area, which is sized depending upon the design volume of runoff to be treated, the permeability of the soil below the invert, and the time period selected for infiltration (between 12 to 96 hours). It is preferred that events greater than the Water Quality event are bypassed around the BMP with an upstream flow splitter, but can also be passed through the BMP, typically over a spillway through the confining berm, or through an overflow riser.

Infiltration Basins may be configured in any shape to meet right-of-way (RW) restrictions, and should conform to the available space and topography, although ease of maintenance and construction should always be considered. A schematic illustration of an Infiltration Basin is shown in Figure B-2.

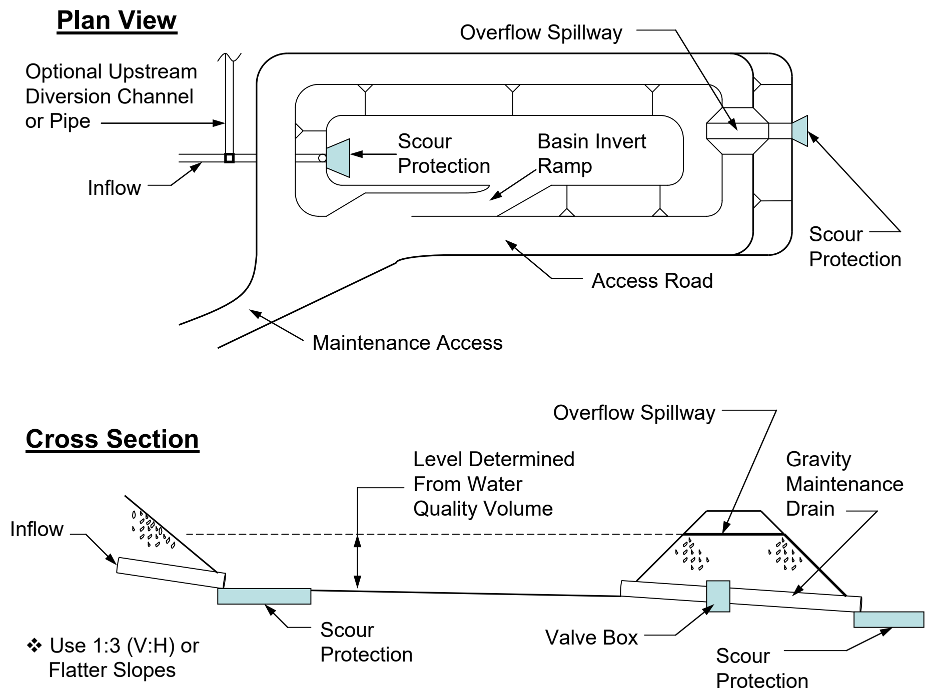


Figure B-2. Schematic of an Infiltration Basin

An Infiltration Trench utilizes relatively shallow excavations backfilled with gravel or other high porosity materials to create subsurface storage for runoff that will over a design period infiltrate into the surrounding soils. Infiltration Trenches are often elongated, allowing them to be used in constricted areas, but there is no shape restriction. A schematic illustration of an Infiltration Trench is shown in Figure B-3. While the schematic shows an installation at a non-highway facility, infiltration trenches can also be considered, as appropriate, along the highway (e.g., roadside, interchanges).

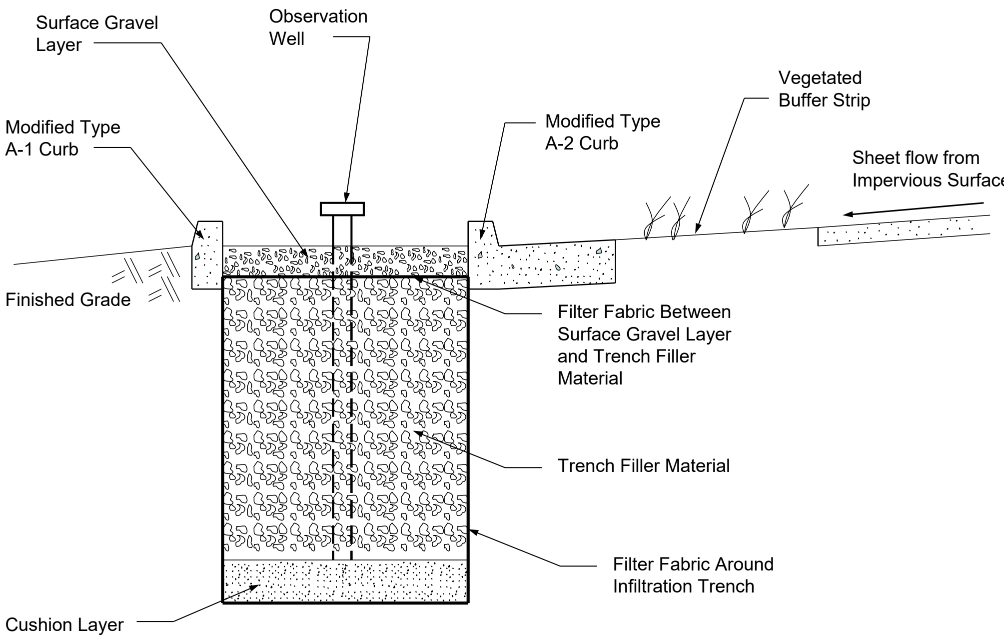


Figure B-3. Schematic of an Infiltration Trench

The WQV, or portion thereof, should be directed to the Infiltration Trench by gravity flow in an open channel or as sheet flow and the captured volume should flow downward within the trench by the action of gravity and without vertical piping for distribution to lower depths of the trench. An Infiltration Trench can also be designed to receive piped flows diverted from an underground drainage system. Flow splitters should be considered to facilitate the trench in an offline configuration.

Since infiltration trenches can be sited in circuitous alignments and sometimes implemented within a disconnected and distributed pattern, the BMP can also be considered a LID technique.

An Infiltration Gallery utilizes underground facilities to store runoff for infiltration. During a storm, runoff enters the Infiltration Gallery causing the water level in the underground facilities to rise. During rainfall, and for some time after it ends, runoff infiltrates into the soil through the invert area. When designing Infiltration Galleries, consider including an air vent to allow air to move freely out of and into the TBMP during filling and draining. Also consider installing a monitoring pipe to allow observation of the bottom of the TBMP from the surface. Pretreatment for sediment and debris is required and must be sufficiently sized for the expected loading.

Infiltration Galleries can vary in size; they may be small, for example a 12-inch perforated pipe backfilled with aggregate base, large like the configuration shown in Figure B-4, or any size in between. The size of these facilities is based on the design WQV, the permeability of the soil below the invert, and the period selected for infiltration. Events that are greater than the Water Quality Event must be bypassed around the TBMP via an upstream diversion or flow splitter.

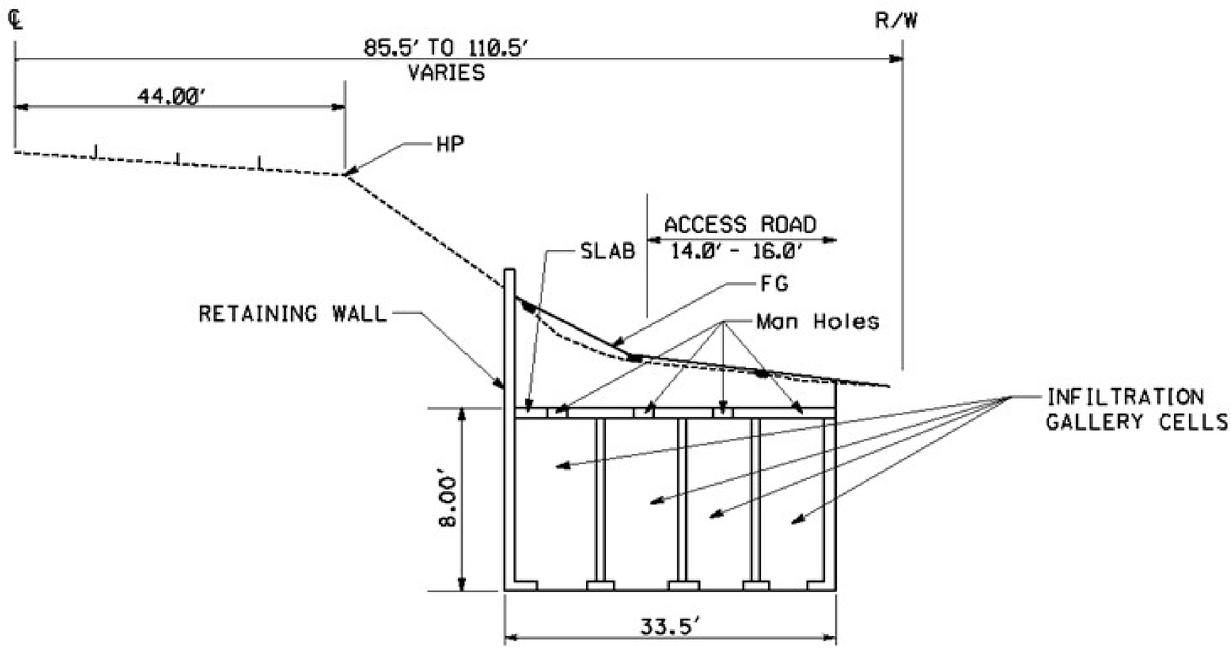


Figure B-4. Schematic of a Large Type Infiltration Gallery

Infiltration Devices (including DPPIAs) are considered the most effective Treatment BMP against all pollutants listed in Table 3-1. Due to the effectiveness of treatment, infiltration is always a first choice to be considered when selecting Treatment BMPs for a Caltrans project.

B.3.2 Appropriate Applications and Siting Criteria

Infiltration Devices should be considered wherever site conditions allow. Appropriate sites for Infiltration Devices should have:

- Sufficient soil permeability;
- A sufficiently low water table;
- The influent would not present a threat to local groundwater quality; and
- Sufficient elevation to allow gravity drainage of the device when needed for maintenance purposes (Infiltration Basin only).

B.3.3 Factors Affecting Preliminary Design

Siting and design criteria are summarized in Table B-2 below.

Table B-2. Summary of Infiltration Device Siting and Design Criteria

Description	Applications/Siting [1]	Preliminary Design Factors [1]
Infiltration Basins are bermed or excavated areas that temporarily store runoff for infiltration. Infiltration Trenches utilize shallow excavations to create subsurface storage of runoff for infiltration. Infiltration Galleries are underground structures to create subsurface storage of runoff for infiltration Infiltration Devices treat the WQV. Infiltration Devices may be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems Treatment Mechanisms: • Infiltration Pollutants primarily removed: • Total Suspended Solids • Particulate metals • Nutrients • Dissolved Metals • Turbidity • Mercury	• Runoff quality must meet or exceed standards for infiltration to local groundwater. • Infiltration Devices should not be sited in locations over previously identified contaminated groundwater plumes. • Separation from seasonally high water table > 5 ft., or less as justified by adequate groundwater information or RWQCB concurrence. • Soil having an infiltration rate ≥ 0.5 in/hr; maximum infiltration rate is 2.5 in/hr. or greater when justified by adequate groundwater information. If significantly higher, consider the impacts to groundwater quality based on depth to seasonally high groundwater. Contact the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to determine if consultation with the RWQCB is needed. • For slower infiltrating soils, assure vector controls meet CDPH requirements. For preliminary estimates of soil infiltration rate, consult the Design Guidance. • Site should not be located in areas containing fractured rock within 10 ft of invert. • Locate where sloping ground < 15 percent, and where infiltrated water is unlikely to affect the stability down gradient of structures, slopes, or embankments. • Locate at least 1,000 ft from any municipal water supply well; at least 100 ft from any private well, septic tank or drain field; and at least 200 ft from a Holocene fault zone. • Locate > 10 ft down gradient and 100 ft up gradient from structural foundations, when infiltrating to near surface groundwater. • Infiltration Trenches: installed down gradient from the highway structural section, and should not be placed closer horizontally than the Trench depth to the roadway if in a location subject to frost. • Infiltration Trenches: would likely be considered inappropriate for placement in close proximity to a Drinking Water Reservoir and/or Recharge Facility due to the difficulty in cleaning in the event of a spill; consult District/Regional NPDES Coordinator if an Infiltration Trench is being considered in close proximity to a Drinking Water Reservoir and/or Recharge Facility. • Infiltration Gallery: Could be used under other Caltrans facilities such as Park-and-Rides and Maintenance Yards; are load bearing and must be designed by a licensed, professional civil engineer to ensure structural integrity.	• Infiltration Basins and Trenches meeting the design criteria above and located in areas requiring trash treatment may be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems. • Infiltration Basins, Infiltration Trenches, and Infiltration Galleries: Infiltrate WQV, or portion thereof within a maximum of 96 hours. Longer drawdown times may be allowable if vector controls have been implemented (e.g., underground, flap gates) When considering longer drawdown times, coordinate with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator. • Use representative infiltration or permeability rate to size the device • Provide maintenance access: For an Infiltration Basin, provide a road entirely around the basin or at least to the overflow spillway and a ramp to the basin invert. Provide an access road to an Infiltration Trench or Infiltration Gallery • Infiltration Devices should not be placed in service within a construction contract until all upstream runoff is stabilized, or shall be protected from sediment-laden runoff. • Infiltration Basins: Provide an upstream diversion channel or pipe for storm events > WQV, if feasible, as part of the Basin flow control device sized to pass the peak drainage facility design event (see HDM Chapter 830). If upstream diversion is not feasible, a downstream overflow outlet must be sized to pass the peak drainage facility design event. Overflow outlet can be either an outlet riser, spillway, or overflow weir. See design guidance for minimum sizing. • Infiltration Basins: Provide a minimum 12 inch freeboard (the difference between the surface water elevation during the overflow event and the lowest elevation of the confinement) • Infiltration Basin: Scour protection on inflow and overflow outlet • Infiltration Basins: Use as flat an invert as possible (3 percent maximum); Infiltration Trenches and Galleries: flat invert (no slope) • Infiltration Basins: Provide maintenance gravity drain, minimum 8-inch, if practicable • Infiltration Basins: Use 4:1 (H:V) side slope ratios or flatter for interior side slopes, unless approved by District Maintenance, with 3:1 (H:V) maximum • Infiltration Basins: Provide vegetation, typically grasses at invert and side slopes. • Infiltration Trenches: Provide one observation well in the Trench, minimum diameter of 4 inches, with weatherproof cap; may be used to drain the trench if necessary. • Infiltration Galleries; Consider providing monitoring well and air vent. If free board requirements are not met, consider bolt down manhole access. • Infiltration Trenches: Maximum depth of trench is 13 feet and WQV should be directed to trench as surface flow or underground drainage system and allowed to gravity-flow downward to the invert of the trench.

Description	Applications/Siting [1]	Preliminary Design Factors [1]
	• Locate outside the Clear Recovery Zone (HDM Topic 309.1), or design to be traversable, or consult with Traffic Operations to determine if guard railing is required.	• Pretreatment to capture sediment in the runoff (such as with vegetation, a flow splitter with sump, forebay, etc.): required for Infiltration Trenches and Infiltration Galleries: Recommended for Infiltration Basins. • Infiltration Trenches located in non-highway facilities often have a perimeter curb for delineation, and to limit vehicle wheel loads from encroaching upon the trench. • Infiltration Galleries: Are load bearing and must be designed by a licensed, professional civil engineer to ensure structural integrity.

[1] Applicable to both Infiltration Basins and Infiltration Trenches unless noted.

Specifications for permeable material to be used in Infiltration Trenches can be downloaded from the OHSD Treatment BMPs guidance website.

B.3.4 Checklist

Checklist T-1, Part 2 is provided to assist the PE in evaluating the feasibility of infiltration devices for a project, and the checklist identifies design elements that should be considered in the design of infiltration devices. The checklist is provided as a tool and does not need to be attached to SWDR or submitted as part of the PID, PA/ED, or PS&E process.

Treatment BMPs
Checklist T-1, Part 2

Prepared by: ________	Date: ______________________	District-Co-Route: ___________
PM: ________________	Project ID/EA: ______________	RWQCB: ___________________

Infiltration Devices

Feasibility

1. Does local Basin Plan or other local ordinance provide influent limits on quality of water that can be infiltrated, and would infiltration pose a threat to groundwater quality? ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Does infiltration at the site compromise the integrity of any slopes in the area? ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Is site located over a previously identified contaminated groundwater plume? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes" to any question above, Infiltration Devices are not feasible; stop here and consider other approved Treatment BMPs.
4. At the invert, does the soil type classify as NRCS Hydrologic Soil Group (HSG) D, or does the soil have an infiltration rate < 0.5 inches/hr? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes", the location can only be considered if vector control has been addressed (e.g., underground).
5. (a.) Does site have groundwater within 5 ft of basin invert? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   (b) Does site investigation indicate that the infiltration rate is significantly greater than 2.5 inches/hr? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes" to either part of Question 5, adequate groundwater information must be available or contact RWQCB for concurrence before approving the site for infiltration.
6. Does adequate area exist within the RW to place Infiltration Device(s)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes", continue to Design Elements sections. If "No", continue to Question 7.
7. If adequate area does not exist within RW, can suitable, additional RW be acquired to site Infiltration Devices and how much RW would be needed to treat WQV, or a portion thereof? _________ acres ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, continue to Design Elements section.

   If No, continue to Question 8.
8. If adequate area cannot be obtained, document in Section 6 of the SWDR that the inability to obtain adequate area prevents the incorporation of this Treatment BMP into the project. ☐ Complete

Design Elements – Infiltration Basin

*** Required Design Element –** A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element –** A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Has an investigation been conducted, including subsurface soil investigation, in-hole conductivity testing and groundwater elevation determination? (This report must be completed for PS&E level design.) * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Has an upstream bypass or overflow spillway with scour protection been provided? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Is the Infiltration Basin size sufficient to capture the WQV, or portion thereof, with a maximum 96-hour drawdown time? Longer drawdown times may be allowable if vector controls have been implemented (e.g., underground chamber with flap gates) and coordinated with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.* ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Can access be provided to the invert of the Infiltration Basin? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Can the Infiltration Basin accommodate the freeboard above the overflow event elevation (reference Appendix B.1.6.1)? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
6. Can the Infiltration Basin be designed with interior side slopes no steeper than 4:1 (h:v) (may be 3:1 [h:v] with approval by District Maintenance)? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
7. Can vegetation be established in an earthen basin at the invert and on the side slopes for erosion control and to minimize re-suspension? If No, consider rock or similar protective system. Note: Infiltration Basins may be lined, in which case no vegetation would be required for lined areas.** ☐ Yes ☐ No
8. Can diversion be designed, constructed, and maintained to bypass flows exceeding the WQV? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
9. Can a gravity-fed maintenance drain be placed? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
10. Does the CDA for the device have trash treatment requirements?** ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If Yes, design and certify as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment (*See Caltrans Multi Benefit Treatment BMP Trash Full Capture Requirements Design Guidance*).

Design Elements – Infiltration Trench

1. Has an investigation been conducted, including subsurface soil investigation, in-hole conductivity testing and groundwater elevation determination? (This report must be completed for PS&E level design.) * ☐ Yes ☐ No

2. Is the surrounding soil within Hydrologic Soil Groups (HSG) Types A, B, and C while preserving an acceptable infiltration rate? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

3. Is the Infiltration Trench size sufficient to capture the WQV, or portion thereof, with a maximum 96-hour drawdown time? Longer drawdown times may be allowable, coordinate with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.* ☐ Yes ☐ No

4. Is the depth of the Infiltration Trench £ 13 ft? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

5. Can an observation well be placed in the trench? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

6. Can access be provided to the Infiltration Trench? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

7. Can pretreatment be provided to capture sediment in the runoff (such as using vegetation or a flow splitter with a sump)? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

8. Can flow diversion be designed, constructed, and maintained to bypass flows exceeding the Water Quality event? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

9. Does a perimeter curb or similar device need to be provided (to limit wheel loads upon the trench)? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

10. Does the CDA for the device have trash treatment requirements?** ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If Yes, design and certify as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment (*See Caltrans Multi Benefit Treatment BMP Trash Full Capture Requirements Design Guidance*).

Design Elements – Infiltration Gallery

1. Has an investigation been conducted, including subsurface soil investigation, in-hole conductivity testing and groundwater elevation determination? (This report must be completed for PS&E level design.) * ☐ Yes ☐ No

2. Is the surrounding soil within Hydrologic Soil Groups (HSG) Types A, B, and C while preserving an acceptable infiltration rate? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

3. Is the Infiltration Gallery size sufficient to capture the WQV, or portion thereof, with a maximum 96-hour drawdown time? Longer drawdown times may be allowable, coordinate with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator. * ☐ Yes ☐ No

4. Is the contributing drainage area of the gallery predominately impervious? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

5. Can an observation well be placed in the gallery? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

6. Can access be provided to the Infiltration Gallery? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

7. Can pretreatment be provided to capture sediment in the runoff (such as using vegetation or a flow splitter with a sump)? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

8. Can flow diversion be designed, constructed, and maintained to bypass flows exceeding the Water Quality event? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

9. Can the Infiltration Gallery accommodate the freeboard above the overflow event elevation? If not consider bolt down manhole covers.** ☐ Yes ☐ No

10. Has Infiltration Gallery cover been designed for traffic loads appropriate to the site usage?* ☐ Yes ☐ No

B.4 Biofiltration Strips and Swales (Vegetated Treatment Systems)

Biofiltration Strips are vegetated land areas, over which stormwater flows as sheet flow. Biofiltration Swales are vegetated channels, typically configured as trapezoidal or v-shaped channels that receive and convey stormwater flows while meeting water quality criteria and other flow criteria.

Pollutants are removed by filtration through the vegetation, sedimentation, adsorption to soil particles, and infiltration through the soil. Strips and swales are most effective at reducing Total Suspended Solids (soil particles) and particulate metals. In most cases, biofiltration swales and strips can also be considered a LID technique.

The following sections give a brief overview of biofiltration devices and a summary of design criteria. The PE shall refer to *Caltrans Biofiltration Swale Design Guidance* and *Caltrans Biofiltration Strips Design Guidance* for complete guidance on design criteria, site evaluation, and preliminary and final design.

B.4.1 Description

Biofiltration Strips are sloped vegetated land areas located adjacent to impervious areas, over which stormwater runoff flows as sheet flow. Pollutants are removed by filtration through the vegetation, uptake by plant biomass, sedimentation, adsorption to soil particles, and infiltration through the soil. Biofiltration Swales are vegetated, typically trapezoidal channels, which receive and convey stormwater flows while meeting water quality criteria and other flow criteria. Pollutants are removed by filtration through the vegetation, uptake by plant biomass, sedimentation, adsorption to soil particles, and infiltration through the soil.

When properly implemented, biofiltration strips and swales are aesthetically pleasing.

B.4.2 Appropriate Applications and Siting Criteria

Biofiltration Strips and Swales should be considered wherever site conditions and climate allow vegetation to be established and where flow velocities will not cause scour. A minimum vegetative cover of approximately 65 percent is required for treatment to occur. Biofiltration Strips and Swales are one of several BMPs for treatment of stormwater runoff from project areas that are anticipated to produce pollutants of concern (e.g., roadways, parking lots, maintenance facilities).

These devices are well suited to be part of a treatment-train system of BMPs and should be considered whenever siting other BMPs that could benefit from pretreatment, especially Infiltration Basins, Infiltration Trenches, and Infiltration Galleries. When used as pretreatment, the amount of runoff infiltrated by Biofiltration Devices should be calculated and documented.

In areas of high fire risks, biofiltration strips may still be used from 3’-10’ from edge of pavement, as well as beyond 10’. Caltrans has to balance the competing goals of using soil based LID treatment BMPs to meet NPDES requirements and incorporating fire suppression strips to reduce fire risks. The NPDES Permit requires Caltrans to prioritize infiltration of the water quality volume and use soil based BMPs. When siting TBMPs, maintain the historic 3’ strip area with no vegetation. From 3-10’ from the edge of pavement, vegetated TBMPs may be used with grass species that can be cut low to reduce fire risk but keep roots and low vegetation which will still provide the function of the biofiltration strip or vegetated DPPIA. Siting vegetated TBMPs within 10’ of the EP must be coordinated with District Maintenance and HQ Maintenance Vegetation and Wildfire Management. This should be written in the SWDR and comments/notes on the TMT tab of the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets for each TBMP. In addition to vegetated TBMPs, if space is limited, a non-vegetated DPPIA can be sited at the EP (within the shoulder backing area) and extend out as needed for treatment volumes. See DPPIA design guidance and Biofiltration TBMP design guidance.

B.4.3 Factors Affecting Design

Table B-3 summarizes preliminary design factors for Biofiltration Strips and Swales.

Table B-3. Summary of Biofiltration Strips and Swales Siting and Design Factors

Description	Applications/Siting	Preliminary Design Factors
Biofiltration Strips are vegetated land areas over which stormwater flows as sheet flow. Biofiltration Swales are vegetated channels that receive and convey stormwater as a concentrated flow. Biofiltration treats the WQF. Treatment Mechanisms: • Filtration through the vegetation • Sedimentation • Adsorption to soil particles • Infiltration Pollutants primarily removed: • Total Suspended Solids • Particulate metals • Nutrients • Dissolved Metals • Turbidity	• Site conditions and climate allow vegetation to be established – approximate 65 percent vegetation coverage will allow treatment, with better effects at higher coverage • Consider locations for swales where flow velocities will not cause scour • If proposed location is above contaminated soils or groundwater plumes, coordinate with District/Regional NPDES Coordinator and District Hazardous Waste Coordinator for clear direction • In high fire risk areas, maintain a 3’ strip at EP with no vegetation. Beyond 3’ from the EP, choose vegetation which can be mown in coordination with District and HQ Maintenance and Wildfire Management	• Strips and Swales: vegetation mix appropriate for climates and location • Strips and Swales: Use the Rational Method to determine the WQF and the peak discharge from the highway drainage design storm event. • Strips and Swales: select lining material based on HDM Chapter 860. Refer to Table 865.2. • Swales: design as a conveyance system for the peak drainage facility design event per HDM Chapters 800 to 890. • Swales: after designing to convey flows from the peak drainage facility design event, check swale against biofiltration criteria at WQF. • Swales: design criteria under WQF: Hydraulic Residence Time of 5 minutes or more; maximum velocity of 1.0 ft/s; and maximum depth of flow of 0.5 ft. • Swales: slope in direction of flow: minimum 0.25 percent, maximum 6 percent, with 1 to 2 percent preferred; • Swales: A minimum width (in the direction of flow) at the invert of a trapezoidal biofiltration swale typically 2.0 ft; maximum bottom typically up to 10 ft; side slope ratio should be 4:1 (H:V) or flatter; discuss bottom width and side slope ratio with District Maintenance. Non trapezoidal swales are allowed, consult Hydraulics and Maintenance. • Swales: freeboard: Refer to HDM Topic 868 to determine if freeboard is required. • Strips: sized as long (in direction of flow) and flat as the site will reasonably allow up to sheet flow boundaries (maximum length of Biofiltration Strip is approximately 100 ft); a Hydraulic Residence Time is not required. • Strips: slope in the direction of flow: minimum must grade to drain, maximum must support required vegetation. 4H:1V or flatter is preferred, however strip slopes up to 2H:1V have shown pollutant removal. • Strips: should be free of gullies or rills

B.4.4 Checklist

Checklist T-1, Part 3 is provided to assist the PE in evaluating the feasibility of biofiltration devices for a project, and the checklist identifies design elements that should be considered in the design of biofiltration devices. The checklist is provided as a tool and does not need to be attached to SWDR or submitted as part of the PID, PA/ED, or PS&E process.

Treatment BMPs
Checklist T-1, Part 3

Prepared by: ________	Date: ______________________	District-Co-Route: ___________
PM: ________________	Project ID/EA: _____________	RWQCB: ___________________

Biofiltration Swales / Biofiltration Strips

Feasibility

1. Do the climate and site conditions allow vegetation to be established? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "No", evaluate other BMPs.

2. Can biofiltration swale be designed with a slope between 0.25 and 6 percent (with 1 to 2 percent preferred)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "No", Biofiltration Swales are not feasible.

3. Can biofiltration strips be designed with a maximum slope of 2H:1V (with 4H:1V or flatter preferred)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "No", Biofiltration Strips are not feasible.

4. Are Biofiltration device(s) proposed at sites where known contaminated soils exist? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes", consult with District/Regional NPDES Coordinator about how to proceed.

5. Does adequate area exist within the RW to place Biofiltration device(s)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes", continue to Design Elements section. If "No", continue to Question 6.

6. If adequate area does not exist within RW, can suitable, additional RW be acquired to site Biofiltration devices and how much RW would be needed to treat WQF? _________ acres ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes", continue to Design Elements section. If "No", continue to Question 7.

7. If adequate area cannot be obtained, document in Section 6 of the SWDR that the inability to obtain adequate area prevents the incorporation of these Treatment BMPs into the project. ☐ Complete

Design Elements

*** Required Design Element –** A “Yes” response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a “No” response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element –** A “Yes” response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Has the District Landscape Architect provided vegetation mixes appropriate for climate and location? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Can the biofiltration swale be designed as a conveyance system under any expected flows > the WQF event, as per HDM Chapter 800? * (e.g., freeboard, minimum slope) ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Can the biofiltration swale be designed as a water quality treatment device under the WQF while meeting the required HRT, depth, and velocity criteria? (Reference Appendix B, Section B.4.3)* ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Is the maximum length of a biofiltration strip £ 100 ft? Strips > 100 ft. may still be considered as long as potential erosion issues have been addressed. ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Has the minimum width (perpendicular to flow) of the invert of the biofiltration swale received the concurrence of District Maintenance? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
6. Can biofiltration swales be located in natural or low cut sections to reduce maintenance problems caused by animals burrowing through the berm of the swale? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
7. Has the infiltration rate of the bio-filtration device been calculated and maximized through amendments where appropriate?** ☐ Yes ☐ No
8. Have Biofiltration Systems been considered for locations upstream of other Treatment BMPs, as part of a treatment train or pretreatment? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If “Yes”, document the amount of runoff treated (WQV/WQF).
9. Has the lining material been selected based on the permissible shear and velocity (refer to HDM Chapter 860 and Table 865.2)?* ☐ Yes ☐ No

B.5 Detention Devices

A Detention Device is a volume-based permanent Treatment BMP designed to reduce the sediment and particulate loading in runoff from the water quality design storm. While the WQV, or portion thereof, is temporarily detained in the device sediment and particulates settle out under the quiescent conditions prior to the runoff being discharged. A Detention Device is typically configured as a basin.

Detention Basins can remove litter, settleable solids, total suspended solids, particulate metals, and sorbed pollutants such as heavy metals, oil, and grease by capturing, temporarily detaining, and gradually releasing stormwater runoff.

Detention Basins may be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems when a project has both post construction and trash treatment requirements. Refer to Caltrans Multi Benefit Treatment BMP Trash Full Capture Requirements Design Guidance for complete guidance on meeting certification requirements.

The following sections give a brief overview of detention devices and a summary of design criteria. The PE shall refer to Caltrans Detention Basins Design Guidance for complete guidance on design criteria, site evaluation, and preliminary and final design.

B.5.1 Description

Detention Basins operate by intercepting runoff and detaining it long enough for the sediment and particulates to settle out under quiescent conditions prior to the runoff being discharged. Detention Basins are typically designed to completely drain after a storm event and are normally dry between rain events. Detention Basins are designed for water quality purposes, but they must also operate safely and effectively as part of the overall highway drainage system. Detention Basins must safely pass the peak drainage facility design event in accordance with the HDM.

In addition, Detention Basins should be able to operate by gravity flow while limiting clogging of the water quality outlet and providing a proper overflow spillway or overflow riser for larger runoff volumes. The basins should only require occasional maintenance and cleaning. Entering flows should be distributed uniformly at low velocity to prevent re-suspension of settled materials and to encourage quiescent conditions. Low flow channels are often used to ensure conveyance to the outlet and to limit erosion. Basin shape and/or configuration should result in as natural an appearance as possible.

B.5.2 Appropriate Applications and Siting Criteria

Detention Devices and other approved Treatment BMPs should be considered for implementation wherever Infiltration Devices are not feasible. Refer to Checklist T-1, Part 1. See Table B-4 for siting and design criteria.

Sufficient hydraulic head should be available so that water stored in the device does not cause an objectionable backwater condition in the upstream storm drain system. The seasonally high groundwater should be at least 5 ft below the invert of the Detention Basin (less with approval from RWQCB) unless a liner is used.

B.5.3 Factors Affecting Preliminary Design

Preliminary design factors for Detention Devices are summarized in Table B-4. A Detention Device designed for dual purposes of water quality and attenuation of peak flows requires additional design considerations not included in this table.

Table B-4. Summary of Detention Device Siting and Design Criteria

Description	Applications/Siting	Preliminary Design Factors
Impoundments where the WQV is temporarily detained during treatment May be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment System Treatment Mechanisms: • Sedimentation • Infiltration (if basin unlined) Pollutants primarily removed: • Sediment (TSS) • Particulate metals • Litter • Sorbed pollutants (heavy metals, oil and grease [O&G]) to some degree	• Sufficient head to prevent objectionable backwater condition in the storm drain system • Separation from seasonally high water table > 5 ft, or less as justified by adequate groundwater information or RWQCB concurrence (if liner not used) • Use liner if basin is located over a known contaminated groundwater plume unless approved by the local RWQCB due to the presence of low permeability soils (Hydrologic Soil Groups C or D) • If significant sediment is expected (e.g., from erosion-prone cut slopes) consider increasing the volume of the Detention Device an amount equivalent to the annual loading (or more, if less frequent cleanout is expected); consult with District Maintenance. Consider a sediment trap or forebay. Refer to *Caltrans Traction Sand Traps Design Guidance* (Section 1.2.2 Loading Dock and 1.2.3 Earthen Berm) • Locate outside the Clear Recovery Zone (HDM Topic 309.1), design to be traversable, or consult with Traffic Operations to determine if guard railing is required	• Basins meeting the siting criteria and located in areas requiring trash treatment may be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems. • Size to capture the WQV, or portion thereof, according to Section 5.3.4 • Outlet designed to empty device within a maximum of 96 hrs. (consistent with device sizing method), with 40 to 48-hrs recommended, using debris screen (or equivalent) • Minimum water quality outlet orifice size of 0.5 in. • Flow-path-to-width ratio of at least 2:1 recommended. • Maintenance access (road around device and ramp to basin invert) • Provide an upstream diversion channel or pipe for storm events > WQV, if feasible, as part of the Basin flow control device sized to pass the peak drainage facility design event (see HDM Chapter 830). If upstream diversion is not feasible, a downstream overflow outlet must be sized to pass the peak drainage facility design event. Overflow outlet can be either an outlet riser, spillway, or overflow weir. See design guidance for minimum sizing. • Provide freeboard ≥ 12 inches (distance between the elevation of water in the basin when passing the design storm and the elevation at the top of the confinement). • Provide a maintenance gravity drain. Use 8-inch diameter pipe for gravity drain; connect gravity drain to base of outlet riser • Flows should enter at low velocity. Use scour protection on inflow, outfall and spillway if necessary • If a vegetated invert is used, consider adding a low-flow channel between the influent pipe and the outlet device, to reduce erosion. • Use 4:1 (H:V) slope ratios or flatter for interior slopes, unless approved by District Maintenance, with 3:1 (h:v) maximum • Provide vegetation on (earthen) invert and on non-paved side slopes.

B.5.4 Checklist

Checklist T-1, Part 4 is provided to assist the PE in evaluating the feasibility of detention devices for a project, and the checklist identifies design elements that should be considered in the design of detention devices. The checklist is provided as a tool and does not need to be attached to SWDR or submitted as part of the PID, PA/ED, or PS&E process.

Treatment BMPs
Checklist T-1, Part 4

Prepared by: ________ Date: ______________________ District-Co-Route: ___________

PM: ________________ Project ID/EA: ______________ RWQCB: ___________________

Detention Devices

Feasibility

1. Is there sufficient head to prevent objectionable backwater conditions in the upstream drainage systems? ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Is basin invert ≥ 5 ft above seasonally high groundwater or can it be designed with an impermeable liner? (Note: If an impermeable liner is used, the seasonally high groundwater elevation must not encroach within 12 inches of the invert.) ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If No to any question above, then Detention Devices are not feasible.
3. If the Detention Device is being used to capture traction sand, is the total volume of the device at least equal to the WQV designed to be treated plus the anticipated volume of traction sand, while maintaining a minimum 12-inch freeboard (1 ft)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If No, then Detention Devices are not feasible.
4. Does adequate area exist within the RW to place Detention Device? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, continue to the Design Elements section. If No, continue to Question 5.
5. If adequate area does not exist within RW, can suitable, additional RW be acquired to site Detention Device and how much RW would be needed to treat WQV? _________ acres ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, continue to the Design Elements section. If No, continue to Question 6.
6. If adequate area cannot be obtained, document in Section 6 of the SWDR that the inability to obtain adequate area prevents the incorporation of this Treatment BMP into the project. ☐ Complete

Design Elements

*** Required Design Element** – A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element** – A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Has the location of the Detention Device been evaluated for any effects to the adjacent roadway and subgrade? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Can a minimum freeboard of 12 inches be provided above the overflow event elevation? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Is an upstream bypass or overflow outlet provided? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Is the drawdown time of the Detention Device a maximum of 96 hours? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Is the basin outlet designed to minimize clogging (minimum outlet orifice diameter of 0.5 inches)? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
6. Are the inlet and outlet structures designed to prevent scour and re-suspension of settled materials, and to enhance quiescent conditions? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
7. Can vegetation be established in an earthen basin at the invert and on the side slopes for erosion control and to minimize re-suspension? Otherwise include rock or similar protective system. Note: Detention Basins may be lined, in which case no vegetation would be required for lined areas.* ☐ Yes ☐ No
8. Has sufficient access for maintenance been provided? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
9. Is the side slope 4:1 (h:v) or flatter for interior slopes? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

   (Note: Side slopes up to 3:1 (h:v) allowed with approval by District Maintenance.)
10. If significant sediment is expected from nearby slopes, can the Detention Device be designed with additional volume equal to the expected annual loading? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
11. Is flow path as long as possible (> 2:1 length to width ratio at WQV elevation is recommended)? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
12. Does the CDA for the device have trash treatment requirements?** ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If Yes, design and certify as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment (*See Caltrans Multi Benefit Treatment BMP Trash Full Capture Requirements Design Guidance*).

B.6 Traction Sand Traps (TST)

Traction Sand Traps (TST) are sedimentation devices that are used to capture traction sand or abrasives from stormwater runoff. These traps may take the form of basins, modified drainage inlets, or vaults.

The following sections give a brief overview of TST devices and a summary of design criteria. The PE shall refer to *Caltrans Traction Sand Traps Design Guidance* for schematics and complete guidance on design criteria, site evaluation, and preliminary and final design.

B.6.1 Description

There are four basic types of TSTs:

1. Modified Drainage Inlet;
2. Loading Docks;
3. Earthen Berm; and
4. Sand Vault.

The Modified Drainage Inlet TSTs are modified standard drainage inlets (cast-in-place, precast, or pipe (steel or concrete)) with an outflow pipe offset from the invert of the trap to capture sand and sediment. Inlets can also function as a standard catch basin and multiple inlets can be placed in-line to increase sand storage. Sites that have small traction sand volumes and/or limited space are the most suitable for Modified Drainage Inlet traps. Weep holes are required to eliminate standing water.

The Loading Dock TST is designed as a sedimentation basin used to settle and store the anticipated traction sand volume. A Loading Dock TST is most appropriate when a large amount of recovered traction sand is estimated and right-of-way and visual impacts are not a concern.

The Earthen Berm type TST is similar to the Loading Dock type TST, but uses earthen berms to stabilize basin walls. The Earthen Berm type TST may be used in series with Infiltration Devices or other Treatment BMPs as a pre-treatment device. In this configuration, the Earthen Berm type TST acts as a sedimentation basin and is separated from the Infiltration or other Treatment BMP by a partially buried Temporary Railing (Type-K) that acts as a sediment weir. The traction sand settles in the Earthen Berm type TST and the water flows over the sediment weir into the Infiltration Device or other Treatment BMP. This type of TST is most appropriate when a large amount of recovered traction sand is estimated, visual impacts are a concern, and right-of-way is not limited.

The Sand Vault TST consists of one or more underground structures placed in-line or side-by-side within storm drain systems to capture traction sand. The vault has a sedimentation chamber to slow flow velocities and settle sand. This type of TST is most appropriate when a large amount of recovered traction sand is estimated and limited right-of-way is a concern.

B.6.2 Appropriate Applications and Siting Constraints

TSTs should be used at sites where traction sand or abrasives are applied to the roadway at least twice a year. When it snows, abrasives are commonly applied to the roadway for traction. As the snow melts, or during subsequent storm events, the stormwater has the potential to transport sand to the storm drain system and ultimately to a receiving water body. This can result in sediment and other pollutants entering the storm water. TSTs are deployed to collect the sand and prevent sediment discharges while decreasing the potential for clogging. A typical TST is a sedimentation device that temporarily detains runoff and allows traction sand to settle out, while accommodating peak hydraulic flows.

B.6.3 Factors Affecting Preliminary Design

Siting and design criteria are summarized in Table B-5 below.

Table B-5. Summary of Traction Sand Trap Siting and Design Criteria

Description	Applications/Siting	Preliminary Design Factors
Sedimentation devices that temporarily detain runoff and allow traction sand to settle out. May be basins, modified drainage inlets, or vaults. Designed for peak hydraulic flow. Treatment Mechanisms: • Sedimentation Pollutants removed: • Sand, cinders, or other traction-enhancing substances	• Sites where sand or other traction-enhancing substances are commonly applied to the roadway • Not considered where sand is used only rarely (less than twice a year) • Use Detention Basins or forebays as TST whenever feasible; if they are not feasible, then consider modified drainage inlets or vaults • Locate device so water is not introduced above the roadway subgrade in case of blockage	• Design for anticipated sand recovery and cleanout interval • To the extent possible, stabilize areas within the contributing drainage area to control sediment loads • Divert peak hydraulic flow if practical • Design to avoid or minimize scour • Provide, if possible, temporary sedimentation storage volume using a minimum of 0.5 ft between top of sand and outlet pipe for projected cleaning frequency. • Sufficient hydraulic head for gravity flow • Inlet and outlet arrangement to minimize short-circuiting of the flow • Weep holes in invert or base to allow proper drainage • Invert minimum of 3ft above seasonally high groundwater if drainage is allowed through base (drainage inlet or vault type) • Maximum depth of inlet or vault of 10 ft below ground surface (varies with equipment – consult District Maintenance) • Maintenance space and/or access ramps for large equipment. A maintenance vehicle access shoulder of up to 16 ft may be required; consult with District Maintenance

B.6.4 Checklist

Checklist T-1, Part 5 is provided to assist the PE in evaluating the feasibility of TSTs for a project, and the checklist identifies design elements that should be considered in the design of traction sand traps. The checklist is provided as a tool and does not need to be attached to SWDR or submitted as part of the PID, PA/ED, or PS&E process.

Treatment BMPs
Checklist T-1, Part 5

Prepared by: ________ Date: ______________________ District-Co-Route: ___________

PM: ________________ Project ID/EA: _______ RWQCB: ___________________________

Traction Sand Traps

Feasibility

1. Can a Detention Device be sized to capture the estimated traction sand and the WQV, or portion thereof, from the tributary area? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, then a separate Traction Sand Trap may not be necessary. Coordinate with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator and also complete Checklist T-1, Part 5.

2. Is the Traction Sand Trap proposed for a site where sand or other traction enhancing substances are applied to the roadway at least twice per year? ☐ Yes ☐ No

3. Is adequate space provided for maintenance staff and equipment access for annual cleanout? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If the answer to any one of Questions 2 or 3 is No, then a Traction Sand Trap is not feasible.

4. Does adequate area exist within the RW to place Traction Sand Traps? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, continue to Design Elements section. If No, continue to Question 5.

5. If adequate area does not exist within RW, can suitable, additional RW be acquired to site Traction Sand Traps and how much RW would be needed? _________ acres ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, continue to the Design Elements section. If No, continue to Question 6.

6. If adequate area cannot be obtained, document in Section 6 of the SWDR that the inability to obtain adequate area prevents the incorporation of this Treatment BMP into the project. ☐ Complete

Design Elements

*** Required Design Element –** A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 5 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element –** A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Has site Caltrans Maintenance Station been contacted to provide the amount of traction sand used annually at the location? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

   List application rate reported. ___________ yd^3

2. Does the Traction Sand Trap have enough volume to store settled sand over the winter (see Section 3.2 of Caltrans TST Design Guidance)? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. If the Traction Sand Trap has either an open bottom or weep holes, is the invert a minimum of 3 ft above seasonally high groundwater? * * ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Is the maximum depth of the storage within 10 ft of the ground surface, or another depth as required by District Maintenance? * (Inlet or vault type) ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Can peak flow be diverted around the device? ** (Inlet or vault type) ☐ Yes ☐ No
6. Is a 6-inch separation provided between the top of the captured traction sand and the outlet from the device, in order to minimize re-suspension of the solids? ** (Inlet or vault type) ☐ Yes ☐ No

B.7 Dry Weather Flow Diversion

Dry Weather Flow Diversion devices provide permanent treatment by directing non-stormwater flow through a pipe or channel to a municipal sanitary sewer system (publicly owned treatment works [POTWs]) during the dry season or dry weather. This flow must be generated by Caltrans activities or from Caltrans facilities. The following sections give a brief overview of dry weather flow diversion devices and a summary of design criteria.

B.7.1 Description

Typically, dry weather flow diversions are constructed across the dry weather flow drainage channel, so the dry weather flows are diverted to a pipe or channel leading to the sanitary sewer. A gate, weir, or valve should be installed to stop the diversion during the wet season or during storms during the wet season (if the diversion will be made year-round). Accordingly, the conveyance to the sanitary sewer should be sized for the dry weather (non-storm) flows only. Wet weather flow is diverted (or remains undiverted, depending upon the design) back to the stormwater conveyance system.

If possible, a screen or trash rack should be installed at the diversion to reduce the likelihood of clogging the diversion pipe or channel. Maintenance vehicle access should be provided, especially if a screen is installed. Check with the receiving POTW whether additional pretreatment is required.

B.7.2 Appropriate Applications and Siting Criteria

Dry Weather Flow Diversions should only be considered when all the following conditions apply:

- Dry weather flow is the result of Caltrans activities
- Dry weather flow is persistent (i.e., present over a significant length of time at a relatively consistent flow rate, or having significant quantities that are periodically developed on-site), and contains pollutants;
- An opportunity for connecting to a sanitary sewer is reasonably close and would not involve extraordinary plumbing, features or construction practices to implement (e.g., jacking under a freeway);
- The Publicly Owned Treatment Works (POTW) is willing to accept the flow during the dry season or dry weather.

An example of dry weather flow that could be considered for diversion is the runoff from a Caltrans tunnel generated during cleaning using water spray and scrubbing.

B.7.3 Factors Affecting Preliminary Design

Siting and design criteria are summarized in Table B-6 below.

Table B-6. Summary of Dry Weather Flow Diversion Siting and Design Criteria

Description	Applications/Siting	Preliminary Design Factors
Direct flow during dry weather (or non-storm periods) to a POTW. Treatment flow rate determined on a site-specific basis (not the WQF). Treatment Mechanisms: • Wastewater treatment plant Pollutants removed: • All constituents	Only when the conditions below apply: • Dry weather flow is persistent (consistent flow rate and significant length of time) • Connection would not involve extraordinary plumbing, features or construction practices to implement • POTW willing to accept dry weather flow	• Berm or wall across channel to divert dry weather flow to the sanitary sewer • Gate, weir, or valve to stop diversion during wet season • Conveyance to sanitary sewer sized only for dry weather flow • Consider a screen or trash rack to limit debris conveyed to the POTW • Maintenance vehicle access

B.7.4 Checklist

Checklist T-1, Part 6 is provided to assist the PE in evaluating the feasibility of dry weather flow diversion devices for a project, and the checklist identifies design elements that should be considered in the design of dry weather flow diversion devices. The checklist is provided as a tool and does not need to be attached to SWDR or submitted as part of the PID, PA/ED, or PS&E process.

Treatment BMPs
Checklist T-1, Part 6

Prepared by: ________ Date: ______________________ District-Co-Route: ___________

PM: ________________ Project ID/EA: _______ RWQCB: ___________________________

Dry Weather Flow Diversion

Feasibility

1. Is a Dry-Weather Flow Diversion acceptable to a Publicly Owned Treatment Works (POTW)? ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Would a connection require ordinary (i.e., not extraordinary) plumbing features, or construction methods to implement? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "No" to either question above, Dry Weather Flow Diversion is not feasible.
3. Does adequate area exist within the RW to place Dry Weather Flow Diversion devices? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes", continue to Design Elements sections. If "No", continue to Question 4.
4. If adequate area does not exist within RW, can suitable, additional RW be acquired to site Dry Weather Flow Diversion devices and how much RW would be needed? _________ (acres) ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes", continue to the Design Elements section.
   If "No", continue to Question 5.
5. If adequate area cannot be obtained, document in Section 6 of the SWDR that the inability to obtain adequate area prevents the incorporation of this Treatment BMP into the project. ☐ Complete

Design Elements

*** Required Design Element** – A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element** – A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Does the existing sanitary sewer pipeline have adequate capacity to accept project dry weather flows, or can an upgrade be implemented to handle the anticipated dry weather flows within the project's budget and objectives? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Can the connection be designed to allow for maintenance vehicle access? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Can gate, weir, or valve be designed to stop diversion during storm events? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Can the inlet be designed to reduce chances of clogging the diversion pipe or channel? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Can a back flow prevention device be designed to prevent sanitary sewage from entering storm drain? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

B.8 Full-Capture Trash Devices

Full-Capture Trash Devices are deployed to meet the trash TMDLs and the Statewide Trash Provisions of the Caltrans Permit. They include physical or mechanical methods to remove litter and solids 5 millimeters nominal[1] and larger from the stormwater runoff, usually done using various screening technologies. Full-Capture Trash Devices have a design treatment capacity that is either:

- Not less than the peak flow rate, Q, resulting from a 1-year, 1-hour storm for the contributing drainage area (full-capture flow (FCF), see Section 5.3.4.3), or
- Designed and sized to convey at least the same flows as the corresponding storm drain.

The Gross Solids Removal Device (GSRD), Trash Net, and Capture Housing are all stand-alone full-capture trash devices. These devices only provide trash treatment. Consideration of these devices is appropriate for projects that do not have post construction treatment requirements or for projects that use a series of treatment controls. They are sized using the FCF.

Projects that have both post construction and trash treatment requirements should consider Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems. Bioretention, Detention Basins, Media Filters, Infiltration Basins, and Infiltration Trenches may be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems. Refer to B.1.4.

The following sections give a brief overview of Full-Capture Trash Devices and a summary of design criteria. The PE shall refer to *Caltrans Gross Solids Removal Devices Design Guidance, Caltrans Trash Nets Design Guidance, and Caltrans Capture Housing Design Guidance* for complete guidance on design criteria, site evaluation, preliminary, and final design.

B.8.1 Description

Full-Capture Trash devices which target trash only include GSRDs, Trash Nets, and Capture Housing. Additional Treatment BMPs to meet project post-construction and/or TMDL requirements may be necessary.

GSRD: There are two approved GSRD types that were specifically designed for 100 percent gross solids removal from stormwater runoff, and with the capacity to retain one year’s worth of solids loading to facilitate annual cleaning; the Linear Radial and the Inclined Screen.

The Linear Radial Device has two configurations. One type (referred to as “Linear Radial”) is used for influent runoff velocities up to 8.2 feet per second. As shown in Figure B-5, the first 2.8 feet of the Linear Radial well casing is non-louvered with an open top to allow for influent bypass should the device become clogged with litter. The other type (referred to as “Linear Radial (HV)”) is for influent velocities greater than 8.2 feet per second and is shown in Figure B-6. The Linear Radial (HV) has an energy dissipation vault separate from the main vault, and overflows occur by overtopping the initial vault into the second chamber.

[1] The 5 mm (3/16-inch) dimension is based on requirements set forth in the Trash Implementation requirements of the Caltrans Permit.

Rendered images of the Linear Radial types are presented in Figures B-5 and.B-6. Figure B-7 shows a Linear Radial Device partially full of debris.

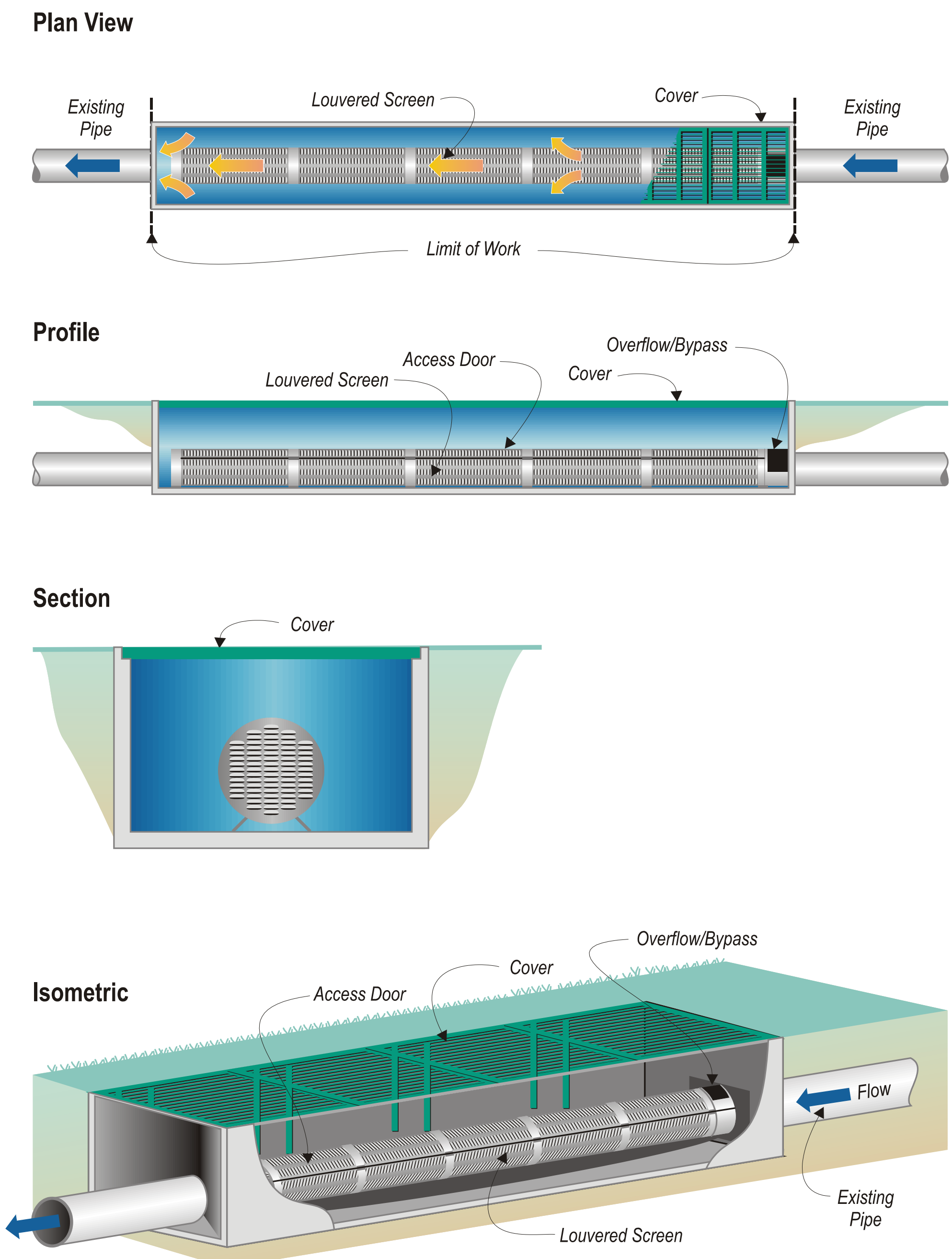


Figure B-5. Schematic of Linear Radial Device

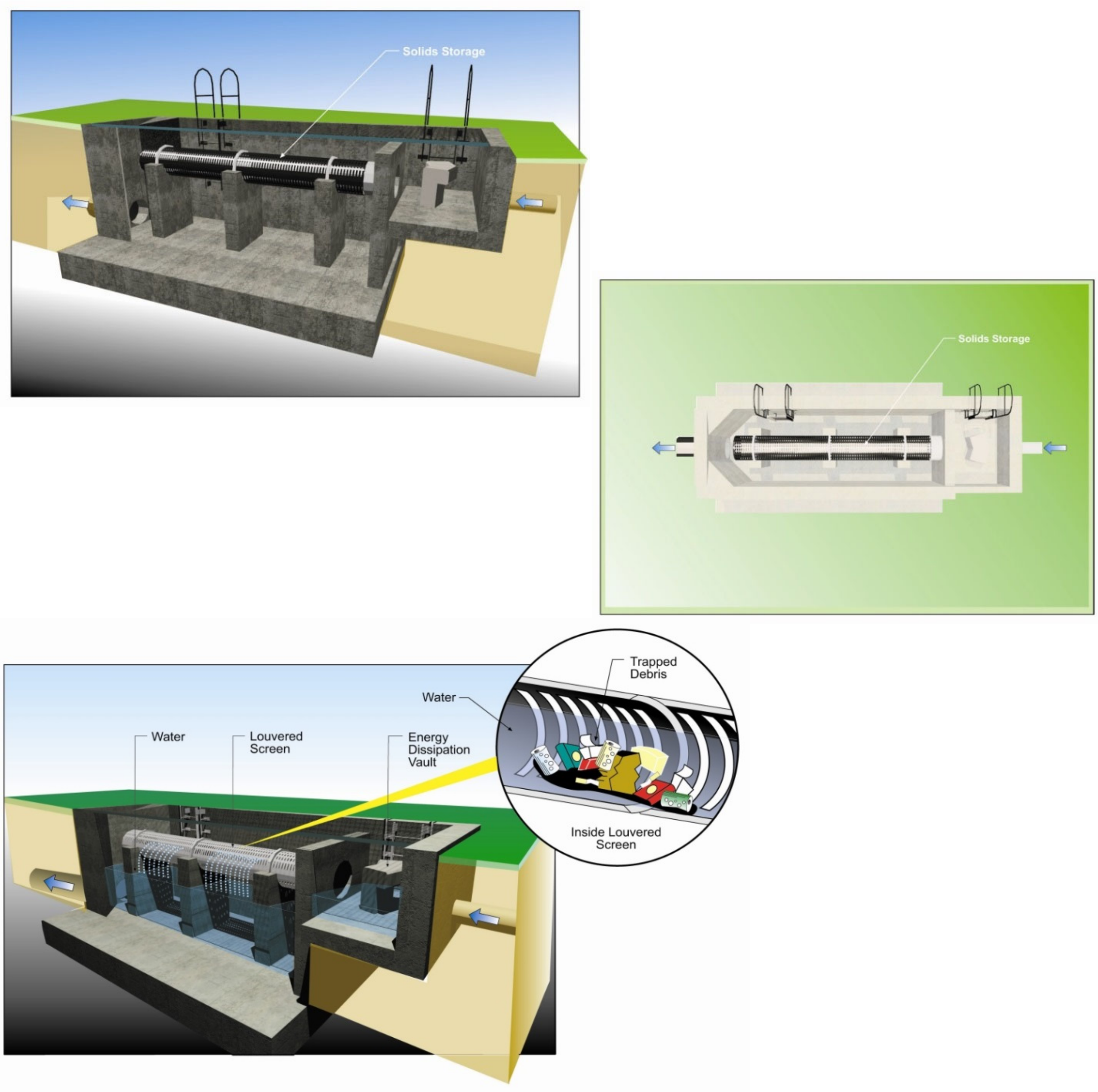


Figure B-6. Schematic of Linear Radial Device (HV)

Figure B-7. Linear Radial Device (partially full)

The Inclined Screen Device is designed for flows up to 20.4 cfs. This device uses a wedge-wire screen to remove litter, debris, and gross solids. With this GSRD the stormwater runoff enters at the top of the device and flows down the screen. The runoff passes through the screen while the litter, debris, and gross solids are pushed down the screen and retained in a confined storage area at the bottom of the device. This device uses flow deflectors and dispersion plate to increase the self-cleaning efficiency of the device which will decrease maintenance efforts. A curved section aids in flow separation between the dissipation slab and top of screen.

Rendered images of the Inclined Screen are presented in Figure B-8.

Additional information regarding the design of Inclined Screen Devices is found in Caltrans Gross Solids Removal Design Guidance.

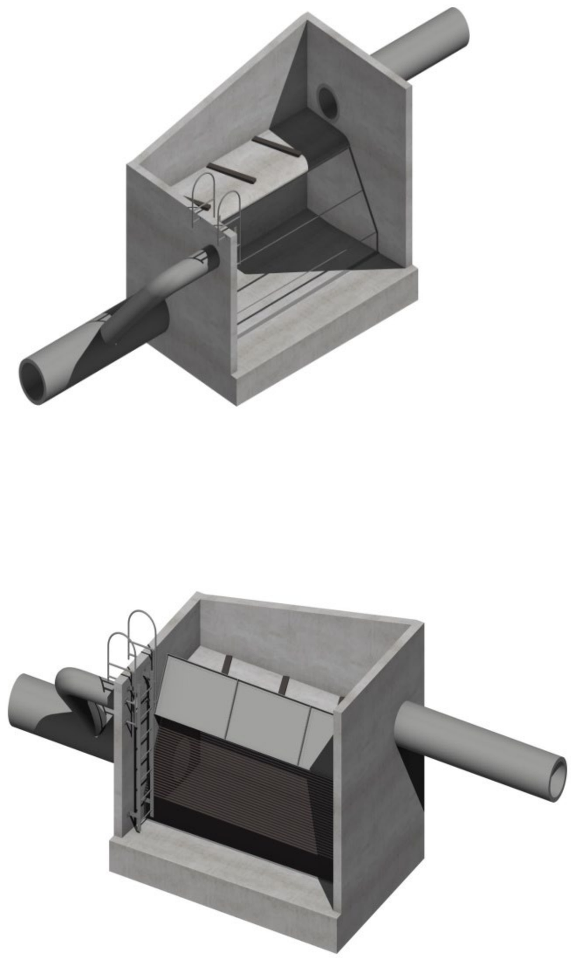


Figure B-8. Inclined Screen Device

Trash Net: Trash Nets are an end-of-pipe device designed to remove solid waste (trash or litter) from stormwater runoff flowing in a drainage system (inlets, pipes, or ditch). Trash Nets may be attached in different ways to existing drainage systems, conforming to the available space and topography. Isometric views of End-of-Pipe Trash Net BMPs are provided below in Figures B-9 to B12.

Additional information on designing Trash Nets can be found in Caltrans Trash Nets Design Guidance.

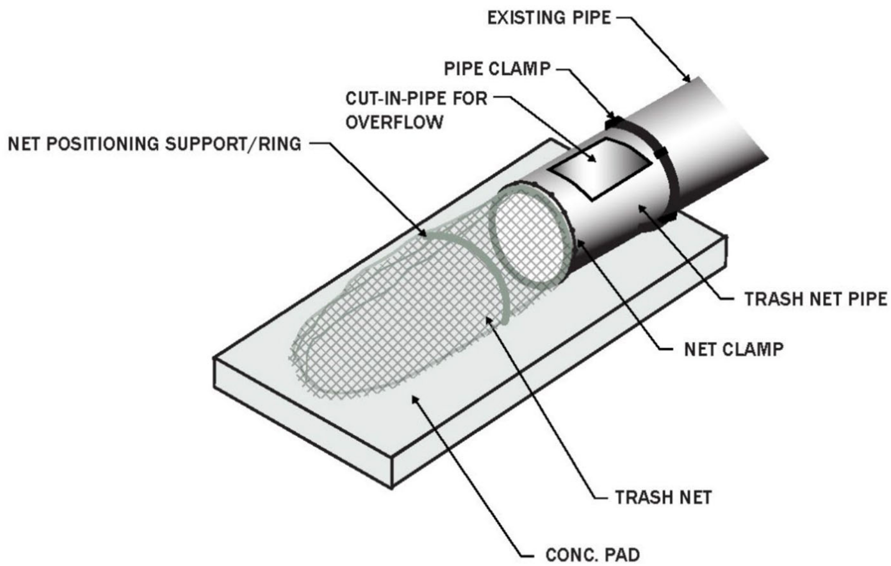


Figure B-9. Isometric view of a Trash Net attached to an extended culvert

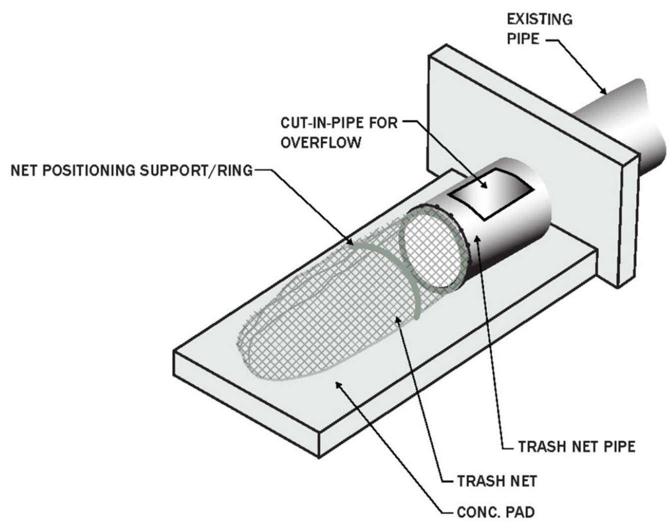


Figure B-10. Isometric view of a Trash Net attached to a headwall

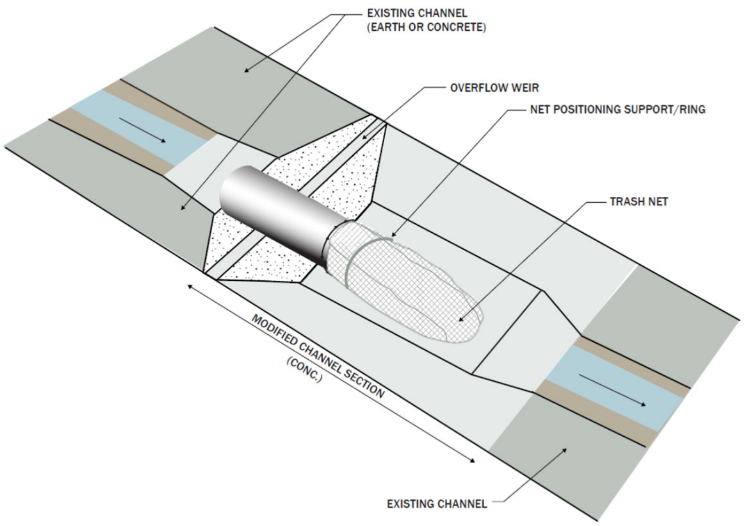


Figure B-11. Trash Net In-Channel

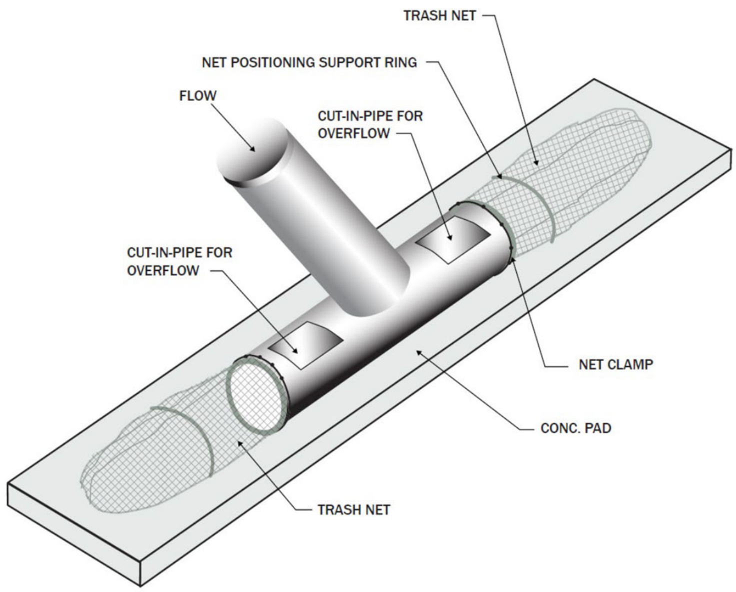


Figure B-12. Trash Nets on Downdrain

Capture Housing: A Capture Housing is designed to remove solid waste (trash or litter) from stormwater runoff flowing in a drainage system (drain inlets, pipes) along the highway system. The Capture Housing is designed to provide both retrofit and new installation opportunities in locations where drain inlets are installed.

A Capture Housing is a concrete structure, and consists of two vaults:

1. Vault 1 – Trash Storage Area and Bypass Channel Inlet
2. Vault 2 – Trash Capture Box or Screen Box and Bypass Channel (Device) Outlet

Based on the stormwater inlet configuration, two basic types of Capture Housing are available to match field conditions.

1. Capture Housing Type 1 (CH-1) – No inlet pipe
2. Capture Housing Type 2 (CH-2) – With Inlet Pipes

The Capture Housing Type 1 does not have an inlet pipe and stormwater enters through the top grates. The device is designed to be installed at the beginning of the storm drain system, where runoff from a trash tributary area can first enter the storm drain. The outlet or discharge from the BMP can be straight, right, or left as shown in Figure B-13 below.

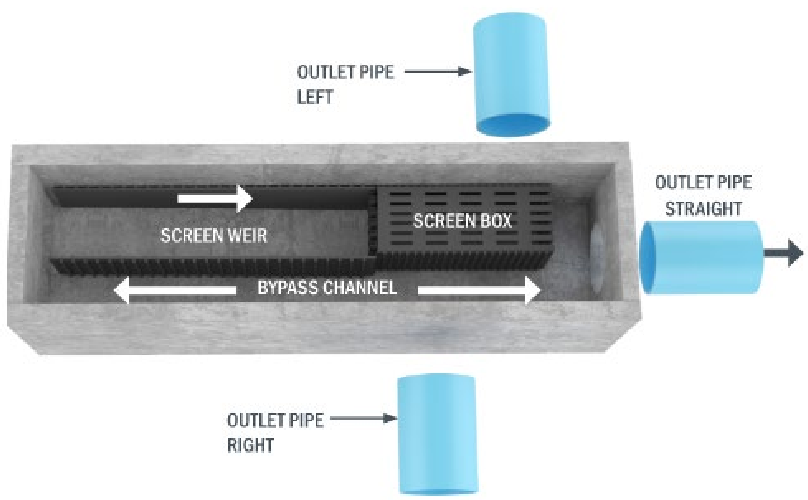


Figure B-13. Capture Housing Type 1

The Capture Housing Type 2 has inlet pipes as well as grates for the stormwater entry to the device. A graphical view is shown as Figures B-14 and B-15. The device may be configured as a single inlet bypass or double inlet bypass. Single inlet bypass configurations are used in systems where the inlet consists of flow treated by an upstream trash BMP. Double inlet bypass configurations require an upstream splitter box to separate design and trash flows. Like the CH-1, the discharge from the device can be straight, left or right, depending on the field conditions.

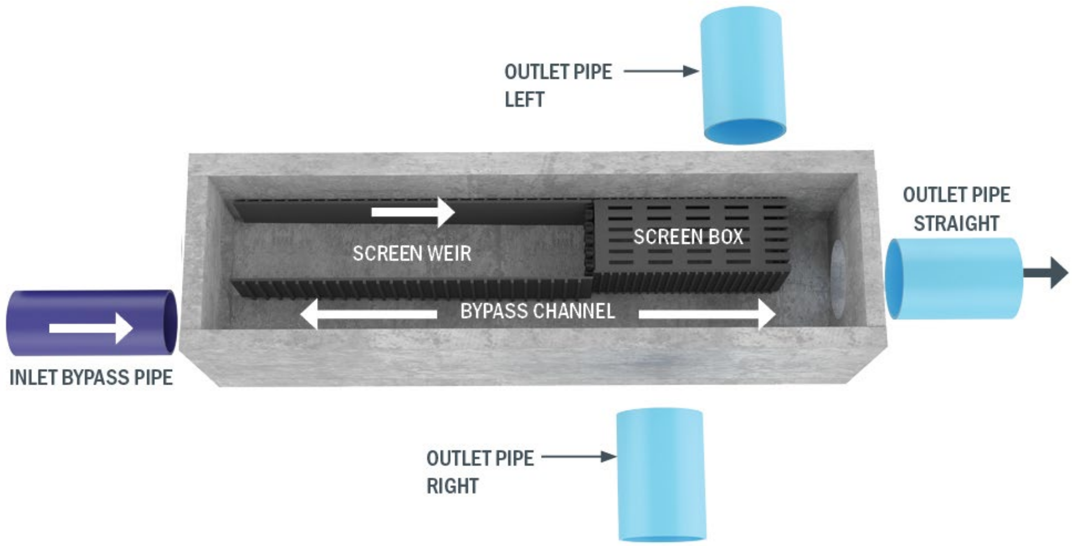


Figure B-14 Capture Housing Type 2 Single Inlet Bypass

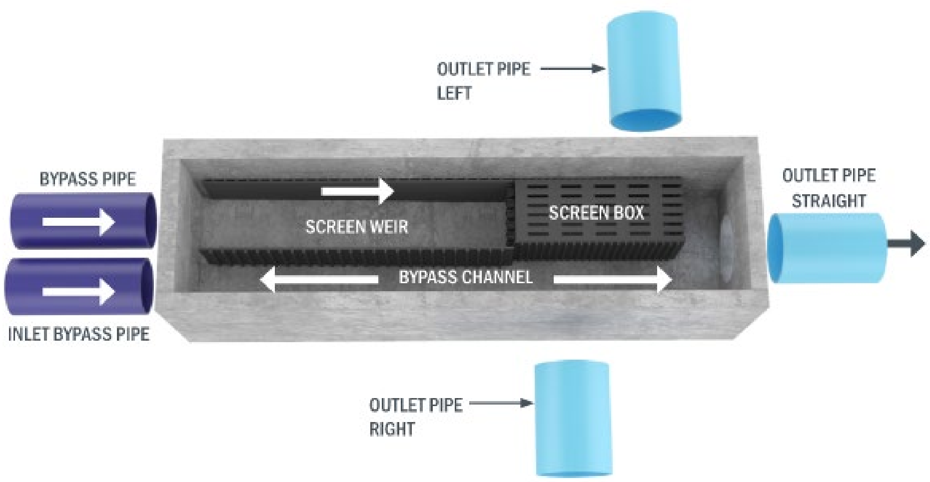


Figure B-15. Capture Housing Type 2 Double Inlet Bypass

B.8.2 Appropriate Applications and Siting Criteria

Full-Capture Trash Devices should be considered for projects in areas with a trash TMDL and areas designated STGAs. The Linear Radial device, Trash Nets, and Capture Housings require very little head to operate and are well suited for narrow and relatively flat RW. The Inclined Screen device requires a 66 inch difference of head and is better suited for fill sections of highways.

All Full-Capture Trash Devices require sufficient space and/or access ramps for maintenance and inspection including the use of vacuum trucks or other large equipment to remove accumulated trash. Consider using fiberglass reinforced plastic frame and grate for GSRDs in high vandalism areas. Consult District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator and District Maintenance when considering these alternative materials.

B.8.3 Factors Affecting Preliminary Design

Siting and design criteria are summarized in Table B-7 below.

Table B-7. Summary of Full-Capture Trash Devices

Description	Applications/Siting	Preliminary Design Factors
Devices to capture and remove litter from the stormwater runoff. • Designed for the 1-year, 1-hour storm for treatment • Designed to handle up to the design storm event (reference HDM Chapter 830) unless placed in an offline configuration Treatment Mechanisms: • Filtration through screens Pollutants removed: • Litter and solid particles removed 5 mm nominal and larger	• Site conditions must have adequate space for device and maintenance activities • Sites located in areas requiring trash treatment • The Linear Radial Device, Trash Net, and Capture Housing requires little head to operate and is well suited for flat sections of highway • The Inclined Screen requires 66 inches of elevation drop between inlet and outlet pipe flow lines; it is well suited for fill sections • The Capture Housing device uses standard traffic rated grates and may be installed in existing roadside drainage systems. • Locate GSRDs outside the Clear Recovery Zone (HDM Topic 309.1), or consult with Traffic Operations to determine if guard railing is required • Evaluate Trash Nets for animal capture & entanglement (particularly if BMP is in critical species habitat) • Consult with Traffic Operations to determine potential issues with Capture Housing installation.	• Design using regional litter accumulation data if available, otherwise use 3 to 75 gal/acre/yr. • Devices must be sized for peak design flow (1-year, 1-hour storm event) while holding design (typically annual) gross solids load • Overflow release device is based upon the design storm event (typically the 25-year, 24-hour event) • The standard Linear Radial Device well casing is 24-inch diameter • Standard designs for the Linear Radial GSRD have been evaluated for flows up to 22 cfs. If design flows exceed 22 cfs, then consider incorporating a flow-splitter device upstream of the GSRD to divert peak flows • GSRD structure and grate do not support traffic load. • Capture Housing BMPs are traffic rated and utilize standard inlet grates. • Determine location and depth of device for maintenance access (coordinate with District Maintenance)

B.8.4 Checklist

Checklist T-1, Part 7 is provided to assist the PE in evaluating the feasibility of Full-Capture Trash Devices for a project. The checklist identifies design elements that should be considered in the design of Full-Capture Trash Devices. The checklist is provided as a tool and does not need to be attached to SWDR or submitted as part of the PID, PA/ED, or PS&E process.

Treatment BMPs
Checklist T-1, Part 7

Prepared by: ________ Date: ______________________ District-Co-Route: ___________

PM: ________________ Project ID/EA: _______ RWQCB: ___________________

Gross Solids Removal Devices (GSRDs)

Feasibility

1. Does the project site require trash treatment as documented in the WQAR? ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Are the devices sized for flows generated by the peak drainage facility design event (1-year, 1-hour) or can peak flow be diverted? ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Are the devices sized to contain gross solids (litter, debris and vegetation) for a period of one year? ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Is there sufficient access for maintenance and large equipment (vacuum truck)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If “No” to any question above, then Gross Solids Removal Devices are not feasible. Note that Bioretention, Infiltration Devices, Detention Devices, Dry Weather Flow Diversion, and Media Filters may be considered for litter capture.

5. Does adequate area exist within the RW to place Gross Solids Removal Devices? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If “Yes”, continue to Design Elements section. If “No”, continue to Question 6.

6. If adequate area does not exist within RW, can suitable, additional RW be acquired to site Gross Solids Removal Devices and how much RW would be needed? _________ acres ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If “Yes”, continue to Design Elements section. If “No”, continue to Question 7.

7. If adequate area cannot be obtained, document in Section 6 of the SWDR that the inability to obtain adequate area prevents the incorporation of this Treatment BMP into the project. ☐ Complete

Design Elements – Linear Radial Device

*** Required Design Element –** A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element –** A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Does sufficient hydraulic head exist to place the Linear Radial GSRD? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Is a fiberglass reinforced plastic frame and grate being considered for high vandalism areas? Consult District Maintenance. ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Was the litter accumulation rate of 3 to 75 gal/ac/yr. (or a different rate recommended by District Maintenance) used to size the device? ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Was the overflow release device sized for the design storm event?* ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Were the standard detail sheets used for the layout of the devices? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If No, consult with OHSD and District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.
6. Is the maximum depth of the storage within 10 ft of the ground surface, or another depth as required by District Maintenance? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

Design Elements – Inclined Screen

*** Required Design Element –** A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element –** A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Does sufficient hydraulic head exist to place the Inclined Screen GSRD? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Was the litter accumulation rate of 3 to 75 gal/ac/yr. (or a different rate recommended by District Maintenance) used to size the device? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Is a fiberglass reinforced plastic frame and grate being considered for high vandalism areas? Consult District Maintenance. ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Was the overflow release device sized for the design storm event?* ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Were the standard details sheets used for the layout of the devices? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If No, consult with OHSD and District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.
6. Is the maximum depth of the storage within 10 ft of the ground surface, or another depth as required by District Maintenance? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

Design Elements – Trash Nets

*** Required Design Element** – A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element** – A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Does sufficient hydraulic head exist to place the Trash Net? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Was the litter accumulation rate of 3 to 75 gal/ac/yr (or a different rate recommended by District Maintenance) used to size the device? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Can the Trash Net be placed outside Waters of the US or State? * ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If No, consult the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to determine whether BMP is allowed or can be maintained.
4. Was the overflow release device sized for the design storm event?* ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Were the standard details sheets used for the layout of the devices? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If No, consult with OHSD and District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.
6. Has a transition channel been provided for flows >5 ft/s?** ☐ Yes ☐ No
7. Has energy dissipation been provided for flows >15 ft/s if appropriate?** ☐ Yes ☐ No

Design Elements – Capture Housing BMPs

*** Required Design Element** – A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element** – A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Is the Design Storm hydraulic grade line at least 9" from the top of grate for the Capture Housing and all other inlets contributing for Capture Housing-2? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Was the litter accumulation rate of 3 to 75 gal/ac/yr (or a different rate recommended by District Maintenance) used to size the device? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Were the standard details sheets used for the layout of the devices? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If No, consult with OHSD and District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.
4. Is the maximum depth of the storage within 10 ft of the ground surface, or another depth as required by District Maintenance? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Has the inlet flow for a Capture Housing-2 Single Inlet Bypass been treated by an upstream trash BMP* ☐ Yes ☐ No
6. Has an upstream splitter box been provided for Capture Housing-2 Double Inlet Bypass BMP?* ☐ Yes ☐ No

B.9 Media Filters

A Media Filter Treatment BMP device primarily removes TSS pollutants (sediments and metals) from runoff by sedimentation and filtering, and is effective for dissolved metals, litter and potentially some nutrients (depending upon type of Media Filter selected).

The following sections give a brief overview of media filters and a summary of design criteria. The PE shall refer to *Caltrans Austin Sand Filter – Earthen Type Design Guidance*, *Caltrans Partial Sedimentation Austin Vault Sand Filters Design Guidance*, and *Caltrans Delaware Sand Filters Design Guidance* for complete guidance on design criteria, site evaluation, and preliminary and final design.

Media Filters may be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems when a project has both post construction and trash treatment requirements. Refer to Caltrans Multi Benefit Treatment BMP Trash Full Capture Requirements Design Guidance for complete guidance on meeting certification requirements.

B.9.1 Description

There are two types of approved Media Filter devices: The Austin Sand Filter and the Delaware Sand Filter; each is configured using two chambers. An Austin Sand Filter is usually open and at grade and has no permanent water pool; a Delaware Sand Filter is always configured with closed chambers and below grade and has a permanent pool of water. An Austin Sand Filter may be configured with earthen or concrete sides and invert; a Delaware Sand Filter is always made using concrete sides and invert.

In both types of Media Filters, stormwater is directed into the first chamber where the larger sediments and particulates settle out, and the partially treated effluent is metered into the second chamber to be filtered through a media. In the Austin Sand Filter, the first chamber may be sized for the entire WQV (‘full sedimentation’) (see Figure B-17) or as a ‘partial sedimentation’ chamber, holding only about 20 percent of the WQV (see Figure B-18); the Delaware Sand Filter holds the entire WQV in the initial chamber, and is designed to pass the WQV from the second chamber (see Figure B-19).

The treated effluent (filtered water) is captured by perforated underdrains (collector pipes) for release downstream. There is a drop in elevation of 3 ft to 6 ft between the invert of the inlet pipe and the invert of the device outflow pipe depending on device type, size, and configuration. Some alternative configurations may support as little as 2 ft of head and must be done in consultation with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

The filter media typically consists of clean sand, which is effective for removal of coarse and fine sediments and particulate metals. Other materials[1], such as topsoil or inorganic/organic materials may be added to the sand to increase the treatment capacity for some pollutants (for example, dissolved metals) but these additives often increase the nitrogen and phosphorus concentration levels in the effluent. Any variation to the media used in the design of a Media Filter must be

[1] The use of alternative media such as activated alumina was tentatively approved in June 2017. Alternative media may be used if requested by the PE and District/Regional NPDES Coordinator.

coordinated through DEA – Policy, Planning and Permitting, and OHSD. When media filters are used to encourage infiltration or subsurface storage and mimic natural hydrology within small applications, then the media filters may be considered a LID technique. For this application, the Austin Vault Sand Filter – Partial Sedimentation (Earthen Type) is used.

Figure B-16. Caltrans Pilot Media Filters (Austin Sand Filter [left], Delaware Sand Filter [right])

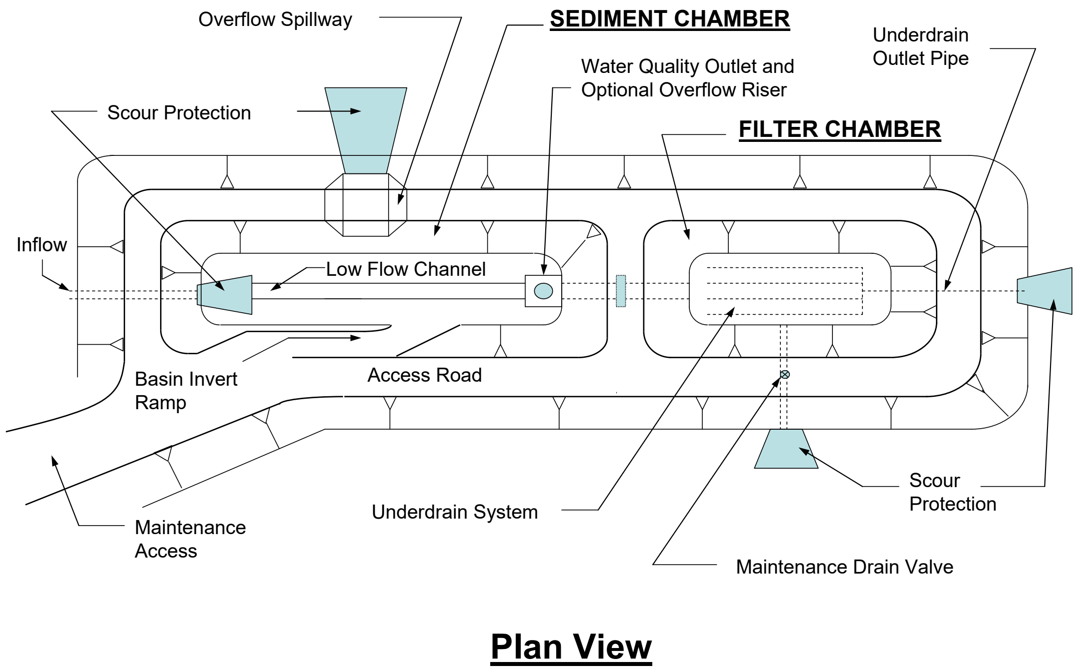
B.9.2 Appropriate Applications and Siting Criteria

Media Filters will perform better if the contributing drainage area has a relatively high percentage of impervious area, and low sediment loading.

Sites proposed for Media Filters must have sufficient hydraulic head to operate by gravity; generally, between 3 to 6 ft of elevation drop is needed between the inflow to the initial chamber and effluent outflow from the second chamber.

Standard details for a vector-proof Delaware Sand Filter have been developed when vector control is an issue.

For earthen-type Media Filters, at least 5 ft separation from seasonally high groundwater should be provided. For vault-type Media Filters, the level of the concrete base of the vault must be above seasonally high groundwater unless by special design.



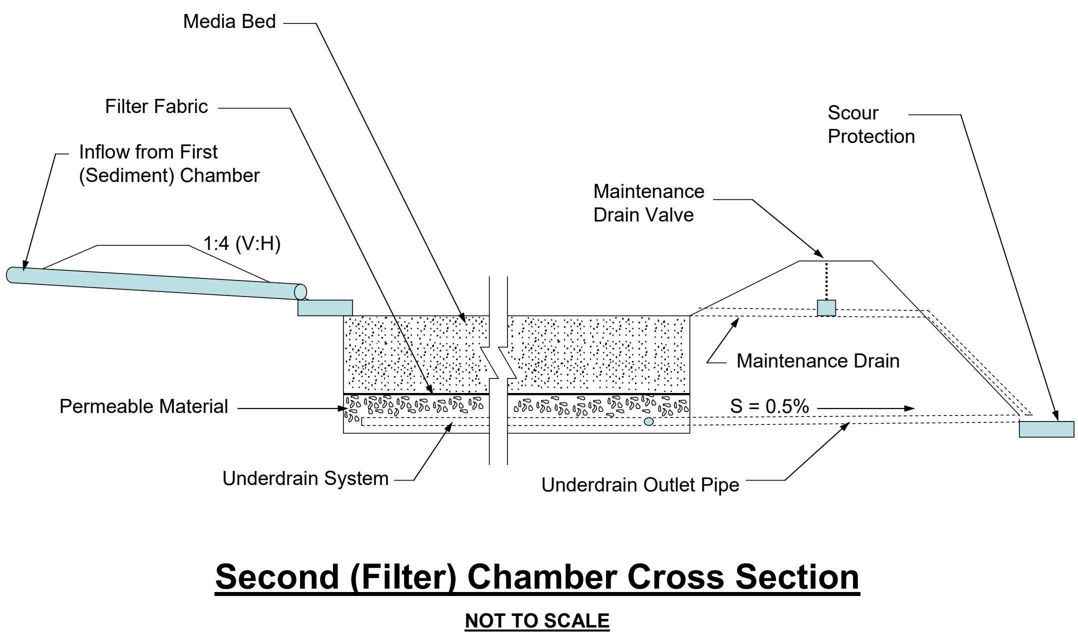
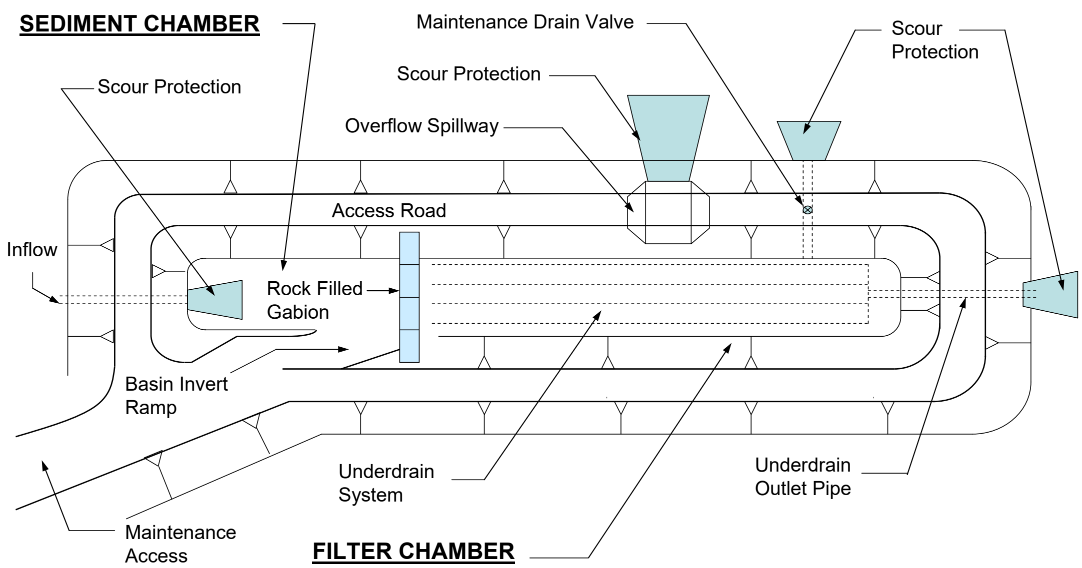
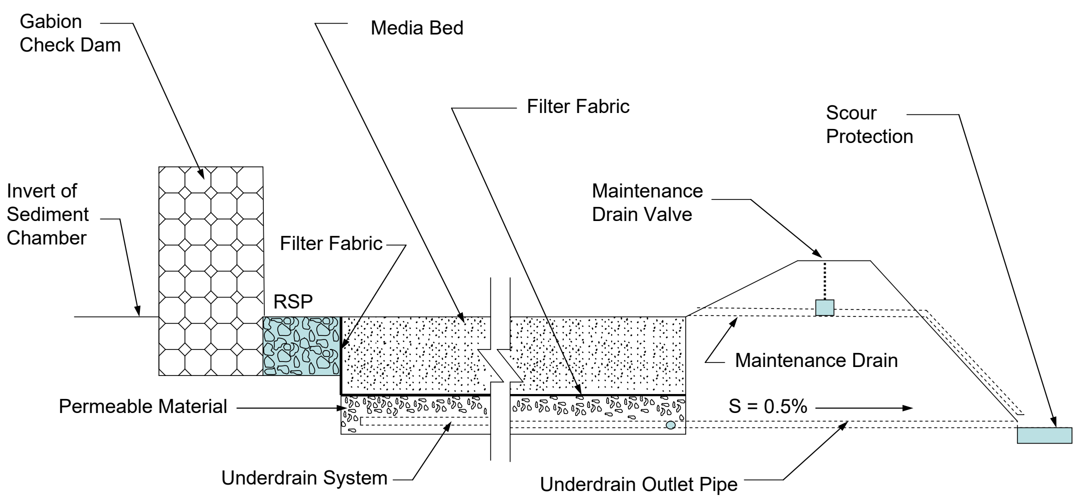


Figure B-17. Schematic of an Austin Sand Filter – Full Sedimentation (Earthen Type)



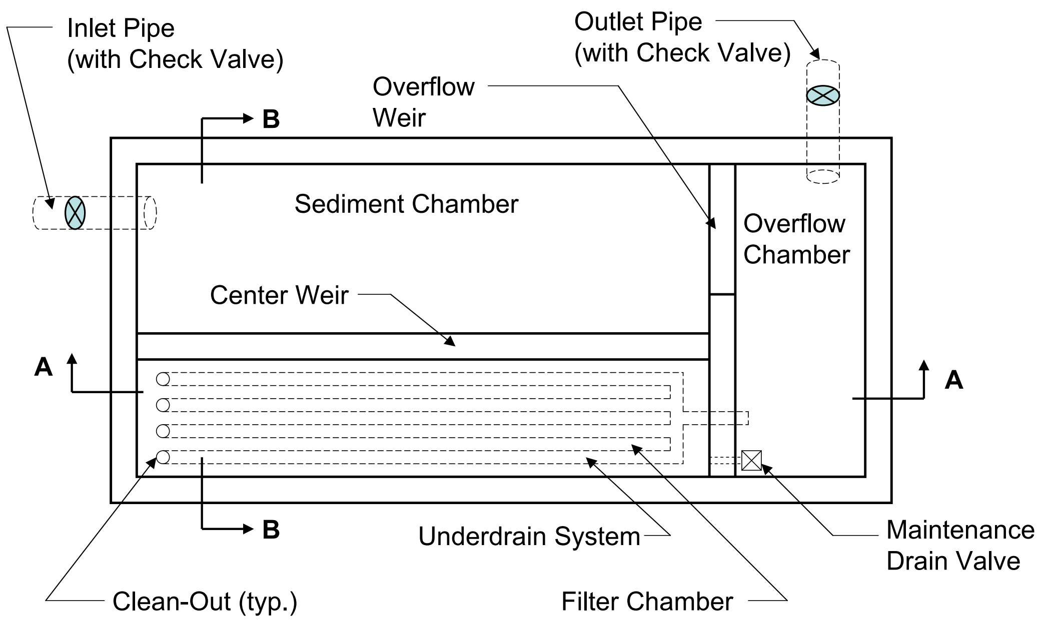
Plan View



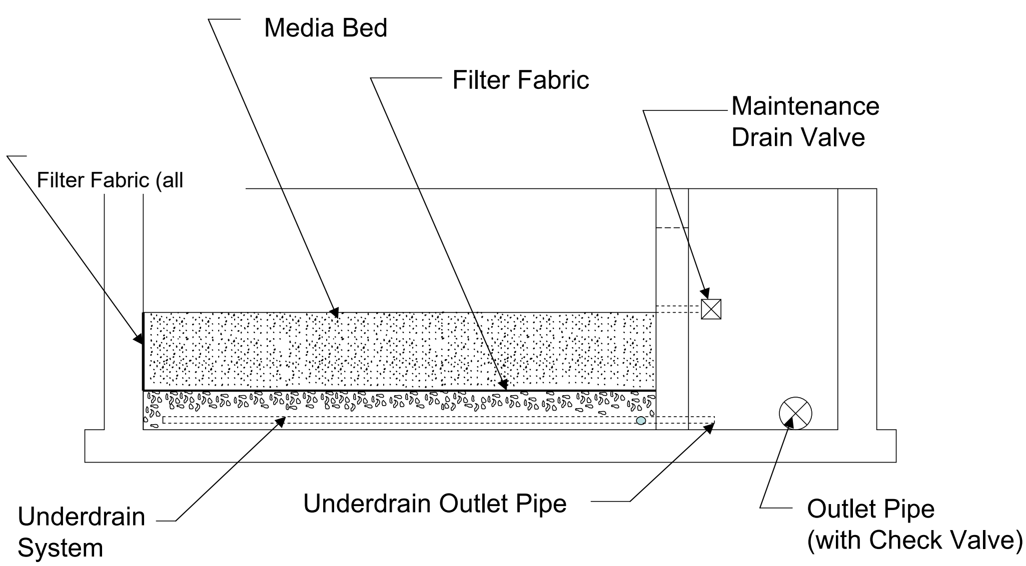
Second (Filter) Chamber Cross Section

NOT TO SCALE

Figure B-18. Schematic of an Austin Sand Filter – Partial Sedimentation (Earthen Type)



Plan View



Section A-A

Figure B-19. Schematic of a Delaware Sand Filter

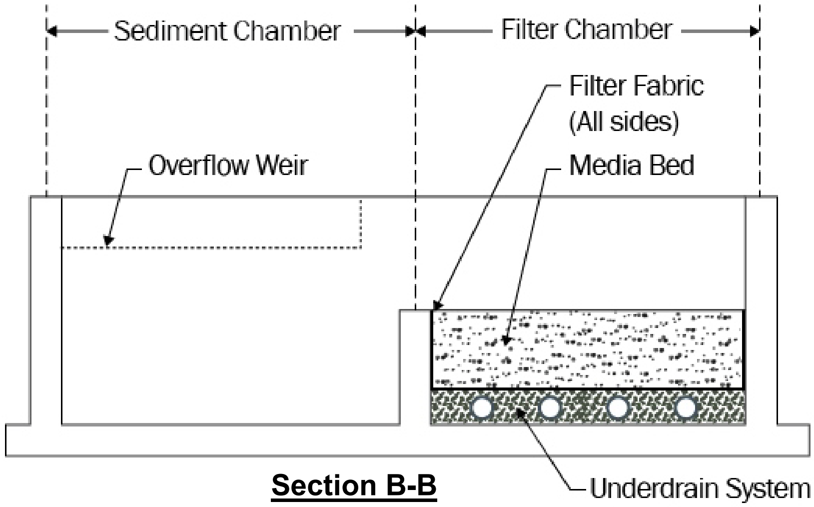


Figure B-20. Schematic of a Delaware Sand Filter (Continued).

B.9.3 Factors Affecting Preliminary Design

Siting and design criteria are summarized in Table B-8 below.

Table B-8. Summary of Media Device Siting and Design Criteria [1]

Description	Applications/Siting	Preliminary Design Factors
Two-chambered treatment devices designed to treat the WQV. May be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment System Treatment Mechanisms • Sedimentation • Filtration Pollutants removed • Suspended solids • Particulate metals • Dissolved metals • Litter (although preferred capture is upstream of the device) • Nutrients (depending on type of Media Filter selected)	• Site must have sufficient hydraulic head to operate by gravity between inflow to the initial chamber and effluent outflow from the second chamber, about 3.0 to 6.0 ft • Delaware Media Filters should avoid locations where there are concerns about vectors because they maintain a permanent pool of water unless concurrence for its use can be obtained from the local vector control agency or use check valves and vector proof lid as shown on standard detail sheets • For earthen-type Media Filters, at least 5 ft separation from seasonally high groundwater should be provided, or less as justified by adequate groundwater information or RWQCB concurrence. For vault-type Media Filters, the level of the concrete base of the vault must be above seasonally high groundwater unless by special design • Will perform better if the contributing drainage area has a relatively high percentage of impervious area, and low sediment loading • Maintenance must have access to both chambers • Locate outside the Clear Recovery Zone (HDM Topic 309.1), or design to be traversable, or consult with Traffic Operations to determine if guard railing is required	• Media Filters meeting the design criteria above and located in areas requiring trash treatment may be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems. • Maximum depth: 13 feet below ground surface; verify with District Maintenance • Upstream bypass for larger storms is preferred otherwise bypass storms > WQV through the device, typically using weirs from the initial chamber • Provide, if possible, pretreatment to capture sediment in the runoff (such as with vegetation, flow splitter with sump, forebay, etc.) • Collector & lateral pipes: minimum 6-inch diameter • Filter materials: refer to specifications listed on the OHSD Treatment BMPs design guidance website • Austin, full sedimentation design: design the initial chamber to hold the entire WQV and use a 24-hour release time if site constraints allow, release to the second chamber using a perforated riser, and a length to width ratio of 2:1 should be provided for the sedimentation chamber [2] • For partial sedimentation designs, the initial chamber should be sized to hold ≥ 20 percent WQV. The filtration chamber should hold the remaining volume, which includes volume of the filtration chamber above the media to the flow line of the outfall pipe plus 35 percent of the total volume of the filtration chamber media (available storage volume of filtration chamber media is based upon 35 percent porosity of filter rock); provide a rock-filled gabion wall separating the chambers [2] • Design drain time for Austin Sand Filter is 24 hours. While the Delaware Sand Filter is between 40 to 48-hrs [2] • Austin Sand Filter: no permanent vegetation is desired in the second chamber [2] • Austin Sand Filter with earthen base and sides, full or partial: side slopes should be 3:1 (h:v) or flatter, and should be stabilized by vegetation. Consult the District Landscape Architect for types of vegetation that can function effectively

[1] *Applicable to both Austin Sand Filter and Delaware Filter unless noted.*

[2] *Variations to certain Design Criteria are being considered and will be included in the Design Guidance for each type of media filter.*

B.9.4 Checklist

Checklist T-1, Part 8 is provided to assist the PE in evaluating the feasibility of media filters for a project, and the checklist identifies design elements that should be considered in the design of media filters. The checklist is provided as a tool and does not need to be attached to SWDR or submitted as part of the PID, PA/ED, or PS&E process.

Treatment BMPs Checklist T-1, Part 8		
Prepared by: ________	Date: ______________________	District-Co-Route: ___________
PM: ________________	Project ID/EA: _______	RWQCB: ___________________

Media Filters

Caltrans has approved two types of Media Filters: Austin Sand Filter and Delaware Filter. An Austin Sand filter is typically designed for a larger contributing drainage area, while a Delaware Filter is typically designed for a smaller contributing drainage area. The Austin Sand Filter is constructed with an open top and may have a concrete or earthen invert, while the Delaware is always constructed as a vault.

<u>Feasibility – Austin Sand Filter</u>

1. Is the volume of the Austin Sand Filter equal to the WQV, or portion thereof, using a 24-hour drawdown? [1] ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Is there sufficient hydraulic head to operate the device (minimum 2 ft between the inflow and outflow chambers)? ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. If device has an earthen bottom, is the invert ≥ 5 ft above seasonally high groundwater? ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. If a vault is used for either chamber, is the level of the concrete base of the vault above seasonally high groundwater or is a special design provided? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If No to any question above, then an Austin Sand Filter is not feasible.
5. Does adequate area exist within the RW to place an Austin Sand Filter? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, continue to Design Elements sections. If No, continue to Question 6.
6. If adequate area does not exist within RW, can suitable, additional RW be acquired to site the device and how much RW would be needed to treat WQV, or portion thereof? _________ acres ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, continue to the Design Elements section.

   If No, continue to Question 7.
7. If adequate area cannot be obtained, document in Section 6 of the SWDR that the inability to obtain adequate area prevents the incorporation of this Treatment BMP into the project. ☐ Complete

   If an Austin Sand Filter meets these feasibility requirements, continue to the Design Elements – Austin Sand Filter below.

[1] Longer drawdown times being considered. Refer to the Austin Media Filter Design Guidance.

Feasibility- Delaware Filter

1. Is the volume of the Delaware Filter equal to the WQV, or portion thereof, using a 40 to 48-hour drawdown? [1] ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Is there sufficient hydraulic head to operate the device (minimum 2 ft between the inflow and outflow chambers)? ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Would a permanent pool of water be allowed by the local vector control agency? Confirm that check valves and vector proof lid as shown on standard detail sheets will be allowed and used. ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Does the project discharge to a water body that has been placed on the 303(d) or has had a TMDL adopted for bacteria, mercury, sulfides, or low dissolved oxygen? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, contact the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to determine if standing water in this Treatment BMP would be a risk to downstream water quality. If standing water is a potential issue, consider use of another Treatment BMP.

   If No to any question, then a Delaware Filter is not feasible
5. Does adequate area exist within the RW to place a Delaware Filter? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, continue to Design Elements section. If No, continue to Question 6.
6. If adequate area does not exist within RW, can suitable, additional RW be acquired to site the device and how much RW would be needed to treat WQV, or portion thereof? __________ acres ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, continue to the Design Elements section. If No, continue to Question 7.
7. If adequate area cannot be obtained, document in Section 6 of the SWDR that the inability to obtain adequate area prevents the incorporation of this Treatment BMP into the project. ☐ Complete

[1] Longer drawdown times being considered. Refer to the Delaware Media Filter Design Guidance.

Design Elements – Austin Sand Filter

*** Required Design Element –** A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element –** A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Is the drawdown time of the device 24 hours? (Longer drawdown times being considered, refer to the Austin Media Filter Design Guidance)* ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Is access for maintenance vehicles provided to the Austin Sand Filter? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Is a bypass/overflow provided for storms > WQV? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Is the flow path length to width ratio for the sedimentation chamber of the "full" Austin Sand Filter ≥ 2:1? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Can pretreatment be provided to capture sediment and litter in the runoff (such as using vegetation)? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
6. Can the Austin Sand Filter be placed using an earthen configuration? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If No, go to Question 10.
7. Is the Austin Sand Filter invert separated from the seasonally high groundwater table by ≥ 5 ft)? * (If AVSF, see Table B-8 3rd bullet in Application/Siting column.) ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If No, design with an impermeable liner.
8. Are side slopes of the earthen chamber 3:1 (h:v) or flatter? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
9. Can vegetation be established at the invert and on the side slopes for erosion control and to minimize re-suspension? If No, include rock or similar protective system. Note: Austin Sand Filters may be lined, in which case no vegetation would be required for lined areas.* ☐ Yes ☐ No
10. Is maximum depth of sedimentation chamber ≤ 13 ft below ground surface? * If greater than 13 feet, a special design is required. ☐ Yes ☐ No
11. Can the Austin Sand Filter be placed in an offline configuration? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If No, go to Question 12.
12. Is the flow line elevation of the overflow pipe set at the same elevation as the top of gabion wall elevation? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No

    Typically, the flow line should match the top of gabion wall elevation. However, the pipe may require adjustment to fit site condition requirements such as grading and pipe cover conflicts and utility conflicts. Additional overflow designs may be considered (see the Partial Sedimentation Austin Vault Sand Filter Design Guidance).
13. Does the CDA for the device have trash treatment requirements?** ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If Yes, design and certify as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment (*See Caltrans Multi Benefit Treatment BMP Trash Full Capture Requirements Design Guidance*).

Design Elements – Delaware Filter

*** Required Design Element –** A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element –** A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Is the drawdown time of the device between 40 and 48 hours, typically 40-hrs? (Longer drawdown times being considered, refer to the Delaware Media Filter Design Guidance) * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Is access for maintenance vehicles provided to the Delaware Filter? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Is a bypass/overflow provided for storms > WQV? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Can pretreatment be provided to capture sediment and litter in the runoff (such as using vegetation)? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Is maximum depth of sedimentation chamber ≤ 13 ft below ground surface? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
6. Does the CDA for the device have trash treatment requirements?** ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, design and certify as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment *(See Caltrans Multi Benefit Treatment BMP Trash Full Capture Requirements Design Guidance*).

B.10 Multi-Chamber Treatment Train (MCTT)

This device is rarely used and is not recommended, except in unique circumstances, such as non-highway facilities (parking lots, maintenance stations, etc.). Design information will continue to be supported on the OHSD website. Refer to B.1.8 Caltrans Treatment BMP Website for information available. Use Checklist T-1, Part 9 in the *Caltrans MCTT Design Guidance* when considering an MCTT. If this device is being considered, incorporate into the SWDR.

A MCTT device primarily removes TSS pollutants (sediments and metals) from runoff by sedimentation and filtering and may also be effective for some dissolved metals and litter. The MCTT was developed for treatment of stormwater at critical source areas such as vehicle service facilities, parking areas, paved storage areas, and fueling stations.

B.11 Wet Basin

This device is rarely used and is not recommended, except in unique circumstances. Design information will continue to be supported on the OHSD website. Refer to B.1.8 Caltrans Treatment BMP Website for information available. Use Checklist T-1, Part 10 in the *Caltrans Wet Basin Design Guidance* when considering a Wet Basin. If this device is being considered, incorporate into the SWDR.

Wet Basins are detention systems comprised of a permanent pool of water, a temporary storage volume above the permanent pool, and a shoreline zone planted with aquatic vegetation. Wet Basins are designed to remove pollutants from surface discharges by temporarily capturing and detaining the WQV, or portion thereof, to allow settling and biological uptake to occur. Wet Basins are recommended for the following pollutants: TSS; nutrients; particulate metals; pathogens; litter; and temperature.

B.12 Pervious Pavement

While pervious pavement has become very popular in stormwater management, the applicability to the highway environment is still unclear. The treatment mechanism is infiltration. Pervious pavement is better suited for non-highway applications such as: landscaped areas, sidewalks, bike paths, miscellaneous pavement to accept run-on from adjacent impervious areas (e.g., roofs), parking lots, park-and-ride areas, maintenance access roads, rest areas, and maintenance stations. The only highway application accepted at this time is for a maintenance vehicle pullout. With pervious pavement, runoff infiltrates through the pavement and underlying soil in a manner similar to the infiltration devices described in Section B.3. Until more information is determined related to safety, maintainability, constructability, and improved water quality benefit over other approved BMPs, the inclusion of pervious pavement into Caltrans projects needs to be coordinated with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

Projects may consider pervious concrete pavement, pervious asphalt pavement, and permeable interlocking concrete pavement. There are limited locations where pervious pavement may be used. Refer to *Caltrans Pervious Pavement Design Guidance*:

http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/oppd/stormwtr/bmps.htm

B.13 Open Graded Friction Course

Open Graded Friction Course (OGFC) has been used as an effective paving material for the reduction of noise and to reduce the spray from rainfall on the highway surface for better visibility during rain events. Studies from other transportation agencies have shown significant reduction in pollutants from open graded paved highways compared to traditional highway pavements (ASCE 2012). The pollutant load reduction from open graded lanes in comparison to traditional highway runoff characterization for pollutants, would suggest that open graded pavements are as effective at pollutant removal as many of the Caltrans approved Treatment BMPs. Caltrans already uses open graded AC for noise and spray reduction, so using for the dual purpose of water quality improvement is a sustainable way to provide pollutant removal and treatment of storm water runoff.

B.13.1 Description

An OGFC is a sacrificial wearing course consisting of an aggregate with relatively uniform grading and little or no fine aggregate and mineral filler. It is designed to have a large number of void spaces in the compacted mix.

OGFC would be considered a flow-through treatment device as it would not infiltrate stormwater, though some stormwater would be captured in the OGFC voids. For this reason, designers should first use the Caltrans PPDG T-1, Part 1 checklist for the selection of appropriate BMPs. OGFC can provide treatment of the highway runoff and meet the NPDES permit requirements for maximum extent practicable.

Where roadway project conditions would benefit from the use on OGFC as described in “Open Graded Friction Course Usage Guide”, February 8, 2006, credit for stormwater treatment should be calculated and claimed.

The Open Graded Friction Course Usage Guide is available at:

http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/esc/Translab/ormt/pdf/FrictionCourseGuide.pdf

For additional details on design, see the *Caltrans Open Graded Friction Course Treatment BMP Design Guidance* on the OHSD website.

B.13.2 Appropriate Applications and Siting Criteria

Appropriate locations for OGFC are as described in the Caltrans Open Graded Friction Course Usage Guide, February 2006 and where:

- Lower elevation highways where traction sand is not applied and freezing temperatures are rare;
- Highway sections that do not receive runoff from cut sections;
- Highway sections that do not receive offsite sediment laden stormwater flows; and
- Drainage areas that are entirely made up of impervious surfaces.

OGFC should not be used as a Treatment BMP if there is a conflict with the Caltrans Open Graded Friction Course Usage Guide.

OGFC pollutant removal treatment mechanism is filtration through the void space of the OGFC layer and reduction of water splashing on the vehicle undercarriage. A portion of the calculated treatment can be attributed to the reduction of water splashed up from the pavement and to the under body of vehicles. The treatment area generated by the BMP is the total area of the OGFC.

Porous pavement overlays are an existing Caltrans practice. No additional maintenance requirements beyond what is described in the Caltrans Open Graded Friction Course Usage Guide are anticipated.

B.13.3 Factors Affecting Preliminary Design

Siting and design criteria are summarized in Table B-9 below.

Table B-9. Summary of OGFC Siting and Design Criteria

Description	Applications/Siting	Preliminary Design Factors
Open graded pavement used as a sacrificial wearing course to reduce noise and spray Treatment Mechanisms • Filtration through pavement voids Pollutants removed • Suspended solids • Particulate metals • Phosphorus • Turbidity • Temperature • Mercury	• Lower elevations where traction sand is not applied and freezing temperatures are rare, usually below 3,000 ft elevation • Highway does not receive flow from cut sections • Highway does not receive offsite sediment laden flows. • Contributing drainage areas that are entirely impervious • Any paved area described in Caltrans Open Graded Friction Course Usage Guide • When crumb rubber not added to OGFC layer • When Infiltration BMPs are not feasible • Highways with greater than 50 mph speed limit.	• Follow Caltrans guidance for OGFC • Treatment area claimed is area of OGFC

B.13.4 Checklist

Checklist T-1, Part 12 is provided to assist the PE in evaluating the feasibility of OGFC for a project. The checklist identifies design elements that should be considered in the design of OGFC. The checklist is provided as a tool and does not need to be attached to SWDR or submitted as part of the PID, PA/ED, or PS&E process.

Treatment BMPs
Checklist T-1, Part 12

Prepared by: ________ Date: ______________________ District-Co-Route: ___________

PM: ________________ Project ID/EA: _______ RWQCB: ___________________________

Open Graded Friction Course (OGFC)

Feasibility

1. Is OGFC being installed on the project in accordance with current Caltrans usage? ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Have other treatment BMPs been evaluated and found to be infeasible? ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Is location below 3,000 ft elevation and freezing temperature rare? ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Does traveled way not receive flow from cut sections? ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Is the drainage area made up entirely of impervious surfaces? ☐ Yes ☐ No
6. Is the highway free from offsite sediment laden flows? ☐ Yes ☐ No
7. Is highway speed limit above 50 mph? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "No" to any question above, then Open Graded Friction Course is not feasible.

8. If BMP is infeasible document in Section 6 of the SWDR that the site conditions prevent the incorporation of this Treatment BMP into the project. ☐ Complete

Design Elements – OGFC

*** Required Design Element** – A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element** – A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. Is OGFC deployed in accordance with current Caltrans OGFC usage guidance? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Is OGFC being deployed with the modified gradation (RHMA-O-MG) crumb rubber in the OGFC layer?* ☐ Yes ☐ No

B.14 Bioretention

Bioretention Treatment BMPs are an LID technique, utilizing vegetation and soil or engineered media to promote stormwater treatment through filtration. This BMP may be excavated, bermed, or constructed with concrete curbs to contain runoff. Bioretention creates vegetated surface water systems that promote stormwater treatment and attenuation (approximately 2 yr. event) through infiltration or filtration, storage, sedimentation, adsorption to soil particles, biological processes, and plant uptake of target pollutants. Bioretention can include facilities with an underdrain (and sometimes a liner) or without an underdrain. Facilities with an underdrain filter water prior to discharge via the underdrain to the downstream conveyance system. Facilities without an underdrain are designed to infiltrate the full WQV into native soils.

The following sections give a brief overview of Bioretention Treatment BMPs and a summary of design criteria. The PE shall refer to *Bioretention Treatment Best Management Practice Design Guide* for complete guidance on design criteria, site evaluation, and preliminary and final design.

Bioretention Treatment BMPs may be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems when a project has both post construction and trash treatment requirements. Refer to Caltrans Multi Benefit Treatment BMP Trash Full Capture Requirements Design Guidance for complete guidance on meeting certification requirements.

B.14.1 Description

Bioretention Treatment BMPs are part of the highway drainage system and can be designed to attenuate peak flows and infiltrate the water quality volume. The amount of volume reduction and flow attenuation varies with drainage design. Bioretention Treatment BMPs commonly have the following three components:

1. A temporary volume of pooled or flowing stormwater runoff.
2. A layer of biologically active soil media and vegetation appropriate for the location, usually grasses and perennials.
3. A sub-surface retention layer to temporarily detain stormwater runoff within gravel or other high void space material.

Bioretention TBMPs are categorized as two types:

- The infiltration type is designed to remove pollutants from surface discharges by capturing and retaining the WQV, or a portion thereof, and infiltrating it directly into the underlying soil.
- The flow-through type is designed to remove pollutants by filtering the WQF through the soil media and retention layers before discharging to surface waters. This type includes a perforated drain to collect the treated effluent from the subsurface layer. The flow-through type may or may not have a liner.

Variations in designs appropriate for specific site conditions may be required. A schematic of a Bioretention Treatment BMP is shown in Figure B-21.

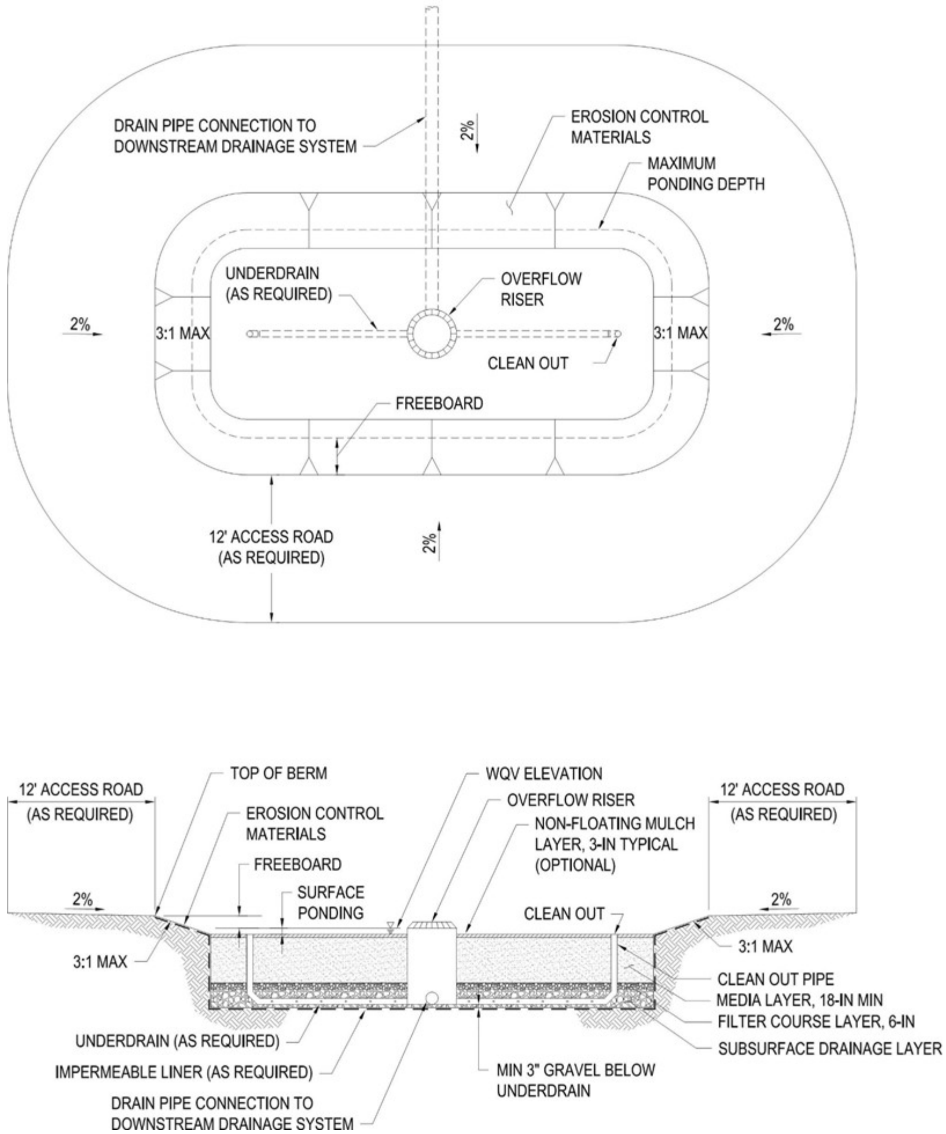


Figure B-21. Schematic of Bioretention Treatment BMP

B.14.2 Appropriate Applications, Siting, and Design Criteria

Bioretention Treatment BMPs should be considered for implementation in areas that receive flow from impervious surfaces. Bioretention Treatment BMPs meet the NPDES permit prioritization for treatment using soil based LID BMPs and infiltration of the WQV event when siting conditions allow. Other variations of Bioretention Treatment BMPs can be used but may be less effective when infiltration does not occur. Liners should be used when siting BMPs where infiltration may cause stability issues or where infiltration may cause negative groundwater effects.

Bioretention Treatment BMPs should be sized to meet the Caltrans NPDES permit requirements in Section C3.10.7), Best Management Practices Design and *Numeric Sizing Criteria*.

B.14.3 Factors Affecting Preliminary Design

Siting and design criteria are summarized in Table B-10 below.

Table B-10. Summary of Bioretention Siting and Design Criteria

Description	Applications/Siting	Preliminary Design Factors
Treatment devices designed to treat the WQV. May be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment System Treatment Mechanisms • Filtration through the vegetation • Sedimentation • Adsorption to soil particles • Infiltration Pollutants removed • Suspended solids • Particulate metals • Dissolved metals • Litter • Nutrients	• Site must have sufficient hydraulic head to operate by gravity between the inflow and the outflow without objectionable backwater in the drainage system. • Protection of groundwater must be considered in design of Treatment BMPs. Coordinate with District/Regional NPDES Coordinator and RWQCB to identify groundwater protection areas and when high infiltration rates and high groundwater depths are present. • Separation from seasonally high water table > 5 ft., or less as justified by adequate groundwater information or RWQCB concurrence. • Bioretention device will have improved performance when its contributing drainage area has a relatively high percentage of impervious area and low sediment loading. • Locate the Bioretention device outside of the Clear Recovery Zone (*HDM* Topic 309.1) or consult with Traffic Operations for appropriate siting conditions. • May be sited as separation or buffer between bicycle or pedestrian facilities and the vehicular travel way (with Traffic Operations approval and safety measures). • Geotechnical soils investigations, such as percolation and slope stability tests, should be requested to aid in siting. • Steep slopes should be avoided unless approved by Geotechnical Design Unit. • Siting above highway fills and structures should be avoided unless Geotechnical Design Unit approval is obtained and appropriate drainage is included.	• Bioretention meeting the design criteria above and located in areas requiring trash treatment may be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems. • Drainage inlets and outlets, including bypass, must be designed in accordance with hydrology and hydraulics sections of the *HDM* using appropriate flood conveyance design criteria. • Bypass of flows more than the WQV is preferred to prevent scour of soil media and pollutants. Flow-through devices may also be designed. • Scour and erosion control must follow *HDM* Sections 860 and 870 criteria. • Pretreatment facilities to capture sediment in the runoff (such as with vegetation, a flow splitter with sump, forebay, etc.) are recommended. • Infiltrate WQV, or portion thereof within a maximum of 96 hours. Longer drawdown times may be allowable if vector controls meeting CDPH requirements have been implemented (e.g., underground, flap gates). When considering longer drawdown times, coordinate with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator. • Use appropriate vegetation for the site conditions (native vegetation preferred). Temporary irrigation may be needed. Consult District Landscape Architect. • Side slopes should be appropriate for soils and site conditions to prevent erosion and stability issues. • Safety of maintenance workers and maintainability of bioretention facility, as well as its buildability must all be considered. Provide maintenance access to the basin invert. Consult District Maintenance and Construction. • Bioretention BMPs can be sized for the WQV similar to Media Filters, by using continuous simulation routing, or by other appropriate civil engineering methodologies.

B.14.4 Checklist

Checklist T-1, Part 13 is provided to assist the PE in evaluating the feasibility of Bioretention for a project, and the checklist identifies design elements that should be considered in the design of Bioretention Treatment BMPs. The checklist is provided as a tool and does not need to be attached to SWDR or submitted as part of the PID, PA/ED, or PS&E process.

Treatment BMPs
Checklist T-1, Part 13

Prepared by: _______	Date: ____________________	District-Co-Route: _________
PM: _______________	Project ID/EA: ____________	RWQCB: ________________

Bioretention

Feasibility

1. Does local Basin Plan or other local ordinance provide influent limits on quality of water that can be infiltrated, and would infiltration pose a threat to groundwater quality? ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Does infiltration at the site compromise the integrity of any slopes in the area? ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Is site located over a previously identified contaminated groundwater plume? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes" to any question above, Bioretention TBMP must be lined to prevent infiltration.
4. At the invert, does the soil type classify as NRCS Hydrologic Soil Group (HSG) D, or does the soil have an infiltration rate < 0.5 inches/hr? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes", the location can only be considered if vector control has been addressed (e.g., underground).
5. (a). Does site have groundwater within 5 ft of basin invert? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   (b). Does site investigation indicate that the infiltration rate is significantly greater than 2.5 inches/hr? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes" to either part of Question 5, adequate groundwater information must be available or contact RWQCB for concurrence before approving the site for infiltration.
6. Does adequate area exist within the RW to place Bioretention? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If "Yes", continue to Design Elements sections. If "No", continue to Question 7.
7. If adequate area does not exist within RW, can suitable, additional RW be acquired to site Bioretention and how much RW would be needed to treat WQV, or a portion thereof? _________ acres ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, continue to Design Elements section.

   If No, continue to Question 8.
8. If adequate area cannot be obtained, document in Section 6 of the SWDR that the inability to obtain adequate area prevents the incorporation of this Treatment BMP into the project. ☐ Complete

Design Elements – Bioretention

*** Required Design Element –** A "Yes" response to these questions is required to further the consideration of this BMP into the project design. Document a "No" response in Section 6 of the SWDR to describe why this Treatment BMP cannot be included into the project design.

**** Recommended Design Element –** A "Yes" response is preferred for these questions, but not required for incorporation into a project design.

1. For unlined basins, has an investigation been conducted, including subsurface soil investigation, in-hole conductivity testing and groundwater elevation determination? (This report must be completed for PS&E level design.) * ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. Has an upstream bypass or overflow spillway with scour protection been provided? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. Is the Bioretention size sufficient to capture the WQV, or portion thereof, with a maximum 96-hour drawdown time? Longer drawdown times may be allowable if vector controls have been implemented (e.g., underground chamber with flap gates) and coordinated with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.* ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Can access be provided to the invert of the Bioretention? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Can the Bioretention accommodate the freeboard above the overflow event elevation (reference Appendix B.1.6.1)? * ☐ Yes ☐ No
6. Can the Bioretention be designed with interior side slopes no steeper than 3:1 (h:v)* ☐ Yes ☐ No
7. Can vegetation be established in the basin at the invert and on the side slopes for erosion control and to minimize re-suspension? If No, consider rock or similar protective system.* ☐ Yes ☐ No
8. Can diversion be designed, constructed, and maintained to bypass flows exceeding the WQV? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
9. Is the media layer at least 18 in deep with a subsurface drainage layer at least 12 inches deep? ** ☐ Yes ☐ No
10. If an underdrain is installed, is the pipe 3 to 6 inches above the bottom of the subsurface drainage layer?** (This may vary depending on pollutant of concern for receiving water and site conditions.) ☐ Yes ☐ No
11. Does the CDA for the device have trash treatment requirements?** ☐ Yes ☐ No

    If Yes, design and certify as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment (*See Caltrans Multi Benefit Treatment BMP Trash Full Capture Requirements Design Guidance*).

APPENDIX C: CONSTRUCTION SITE BMPS AND CHECKLISTS

C.1 Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs)

Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) are applied during construction activities to reduce the pollutants in stormwater discharges throughout construction. These Construction Site BMPs provide both temporary erosion and sediment control, as well as control for potential pollutants other than sediment. There are six categories of BMPs suitable for controlling potential pollutants on construction sites. They are:

- Soil Stabilization Practices;
- Sediment Control Practices;
- Tracking Control Practices;
- Wind Erosion Control;
- Non-Stormwater Controls; and
- Waste Management and Material Pollution Controls.

To meet regulatory requirements and protect the site resources, every project must include an effective combination of Construction Site BMPs. These BMPs must be appropriately selected to meet project specific conditions and will usually represent the six categories.

Guidance and details on the use of Construction Site BMPs is available at:

- *Caltrans Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Reference Manual*:
  https://dot.ca.gov/programs/construction/storm-water-and-water-pollution-control/manuals-and-handbooks

Additional description and guidance on the use of Construction Site BMPs is available at:

- *Caltrans Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and Water Pollution Control Program (WPCP) Preparation Manual*;
  https://dot.ca.gov/programs/construction/storm-water-and-water-pollution-control/manuals-and-handbooks
- *California Stormwater Quality Association (CASQA) Construction BMP Online Handbook*:
  www.casqa.org/resources/bmp-handbooks
- Construction Site Best Management Practices (CS) Checklists;

Caltrans Construction Contract Standards capture most of the stormwater and water pollution control requirements in Section 13 and Section 21 of the *Standard Specifications*. The *Standard Plans* include several sheets on Construction Site BMPs. These are available at:

https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/ccs-standard-plans-and-standard-specifications

The Construction Site BMP Consideration Form on the next page is a resource for developing a Construction Site BMP strategy. Checklists for individual BMPs identified in the form can be found in this appendix.

DATE: ______________________

Project ID / EA: ______________________

Project Evaluation Process for the Consideration of Construction Site BMPs

No.	Criteria	Yes ✓	No ✓	Supplemental Information
1.	Will construction of the project result in areas of disturbed soil as defined by the Project Planning and Design Guide (PPDG)?			If Yes, Construction Site BMPs for Soil Stabilization (SS) will be required. Review CS-1, Part 1. Continue to 2. If No, Continue to 3.
2.	Is there a potential for disturbed soil areas within the project to discharge to storm drain inlets, drainage ditches, areas outside the RW, etc.?			If Yes, Construction Site BMPs for Sediment Control (SC) will be required. Review CS-1, Part 2. Continue to 3.
3.	Is there a potential for sediment or construction related materials and wastes to be tracked offsite and deposited on private or public paved roads by construction vehicles and equipment?			If Yes, Construction Site BMPs for Tracking Control (TC) will be required. Review CS-1, Part 3. Continue to 4.
4.	Is there a potential for wind to transport soil and dust offsite during the period of construction?			If Yes, Construction Site BMPs for Wind Erosion Control (WE) will be required. Review CS-1, Part 4. Continue to 5.
5.	Is dewatering anticipated or will construction activities occur within or adjacent to a live channel or stream?			If Yes, Construction Site BMPs for Non-Stormwater Management (NS) will be required. Review CS-1, Part 5. Continue to 6.
6.	Will construction include saw-cutting, grinding, drilling, concrete or mortar mixing, hydro-demolition, blasting, sandblasting, painting, paving, or other activities that produce residues?			If Yes, Construction Site BMPs for Non-Stormwater Management (NS) will be required. Review CS-1, Parts 5 & 6. Continue to 7.
7.	Are stockpiles of soil, construction related materials, and/or wastes anticipated?			If Yes, Construction Site BMPs for Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control (WM) will be required. Review CS-1, Part 6. Continue to 8.
8.	Is there a potential for construction related materials and wastes to have direct contact with stormwater; be dispersed by wind; be dumped and/or spilled into storm drain systems?			If Yes, Construction Site BMPs for Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control (WM) will be required. Review CS-1, Part 6.

C.1.1 Temporary Soil Stabilization BMPs

Temporary soil stabilization BMPs include:

- Scheduling;
- Preservation of Existing Vegetation;
- Temporary Hydraulic Mulch;
- Temporary Hydroseed;
- Temporary Soil Binder;
- Straw Mulch;
- Temporary Cover and Rolled Erosion Control Products (RECP);
- Wood Mulching;
- Earth Dikes/Drainage Swales and Lined Ditches;
- Outlet Protection/Velocity Dissipation Devices;
- Slope Drains; and
- Streambank Stabilization.

Provided in Table C-1 are selection criteria, information, and ratings for temporary soil stabilization BMPs. The BMPs are described in detail following Table C-1.

Table C-1. Temporary Soil Stabilization Criteria Matrix

Class	Type	Temporary Soil Stabilization Control Criteria											
		Antecedent Moisture	Availability	Ease of Clean-Up	EC Effectiveness (%)	Degradability	Length of Drying Time (hrs.)	Time to Effectiveness (days)	Longevity	Mode of Application	Residual Impact	Native	Runoff Effect
CATEGORY: STANDARD BIODEGRADABLE MULCHES (SBM)													
Straw Mulch	Wheat Straw	D	S	H	90-95	B	0	1	M	L/M	M		+
	Rice Straw	D	S	H	90-95	B	0	1	M	L/M	M		+
Wood Fiber Mulch	Wood Fiber	D	S	H	50-60	B	0-4	1	M	H	L		+
Recycled Paper Mulch	Cellulose Fiber	D	S	H	50-60	B	0-4	1	S	H	L		+
Bonded Fiber Matrix	Biodegradable	D	S	H	90-95	B	12-18	1	M	H	M		+
CATEGORY: ROLLED EROSION CONTROL PRODUCTS (RECP)													
Biodegradable	Jute Mesh	D	S	H	65-70	B		1	M	L	M		+
	Curled Wood Fiber	D	S	H	85-90	P/B		1	M	L	M		+
	Straw	D	S	H	85-90	P/B		1	M	L	M		+
	Wood Fiber	D	S	H	85-90	P/B		1	M	L	M		+
	Coconut Fiber	D	S	H	90-95	P/B		1	L	L	M		+
	Coconut Fiber Mesh	D	S	H	85-90	B		1	L	L	M		+
	Straw Coconut Fiber	D	S	H	90-95	P/B		1	L	L	M		+
Non-Biodegradable	Synthetic Fiber with Netting	D	M	H	90-95	P		1	L	L	H		+
	Bonded Synthetic Fibers	D	M	H	90-95	P		1	L	L	H		+
	Combination with Biodegradable	D	M	H	85-90	P		1	L	L	H		+
CATEGORY: TEMPORARY SEEDING (TS)													
High-Density	Ornamentals		S-M	H	50-60			28	M-L	H	L-M	N/E	+
	Turf species		S	H	50-60			28	L	H	M-H	N/E	+
	Bunch grasses		S-M	H	50-60			28	L	H	L-M	N	+
Fast-Growing	Annual		S	H	50-60			28	L	H	L-H	N/E	+
	Perennial		S	H	50-60			28	L	H	M	N/E	+
Non-Competing	Native		S-M	H	50-60			28	L	H	L-M	N	+
	Non-Native		S-M	H	50-60			28	L	H	L-H	E	+
Sterile	Cereal Grain		S	H	50-60			28	L	H	L	E	+
CATEGORY: IMPERVIOUS COVERS (IC)													
Plastic	Rolled Plastic Sheeting		S		100	P		1	M	L	H		-
	Geotextile (Woven)		S		90-95	P		1	M	L	H		-
CATEGORY: HYDRAULIC SOIL STABILIZERS (HSS)[1]													
(PBS) Plant Material Based- Short Lived	Guar	D	S	H	80-85	B	12-18	Same as Length of Drying Time.	S	B	L		0/+
	Psyllium	P	S	H	25-35	B	12-18		M	B	L		0
	Starches	D	S	H	25-30	B	9-12		S	H	L		0
(PBL) Plant Material Based- Long Lived	Pitch/ Rosin Emulsion	D	S	M	60-75	B	19-24		M	B	M		-
(PEB) Polymeric Emulsion Blends	Acrylic polymers and copolymers	D	S	M	35-70	P/C	19-24		L	B	M		+/-
	Methacrylates and acrylates	D	M	M	35-40	P/C	12-18		S	W	L		0/+
	Sodium acrylates and acrylamides	D	M	M	20-70	P/C	12-18		S	H	L		+/-
	Polyacrylamide	D	M	M	55-65	P/C	4-8		M	H	L		0/+
	Hydro-colloid polymers	D	M	H	25-40	P/C	0-4		M	H	L		0/+
(PRB) Petroleum/Resin-Based Emulsions	Emulsified Petroleum Resin	D	M	L	10-50	P/C	0-4		M	B	M		0/-
(CBB) Cementitious Based Binders	Gypsum	D	S	M	75-85	P/C	4-8		M	H	L		-
Follow procedures in Appendix F and use Table F-3 for cost estimates of line item BMPs													
	= not applicable for category, class, or type												
1	= Some RWQCBs have restrictions on the use of these items.												
UNK	= unknown												
See Table C-2 for Legend													

Table C-2. Temporary Soil Stabilization Criteria Matrix - Legend

Temporary Soil Stabilization Control	Identifier	Description
Antecedent Moisture	D P	Soil should be relatively dry before application Soil should be pre-wetted before application
Availability	S M	A short turn-around time between order and delivery, usually 3-5 days A moderate turnaround time, between 1-2 weeks
Ease of Clean-Up	L M H	Require pressure washing, a strong alkali solution, or solvent to clean up Requires cleanup with water while wet; more difficult to clean up once dry May be easily removed from equipment and overspray areas by a strong stream of water
Installed Cost		Dollars per acre
Degradability	C P B	Chemically degradable Photodegradable Biodegradable
Length of Drying Time		Estimated hours
Time to Effectiveness		Estimated days
Erosion Control Effectiveness		Percent reduction in soil loss over bare soil condition.
Longevity	S M L	1 – 3 months 3 – 12 months > than 12 months
Application Mode	L W H B M	Applied by hand labor Applied by water truck Applied by hydraulic mulcher Applied by either water truck or hydraulic mulcher Applied by a mechanical method other than those listed above (e.g., straw blower)
Residual Impact	L M H	Projected to have a low impact on future construction activities Projected to have a moderate impact on future construction activities Projected to have a significant impact on future construction activities
Native	N E	Plant or plant material native to the State of California Exotic plant not native to the State of California
Runoff Effect	+ 0 -	Runoff is decreased over baseline (bare soil) No change in runoff from baseline Runoff is increased over baseline

C.1.1.1 Scheduling

This BMP involves developing, for every project, a schedule that includes sequencing of construction activities with the implementation of Construction Site BMPs. The purpose is to reduce the amount and duration of soil exposed to erosion by wind, rain, runoff and vehicle tracking, and to perform the construction activities and control practices in accordance with the planned schedule. The Construction Contract Standards require this as part of the Contractor's SWPPP or WPCP.

C.1.1.2 Preservation of Existing Vegetation

Preservation of existing vegetation is the identification and protection of desirable vegetation that provides erosion and sediment control benefits. Whenever practical, existing vegetation should be preserved. Plants and trees act as effective soil stabilization and sediment control devices, particularly around the perimeter of construction sites. Areas that will not be disturbed as part of construction activities should be clearly marked on plans and protected in the field with fencing. Access limitations should also be shown on the plans.

Items to consider when preserving existing vegetation include:

- Preserve existing vegetation to provide effective erosion control;
- Consider the age, life expectancy, health, aesthetic value, and habitat benefits of vegetation to be preserved;
- Areas containing vegetation to be preserved must be shown on the plans; and
- Preserve native plants on the site wherever possible.

C.1.1.3 Hydraulic Mulch

Hydraulic mulch consists of applying a water-based mixture of wood or paper fiber and stabilizing emulsion with hydro-mulching equipment. This will protect disturbed soil from erosion by raindrop impact or wind.

C.1.1.4 Hydroseed

Hydroseeding consists of applying a water-based mixture of wood or paper fiber, stabilizing emulsion, and seed with hydro-mulching equipment. Often fertilizer and compost are added to the hydraulic mixture. This will protect disturbed soil from erosion by raindrop impact or wind.

C.1.1.5 Soil Binder

Soil binders, also known as tackifiers or soil stabilizers, are adhesives that stabilize soil by binding soil particles together. This will protect disturbed soil from erosion by raindrop impact or wind. Soil binders used in combination with hydraulic mulches are called tackifiers.

There are five types of tackifiers (soil binders) [1]:

- Plant Material-Based (Short-Term);
- Plant Material-Based (Long-Term);
- Polymeric Emulsion Blends;
- Petroleum or Resin-Based Emulsions; and
- Cementitious-Based Binders.

C.1.1.6 Straw Mulch

Straw mulch consists of placing a uniform layer of straw and incorporating it into the soil with a studded roller or anchoring it with a tackifier. Straw mulch is used for temporary soil stabilization, as a temporary surface cover, on disturbed areas until soils can be prepared for re-vegetation. It is also used in combination with temporary and/or permanent seeding strategies to enhance plant establishment.

Loose straw is the most common mulch material used in conjunction with direct seeding of soil. Straw mulching is generally the second part of multi-step process where seed and fertilizer is first

---

[1] Some RWQCBs have restrictions on the use of these items.

applied, then straw mulch applied as the second step. The final step of the process involves holding the loose straw in place by a) using netting, b) applying a liquid tackifier, or c) punching it into the soil by a process known as “crimping” or “incorporating.”

C.1.1.7 Temporary Cover and Rolled Erosion Control Products (RECP)

This BMP involves the placement of geosynthetic fabrics (geotextiles), plastic covers, or erosion control blankets/mats to stabilize disturbed soil area (DSA) and protect soil from erosion by wind or water.

C.1.1.8 Wood Mulch

Wood mulching consists of applying shredded wood, bark, or green material. The primary function of wood mulching is to reduce erosion by protecting bare soil from raindrop impact and reducing runoff. The material is typically spread by hand, although pneumatic methods are available.

C.1.1.9 Earth Dikes/Drainage Swales and Lined Ditches

Earth dikes, drainage swales and lined ditches are structures that intercept, divert, and convey surface runoff in a controlled, non-erosive manner. Top, toe, and mid-slope diversion ditches, berms, dikes, and swales should be used to intercept runoff and direct it away from critical slopes without allowing it to reach the roadway.

Design guidelines include:

- Select design flow and safety factor based on careful evaluation of the risk due to erosion of the measure, over topping, flow backups, or wash out;
- Examine the site for run-on from off-site sources. These off-site flows shall be diverted from or passed through the construction site without contact with disturbed soils;
- Select flow velocity limit of unlined conveyance systems based on soil types and drainage flow patterns for each project site. Establish a maximum flow velocity for using earth dikes and swales, above which a lined ditch must be used (see HDM Table 862.2). Consider use of rip-rap, engineering fabric, vegetation or concrete lining;
- Consider outlet protection where localized scour is anticipated;
- Consider order of work provisions early in the construction process to effectively install and use the permanent ditches, berms, dikes, and swales; and
- A sediment-trapping device should be used in conjunction with conveyances where sediment-laden water is expected.

C.1.1.10 Outlet Protection/Velocity Dissipation Devices

Outlet protection/velocity dissipation devices are rock slope protection or other materials placed at pipe outlets to reduce flow velocity and the energy of exiting stormwater flows and to prevent scour. They are used where localized scouring is anticipated, such as outlets of pipes, drains, culverts, slope drains, diversion ditches, swales, conduits, or channels. They are also used when lined channels or ditches discharge to unlined conveyances.

Appropriate applications include:

- Outlets of pipes, drains, culverts, slope drains, diversion ditches, swales, conduits, or channels;
- Outlets located at the bottom of mild to steep slopes;
- Outlets that carry continuous flow;
- Outlets subject to short, intense flows of water, such as from flash floods; and
- When lined conveyances discharge to unlined conveyances.

C.1.1.11 Slope Drains

A slope drain is a pipe used to intercept and direct surface runoff or groundwater into a stabilized watercourse, trapping device, or stabilized area. Slope drains should be sized to convey the applicable storm event for the construction period down or around the slope (see HDM for additional information).

C.1.1.12 Streambank Stabilization

Drainage systems including the stream channel, streambank, and associated riparian areas, are dynamic and sensitive ecosystems that respond to changes in land use activity. Streambank and channel disturbance resulting from construction activities can increase the stream's sediment load, which can cause channel erosion or sedimentation and have adverse effects on the biotic system. Reference the *HDM Section 870* and *DIB-87*, *Vegetated Rock Slope Protection* from HQ Office of Hydraulics and Stormwater Design (OHSD).

C.1.1.13 Surface Water Buffer Areas

For projects subject to the CGP, the waters of the US and the State, including creeks, streams, rivers, oceans, reservoirs, wetlands, estuaries, and lakes shall be protected when a site's earth disturbances are located within 50 feet of the top of bank or high water level using the 2-year event. A natural buffer area shall be provided when feasible. Where a natural buffer area of at least 50 feet is not feasible, the equivalent erosion and sediment controls shall be provided. The implementation of the BMP strategy must be shown to have equivalent sediment load to an undisturbed natural buffer via RUSLE2 calculation. Work within a channel or streambed (water body-dependent construction), Clean Water Act § 404 projects with a § 401 certification, and projects where no natural surface buffer exists (e.g., concrete channelization) are exempt from the requirements. Refer to Attachment D.II.G (page D-7) of the 2022 CGP for more details.

C.1.2 Sediment Control Practices

Sediment control is required along the site perimeter at all operational internal inlets.

Sediment control devices function by:

- Slowing water velocities, thereby allowing soil particles to settle out; and
- Attenuating the flood peak by detaining flow and releasing water at a slower rate.

All sediment control devices require continued maintenance to function properly. Excess sediment not removed reduces capacity and efficiency.

Sediment control practices include, but are not limited to:

- Silt Fence
- Street Sweeping and Vacuuming
- Sediment/Desilting Basin
- Sand Bag Barrier
- Sediment Trap/Curb Cutback
- Straw Bale Barrier
- Check Dam
- Drainage Inlet Protection
- Fiber Rolls
- Large Sediment Barrier
- Gravel Bag/Earthen Berm
- Compost Sock
- Flexible Sediment Barrier

C.1.2.1 Silt Fence

A silt fence is a temporary linear sediment barrier of permeable fabric designed to intercept and slow the flow of sediment-laden sheet flow runoff. Silt fences allow sediment to settle from runoff before water leaves the construction site.

Silt fences are placed below the toe of exposed and erodible slopes, downslope of exposed soil areas, around temporary stockpiles and along streams and channels. Silt fences should not be used to divert flow or in streams, channels or anywhere flow is concentrated.

C.1.2.2 Sediment/Desilting Basin

A de-silting basin is a temporary basin formed by excavation and/or an embankment where sediment-laden runoff is temporarily detained under quiescent conditions allowing sediment to settle out before the runoff is discharged.

De-silting basins shall be considered for use:

- On construction projects with disturbed areas during the rainy season;
- Where sediment-laden water may enter the drainage system or water courses; and
- At outlets of disturbed soil areas between 5 and 10 acres.

C.1.2.3 Sediment Trap/Curb Cutback

A sediment trap is a temporary basin with a controlled release structure formed by excavating or constructing an earthen embankment across a waterway or low drainage area. As a supplemental control, sediment traps provide additional protection for a water body or for reducing sediment before it enters a drainage system. A curb cutback is a temporary containment area created when the project utilizes the depression of the curb from a removed section of pavement as temporary containment to collect sediment.

Sediment traps may be used on construction projects during the rainy season when the contributing drainage area is less than 5 acres. Traps would be placed where sediment laden stormwater may enter a storm drain or watercourse, and around and/or up-slope from storm drain inlet protection measures.

C.1.2.4 Check Dam

A check dam is a small device constructed of rock, sand bags, or fiber rolls, placed across a natural or man-made channel or drainage ditch. Check dams reduce scour and channel erosion by reducing flow velocity and encouraging sedimentation.

C.1.2.5 Fiber Rolls

A fiber roll consists of straw or other similar materials inserted into a tube of biodegradable netting. Fiber rolls are placed on the face of slopes at regular intervals and/or at the toe of slopes to intercept runoff, reduce its flow velocity, release the runoff as sheet flow, and provide removal of sediment from the runoff.

C.1.2.6 Large Sediment Barrier

A large sediment barrier consists of straw or other similar materials inserted into a 12 inch tube of biodegradable netting. Large sediment barriers are placed at the toe of slopes or as check dams in unlined ditches to intercept runoff, reduce its flow velocity, release the runoff as sheet flow, and provide removal of sediment from the runoff. Large sediment barriers can perform the same function as silt fence or gravel bag berm, but should not be placed on the face of steep slopes.

C.1.2.7 Gravel Bag/Earthen Berm

A gravel bag berm consists of a single row of gravel bags that are installed end-to-end to form a barrier across a slope to intercept runoff, reduce runoff velocity, release runoff as sheet flow and provide some sediment removal. The gravel bag berm should be installed along a level contour with the bags tightly abutted.

Gravel Bag Berm can also be used:

- Where flows are moderately concentrated to divert and/or detain flows;
- Along the perimeter of a site;
- Along streams and channels;
- Below the toe of exposed and erodible slopes; and
- Around stockpiles.

Earthen berms are linear sediment barriers designed to intercept sheet flows and impound water upstream of the berm, allowing sediment to settle before runoff is released.

C.1.2.8 Street Sweeping and Vacuuming

Street sweeping and vacuuming are both sediment and tracking control practices to remove tracked soil particles from paved roads to prevent the sediment from entering a storm drain or watercourse. Street sweeping and vacuuming are implemented anywhere sediment is tracked from the project site onto public or private paved roads, typically at points of egress.

C.1.2.9 Sand Bag Barrier

A sand bag barrier is a temporary linear sediment barrier consisting of stacked sand bags, designed to intercept and slow the flow of sediment-laden sheet flow runoff. Sand bag barriers allow sediment to settle from runoff before water leaves the construction site.

Sand bags can also be used:

- Where flows are moderately concentrated to divert and/or detain flows;
- Along the perimeter of a site;
- Along streams and channels;
- Below the toe of exposed and erodible slopes; and
- Around stockpiles.

C.1.2.10 Straw Bale Barrier

A straw bale barrier is a temporary linear sediment barrier consisting of straw bales, designed to intercept and slow sediment-laden sheet flow runoff. Straw bale barriers allow sediment to settle from runoff before water leaves the construction site. A common use is adjacent to a silt fence.

C.1.2.11 Drainage Inlet Protection

Drainage inlet protection is a practice to reduce sediment from stormwater runoff discharging from the construction site prior to entering the storm drainage system. Effective drainage inlet protection allows sediment to settle out of stormwater or filters sediment from the stormwater before it enters the drain inlet. Drainage inlet protection is the last line of sediment control defense prior to stormwater leaving the construction site. Caltrans standard plans show Drainage Inlet Devices configured to protect drainage inlets under a variety of project conditions.

C.1.2.12 Compost Sock

A compost sock is a 12-inch diameter biodegradable mesh tube that is filled with compost. Compost sock placement includes and is not limited to the toe, top, face, and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes, and as check dams in unlined ditches to intercept runoff, reduce its flow velocity, release the runoff as sheet flow, and provide removal of sediment from the runoff. Compost socks are susceptible to damage by traffic and compost can potentially leach nutrients into runoff and negatively affect water quality.

C.1.2.13 Flexible Sediment Barrier

Flexible sediment barriers are synthetic alternatives to fiber rolls, compost socks, and straw bale barriers. Flexible sediment barriers consist of a geosynthetic fabric with a urethane foam-filled core and fabric apron to prevent undermining and scour. Flexible sediment barrier placement includes and is not limited to check dams in ditches and channels, as inlet protection for operational storm drains to intercept runoff, reduce its flow velocity, and provide removal of sediment from the runoff.

C.1.3 Tracking Control Practices

Tracking control practices prevent or reduce off-site tracking of sediment by vehicles. Tracking is a common source of complaints and can result in discharge of sediment to storm drains or watercourses. These measures include:

- Temporary Construction Entrance;
- Temporary Construction Roadway;
- Entrance/Outlet Tire Wash; and
- Street Sweeping and Vacuuming.

C.1.3.1 Temporary Construction Entrance

A temporary construction entrance is a designated point of access (ingress and egress) to a construction site that is stabilized to reduce tracking of sediment (mud and dirt) onto public roads by construction vehicles. See *Standard Plan T-58*. Temporary construction entrances are an effective method to limit the migration of sediment from the construction site, especially when combined with street sweeping and vacuuming. The temporary entrance is typically composed of a crushed aggregate layer over a geotextile fabric or constructed of steel plates with ribs.

C.1.3.2 Temporary Construction Roadway

A temporary construction roadway is a temporary access road connecting existing public roads to a remote construction area. It is designed for the control of dust and erosion created by vehicular traffic. A temporary construction roadway may be constructed of aggregate, asphalt concrete, or concrete based on the desired longevity.

C.1.3.3 Entrance/Outlet Tire Wash

A tire wash is an area located at stabilized construction access points to remove sediment from tires and undercarriages, and to prevent tracking of sediment onto public roads. The tire wash typically includes a wash rack on a pad of coarse aggregate. The runoff water from the wash area must be conveyed to a sediment trap or basin.

C.1.3.4 Street Sweeping and Vacuuming

Street sweeping and vacuuming are both sediment and tracking control practices to remove tracked soil particles from paved roads to prevent the sediment from entering a storm drain or watercourse. Street sweeping and vacuuming are implemented anywhere sediment is tracked from the project site onto public or private paved roads, typically at points of egress.

C.1.4 Wind Erosion Control

Wind erosion control consists of applying water or other dust palliatives as necessary to prevent or alleviate wind-blown dust. Dust control must be applied in accordance with Caltrans standard practices. Water or dust palliatives should be applied so no runoff occurs.

C.1.5 Non-Stormwater Management BMPs

The National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) stormwater regulations for construction sites also require that BMPs be included for control of non-stormwater discharges. Non-stormwater management measures are source controls that prevent pollution by limiting or reducing potential pollutants at their source before they come in contact with stormwater. These BMPs are also known as “good housekeeping practices.” The measures include:

- Water Conservation Practices

- Vehicle and Equipment Fueling
- Dewatering Operations
- Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance
- Paving, Sealing, Sawcutting
- Saw cutting, and Grinding Operations
- Pile Driving Operations
- Temporary Stream Crossing
- Concrete Curing
- Clear Water Diversion
- Material and Equipment Use Over Water
- Illegal Connection/ Illicit Discharge Detection and Reporting
- Structure Demolition/Removal Over or Adjacent to Water
- Potable Water/Irrigation
- Concrete Finishing
- Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning

During preparation of the project plans, it is not always possible to know where a contractor will be performing certain activities. To provide the contractor with flexibility, but to assure that proper control measures are implemented, the Construction Contract Standards cover most jobsite BMPs. This ensures that BMPs will be implemented for certain activities regardless of where on the site those activities are performed.

C.1.5.1 Water Conservation Practices

Water conservation practices are activities that use water during the construction of a project in a manner that avoids erosion caused by runoff and/or the transport of pollutants off the site. To ensure uniform implementation of water conservation requirements (e.g., during a drought) guidance documents and specifications are provided on the Caltrans Office Engineer website. See Appendix D.

C.1.5.2 Dewatering Operations

This BMP is intended to prevent the discharge of pollutants from construction site dewatering operations associated with stormwater (accumulated rain) and non-stormwater (groundwater, water from a diversion or cofferdam, etc.). Dewatering effluent that is discharged from the construction site to a storm drain or receiving water is subject to the requirements of the Construction General Permit and is also often regulated under a 401 Certification, or Waste Discharge Requirements (WDRs) administered by the RWQCB. The Construction General Permit requires sampling within the first hour of discharge and daily sampling thereafter for continuous dewatering discharges. Refer to the Field Guide to Construction Site Dewatering for detailed guidance for management of dewatering operations. The District/Regional NPDES Coordinator may need to coordinate with RWQCB for permitting and other requirements.

C.1.5.3 Paving, Sealing, Sawcutting, and Grinding Operations

Procedures that minimize pollution of stormwater runoff during paving operations include new paving and preparation of existing paved surfaces for overlays. Paving and grinding operations include handling materials, wastes and equipment associated with pavement removal, paving, surfacing, resurfacing, pavement preparation, thermoplastic striping and placing pavement markers.

C.1.5.4 Temporary Stream Crossing

A temporary stream crossing is a structure placed across a waterway that allows vehicles to cross the waterway during construction without contacting the water, thus reducing erosion and the transport of pollutants into the waterway. Temporary stream crossings are typically conditions of regulatory permits for work near live streams. Installation may require dewatering or temporary diversion of the stream. Temporary clear water diversion and stream crossing systems are discussed in detail in Section C.2 of this appendix.

C.1.5.5 Clear Water Diversion

Clear water diversion consists of a system of structures and measures that intercept clear surface water runoff upstream of a construction site, transport it through or around the site, and discharge it downstream with minimal water quality impact. Additional information and guidance for clear water diversion is provided in Section C.2 of this appendix.

C.1.5.6 Illegal Connection/Illicit Discharge Detection and Reporting

These procedures and practices are designed for construction contractors to recognize illegal connections or illegally dumped and discharged materials on a construction site and report incidents to the Resident Engineer (RE).

C.1.5.7 Potable Water/Irrigation

Potable water/irrigation consists of practices and procedures to reduce the discharge of potential pollutants generated from irrigation water lines, landscape irrigation, lawn or garden watering, potable water sources, water line flushing, and hydrant flushing.

C.1.5.8 Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning

This BMP consists of procedures and practices used to minimize or eliminate the discharge of pollutants from vehicle and equipment cleaning operations to storm drains or watercourses. On most construction sites, vehicle and equipment cleaning on site should be discouraged.

C.1.5.9 Vehicle and Equipment Fueling

This BMP consists of measures and practices to minimize or eliminate the discharge of fuel spills and leaks into the storm drain system or to watercourses. These measures include containment of fueling areas, spill prevention and control, drip pans or absorbent pads, automatic shut-off nozzles, vapor recovery nozzles, topping off restrictions, and leak inspection and repair.

C.1.5.10 Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance

This BMP consists of procedures and practices to minimize or eliminate the discharge of pollutants to the storm drain system or to watercourses from vehicle and equipment maintenance procedures. Practices include drip pans or absorbent pads, spill kits, dedicated maintenance areas, proper waste disposal, leak repair, and secondary containment.

C.1.5.11 Pile Driving Operations

The construction of bridges and retaining walls often includes driving piles for foundation support. Driven sheet piles are also used for shoring and cofferdam construction. Proper control and use of equipment, materials, and waste products from pile driving operations will reduce the discharge of potential pollutants to the storm drain system or watercourses.

C.1.5.12 Concrete Curing

This BMP consists of procedures that minimize pollution of stormwater runoff during concrete curing. Concrete curing includes the use of both chemical and water methods. Any element of the structure (e.g., footings, columns, abutments, stem and soffit, decks) may be subject to curing requirements.

C.1.5.13 Material and Equipment Use Over Water

This BMP consists of procedures for the proper use, storage, and disposal of materials and equipment on barges, boats, temporary construction pads, or similar locations that minimize or eliminate the discharge of potential pollutants to a watercourse. These procedures shall be implemented for construction materials and wastes (solid and liquid), soil or dredging materials, or any other materials that may be detrimental if released and apply where equipment is used over or adjacent to a watercourse.

C.1.5.14 Concrete Finishing

This BMP consists of procedures to minimize the impact that concrete finishing methods may have on stormwater runoff. Methods include sand blasting, lead shot blasting, grinding, or high pressure water blasting. Concrete finishing methods are used for bridge deck rehabilitation, paint removal, curing compound removal, and final surface finish appearances.

C.1.5.15 Structure Demolition/Removal Over or Adjacent to Water

This BMP consists of procedures to protect water bodies from debris and wastes associated with structure demolition or removal over or adjacent to watercourses. These procedures shall be implemented for full bridge demolition and removal, partial bridge removal (e.g., barrier rail, edge of deck) associated with bridge widening projects, concrete channel removal, or any other structure removal that could potentially affect water quality.

C.1.6 Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control

The NPDES stormwater regulations for construction sites also require that BMPs be included in the project plans for waste management and materials pollution control. These are source control BMPs that prevent pollution by reducing pollutants at their source, and require a clean, well-kept site. The measures include:

- Material Delivery and Storage
- Hazardous Waste Management
- Material Use
- Contaminated Soil Management
- Stockpile Management
- Concrete Waste Management

- Spill Prevention and Control
- Sanitary/Septic Waste Management
- Solid Waste Management
- Liquid Waste Management

The Construction Contract Standards cover most of these BMPs to ensure that they will be implemented for certain activities regardless of where on the site those activities are performed.

C.1.6.1 Material Delivery and Storage

This BMP consists of procedures and practices for the proper handling and storage of materials in a manner that minimizes or eliminates the discharge of these materials to the storm drain system or to watercourses. These procedures include secondary containment, spill prevention and control, product labeling, quantity reduction, proper storage, material covering, training, and inventory control.

C.1.6.2 Material Use

This BMP consists of procedures and practices for use of construction material in a manner that minimizes or eliminates the discharge of these materials to the storm drain system or watercourses. These procedures include proper waste disposal, product labeling, proper cleaning techniques, recycling materials, reducing quantities, and application rates, spill prevention and control, training, and reduction of exposure to stormwater.

C.1.6.3 Stockpile Management

This BMP consists of procedures and practices to eliminate pollution of stormwater from stockpiles of soil and paving materials (such as concrete rubble, aggregate, and asphalt concrete). These procedures include locating stockpiles away from drainages, providing perimeter sediment barriers, soil stabilization, and wind erosion control measures.

Generally, this requires that PCC and asphalt concrete grindings stockpiles be covered prior to rainfall and runoff from the stockpiles shall not be discharged to stormwater.

C.1.6.4 Spill Prevention and Control

This BMP consists of procedures and practices implemented to prevent and control spills in a manner that minimizes or prevents the discharge of spilled material to storm drain systems or watercourses. Spill prevention and prompt appropriate spill response reduce the potential for polluting receiving waters with spilled contaminants. Spills of concern include chemicals and hazardous wastes such as soil stabilizers/binders, dust palliatives, herbicides, growth inhibitors, fertilizers, de-icing products, fuels, lubricants, paints, and solvents. Spill prevention practices include education as well as cleanup and storage procedures that address small spills, semi-significant spills, and significant/hazardous spills.

C.1.6.5 Solid Waste Management

This BMP consists of procedures and practices to minimize or eliminate the discharge of pollutants to storm drain systems or watercourses as a result of the creation, stockpiling or removal of construction site wastes. Solid wastes include such items as used brick, mortar, timber, steel, vegetation/landscaping waste, empty material containers, and litter. Measures include education as well as collection, storage, and disposal practices.

C.1.6.6 Hazardous Waste Management

This BMP consists of procedures and practices to minimize or eliminate the discharge of pollutants from construction site hazardous waste to the storm drain system or watercourses. Hazardous wastes should be collected, stored, and disposed of using practices that prevent contact with stormwater. The following types of wastes are considered hazardous; petroleum products, concrete curing compounds, palliatives, septic wastes, paints, stains, wood preservatives, asphalt products, pesticides, acids, solvents, and roofing tar. There may be additional wastes on the project that are considered hazardous. It is also possible that non-hazardous waste could come into contact with these hazardous wastes, such that they become contaminated and are therefore considered hazardous waste. Measures include education, storage procedures, and disposal procedures.

C.1.6.7 Contaminated Soil Management

This BMP consists of procedures and practices to minimize or eliminate the discharge of pollutants to the storm drain system or watercourses from contaminated soil. Typical soil contamination is due to spills, illicit discharges, and underground storage tank leaks, or aerially deposited lead (ADL). Contaminated soils tend to occur on projects in urban or industrial areas. Soil contaminants and locations are often identified in the project plans and specifications. Measures include identifying contaminated areas, education, handling procedures for material with ADL, handling procedures for contaminated soils, procedures for underground storage tank removals, and water control.

C.1.6.8 Concrete Waste Management

This BMP consists of procedures and practices that are implemented to minimize or eliminate the discharge of concrete waste materials to the storm drain system or to watercourses. These measures include education, concrete slurry waste handling procedures, on-site concrete washout facility, transit truck washout procedures, and procedures for removal of temporary concrete washout facilities.

C.1.6.9 Sanitary/Septic Waste Management

This BMP consists of procedures and practices to minimize or eliminate the discharge of construction site toilet facilities to the storm drain system or watercourse. Measures include education, and storage and disposal procedures.

C.1.6.10 Liquid Waste Management

This BMP includes procedures to prevent pollutants related to non-hazardous liquid wastes from entering storm drains or receiving waters. Liquid wastes include drilling slurries, drilling fluids, wastewater that is free from grease and oil, dredging, and other non-stormwater liquid discharges not covered by separate permits. This BMP does not apply to the following:

- Dewatering operations
- Solid wastes
- Hazardous wastes
- Concrete slurries

C.2 Clear Water Diversion

C.2.1 Introduction

Clear water diversions include a variety of structures and BMPs used to intercept surface water upstream of a construction project site. The water itself may vary in clarity based on the background water quality of the stream. The purpose of the diversion is to divert the water around or through the construction area to provide a dry work area and to discharge the water downstream with minimal impact to water quality. Clear water diversion is estimated as Temporary Creek Diversion construction bid item (Appendix F).

C.2.1.1 Overview

The design of these clear water diversion systems must focus on keeping work areas dry and providing overall protection of water quality. Temporary stream diversion systems commonly used for these types of projects are diversion channels, berms, dikes, slope drains, rock, gravel bags, wood, sheet piles, water filled barriers, cofferdams, filter fabric, turbidity curtains, culverts, pipes, flumes, and pumps. Diversion systems vary in size, flow, and volume with the variety and variability of California's geography, meteorology, and physiographic regions. This range of conditions results in a variety of environments, habitats, and species, which must be considered in the design. These environmental considerations are then used by the regulatory agencies and attached to permits for the control, operation, and monitoring of water systems to allow construction of highways and highway related infrastructure. The range of diversions can be for small ephemeral creeks to large rivers, which require much different levels of risk to worker safety and the environment. Project Engineers (PEs) may be tasked with designing a stream diversion system to obtain environmental permits or in other cases a lump sum system specification can be used where the design of the system is determined by the construction contractor. The designer must include the appropriate plans, specifications, design, schedule, and estimate based on the variety of parameters that may occur for this type of work.

C.2.1.2 Caltrans Project Delivery Staff Coordination

As a PE, coordination with a variety of functional units may be required. The PDT for a smaller application may be Environmental, Right-of-Way, Hydraulics, Maintenance, Construction, and the PE. For larger projects the coordination will need to include all the above and Engineering Services for estimating and potentially designing the larger stream or river diversion system. This may require expert A&E consulting for the design of complicated and higher risk projects. Techniques for large coffer dams are included in the *Caltrans Engineering Services Structure Construction Foundation Manual 2010*, Section 4-15. Larger projects also tend to have more impacts and thus coordination with more functional units and experts may be required for mitigating these impacts.

C.2.1.3 CGP/ NPDES Compliance SWPPP/WPCP Documentation

These systems are considered BMPs by the regulatory agencies and they must be documented in the Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan. The project SWPPP must be submitted through the SWRCB SMARTS system as plan sheets to demonstrate to regulatory agencies what is being built. Plan sheets may be developed either by the Department or the contractor.

C.2.1.4 Appropriate Uses

As an isolation technique for creating dry work areas to prevent the water and soil from mixing while construction equipment is active.

Channel diversion: For small streams where there is adequate right-of-way to create a temporary channel around a construction work area and geotextiles or rock can be used to handle the shear stresses associated with the expected flows.

Berms: Typically used on small perennial, intermittent, or ephemeral streams with temporary culverts or pipe diversions. Shifting flows to one side or the other within a channel.

Gravel Bag berms. Appropriate for smaller streams where the hydraulic forces and water pressure can be adequately addressed with weight of gravel bags and plastic sheeting.

Coffer Dams: Appropriate for all streams and lakes to confine flows to one side, to create dry work area, or to berm entire small streams. Typically, this terminology is used in association of structures at Caltrans, some small inflatable coffer dams may be used for smaller applications.

Pipe Diversion: Short term projects with little base flow.

Pumped Diversion: Short term projects with little base flow or where siting space restrictions prevent other options.

C.2.2 Factors Affecting Preliminary Design

C.2.2.1 Design Considerations

Does the construction of the temporary diversion system cause more environmental damage to the riparian, wetland, or 100-year flood plain area, than to construct the project without the diversion BMP? This is a consideration for all projects but is usually appropriate for short term construction projects for temporary or ephemeral streams, where scheduling of the project when the stream is dry, may be more effective than the construction of a large diversion system in a sensitive environmental area, where construction equipment could disturb fragile vegetation, roots, sensitive species, soil structure, and root systems.

Stream Hydrology Considerations: Stream channel geometry, tributary watershed area, stream bed material, and predicted flow rates during construction. Follow methods in HDM Section 810 for the appropriate methods and rates for sizing the temporary diversion system.

Sizing the temporary diversion. In the past many temporary diversion system guidance documents required mandatory minimum return storms for sizing the systems, for example the 2-year, 5-year, or 10-year 24-hour return period. This can result in temporary diversion systems as large as the drainage system they are replacing and result in large impacts to the stream riparian zone, with large disturbed soil areas. Overly conservative approaches for the hydrology sizing to protect the environment can inadvertently cause other impacts to the environment for its construction. Each project should be sized for the appropriate risks.

In coordination with District Hydraulics, consider the consequences for diversion exceedance in determining appropriate sizing including public safety, work safety, environment, legal, regulatory permit requirements, costs, space, and schedule.

Section 404, Section 401, and Section 1600 permits will likely be required for work in jurisdictional waters.

C.2.2.2 Hydrology Methods for Sizing

The sizing of clear water diversion systems varies by the time of year, local hydrology, and duration of the diversion. If there is a prescriptive storm size in a permit document, then design to the required event size. A 2-year 24-hour storm event has been used by many as a default event, but more recent studies have shown that this may oversize the system and cause more disturbance in the sensitive stream zone than is necessary. Careful analysis of the local hydrology history and risk analysis is required to minimize the diversion impacts. However, if larger work windows are required, close consideration with District Hydraulics is advised.

C.2.2.3 Limitations

Temporary stream diversion: The designer should consider the size, depth of water, and risks. Use this BMP and specification for small streams and low risk projects.

Coffer dams and more elaborate systems should be designed by engineering services staff with the appropriate structural background or by the contractor. The design decision and design parameters should be coordinated by the PDT, so that all permitting and highway design requirements are met.

C.2.2.4 Standards and Specifications

Most small stream diversions can be designed by the district and coordinated with OHSD. In many cases the diversion can be located on the plan sheet referencing the non-standard specification for Temporary Creek Diversion.

- Include in Water Pollution Control Sheets or Drainage Plans
- Cost estimate for the Temporary Stream Diversion is usually done as a lump sum item.
- The lump sum cost estimate for temporary stream diversion will be based on the added or deleted paragraph items in the specification.
- Many projects will have multiple culverts, so it may be appropriate to develop a table of the lump sum costs for each system, this should be provided to the Resident Engineer to help review the Temporary Stream Diversion Control Plan, to help them determine if all needed items are included.

The types of diversion for small to medium sized streams may include:

- Pumped systems
- Temporary culverts
- Inflatable Coffer Dams: Consult HQ Drainage Design for specification.

For larger (large rivers, lakes, bays, and ocean areas) clear water diversions that have a higher risk to worker safety and a more extensive design is required to address the forces for the depth and flow of the water, the district's structures representative should be consulted for the design. One example of these projects is larger rivers where coffer dams are required, the engineer must consult and follow the Caltrans Engineering Services Shoring Guidance and consult with Construction as the owner of the specification.

- Diversion can be constructed from timber, soil, or steel. But in most cases are designed and constructed with steel sheet piles. Refer to 19-3.03C Cofferdams (sheet piles).
- Guidance: *Caltrans Shoring Guide* (Engineering Services)

- Dewatering: 13-4.03G of the Standard Specifications for use with coffer dams or other large in-water work.
- May need to treat or control seepage water prior to discharge, consult appropriate requirements for treatment design needs.

C.3 Active Treatment Systems

C.3.1 Introduction

Active Treatment Systems (ATS) apply conventional water treatment technologies, in use for over a century, to stormwater quality. The Construction General Permit (CGP) does not require the use of an ATS, but for waters and sites where the reliability of the stormwater is of concern, these systems may be used. The Construction General Permit defines an Active Treatment System as: “An active treatment system is a treatment system that employs chemical coagulation, chemical flocculation, or electrocoagulation in order to reduce turbidity caused by fine suspended sediment.”

C.3.1.1 Overview

An ATS may be considered for a Project under the following conditions:

- When necessary to meet water quality objectives (WQO) of the receiving water, or
- When necessary to meet the effluent limits of the CGP for turbidity and pH in stormwater.

An ATS uses a coagulant or flocculent for the treatment of water with a sedimentation basin for turbidity reduction. In addition, pH adjustment or bag/cartridge/sand filters may be included. The exact configuration of the ATS will be dependent on the anticipated quality of the water to be treated and receiving water requirements.

Coagulation and sedimentation can be used to destabilize suspended particles and remove them from suspension. There are many different coagulants for use; each coagulant may use different chemical properties and may be more or less suited for different types of water qualities to be treated. Any coagulant residual in the discharge must be monitored and managed to attain any applicable effluent limits prior to discharge.

An ATS is recommended to remove particles below 0.02 mm. For locations which need to meet strict turbidity requirements an ATS system may be warranted. Particular water bodies may be listed for other parameters of concern for which an ATS might be recommended to treat any additional constituents of concern; however, not all pollutants can be treated with readily available ATS components.

C.3.1.2 Construction General Permit

An ATS under the CGP is strictly used for the treatment of stormwater discharges generated from precipitation that falls on the construction area during a storm event. Other water generated from construction operations is considered non-stormwater and is not applicable without permit authorization and consideration of additional design parameters. In some cases, designers may wish to include non-stormwater in the ATS system, if so, any non-stormwater comingled with stormwater will alter the water quality of the discharge, thus modifications of system will need to be evaluated.

Under the CGP, an ATS may be necessary when:

- Traditional erosion and sediment controls do not effectively control accelerated erosion at the construction site,
- The construction site stormwater discharges may cause or contribute to an exceedance of a water quality standard, and/or
- Site constraints (e.g., very steep or long slope lengths, clay, highly erosive soils) inhibit the ability to construct a correctly sized sediment basin.

C.3.2 ATS Selection Criteria

ATS selection will be driven by the permit-calculated risk, the available area, and the soil type of the site. Each of these will drive the selection of an ATS that would reliably meet the requirements of the CGP.

C.3.2.1 Determine Risk

Initially the project needs to identify the risk level (RL). Risk is calculated based upon the combination of the estimated sediment load potential and the sensitivity of the receiving water. Locations which have the potential to generate high concentration of sediment in the stormwater (soils which erode easily) may be classified as Risk Level 2. Locations where the receiving water is sensitive to sediment loading may also be classified as Risk Level 2. For sites where both are of concern, Risk Level 3 may be appropriate.

Projects designated as “RL 1” should proceed with typical Construction Site BMPs for stormwater mitigation. For RL 2 and 3, a selection procedure is used to determine if traditional BMPs are sufficient or if an ATS is appropriate for use.

C.3.2.2 Potential Storage Area and Peak Stormwater Flow

Construction sites with sufficient area available may be able to properly store enough water to avoid active treatment. These areas can be used for storage of water with enough detention time to settle significant quantities of particles prior to discharge. The minimum detention time can be determined by dividing the available storage by the peak flow expected from the 10-year 24-hour storm. If the detention time of a sedimentation basin can meet the minimum compliance requirements for sedimentation, an ATS is not required for turbidity removal.

Determine the area available for potential stormwater storage (A_p). The area is not simply the total area of the construction site but the area available for storage. These can include assigned stormwater treatment locations, existing storage areas, or space outside of the construction footprint which is available for use.

C.3.2.3 Soil Type

The minimum detention time required for a construction site will depend on the predominant soil type. Fine soils, such as clay, will remain suspended for much longer times than coarser soils, such as sand. To determine the minimum detention time required, the composition of the soil within the construction site must be determined and minimum detention time evaluated depending on the result.

C.3.2.4 Settling Velocity and Required Settling Area

Calculate the minimum area for potential treatment. Initially calculate the peak stormwater flow from the site based upon disturbed construction area and the rainfall intensity from a 10-year 24-hour storm event using the Rational Equation (though this peak flow does not need to be the design flow of a potential ATS). Next, determine the predominate soil type within the construction area. Conservative estimates will use the minimum particle diameter of each soil type (sand, silt, or clay) in conjunction with Stokes Law to determine the settling velocity of the sediment. Other methods or models may be substituted for Stokes Law if more information is readily available on the soils in the construction area. Dividing the peak flow by the settling velocity will determine the minimum area required (A_r) for settling without active treatment.

C.3.2.5 Determine Appropriate Device

Comparing the minimum area required (A_r) to the potential area available (A_p) will determine whether an ATS may be necessary. If the area available is significantly larger (>20 percent) than the area required, at a minimum, a detention basin can be designed to meet the stormwater quality requirements, though other BMPs may function equally well depending on the site characteristics. If the area required is significantly large than the area available (>20 percent) then an ATS must be considered. If the area available and the area required fall between the two, only RL 3 sites should consider ATS as they require more reliability than RL 2 sites. If other options are available, such as increasing potential storage area or improving the accuracy of the settling velocity calculation, the procedure can be used to re-evaluate the site. If no other options are available, an ATS is recommended.

Attachment F of the CGP contains direction for implementation of ATS. Figure C-1 shows the Caltrans decision diagram for the ATS selection procedure.

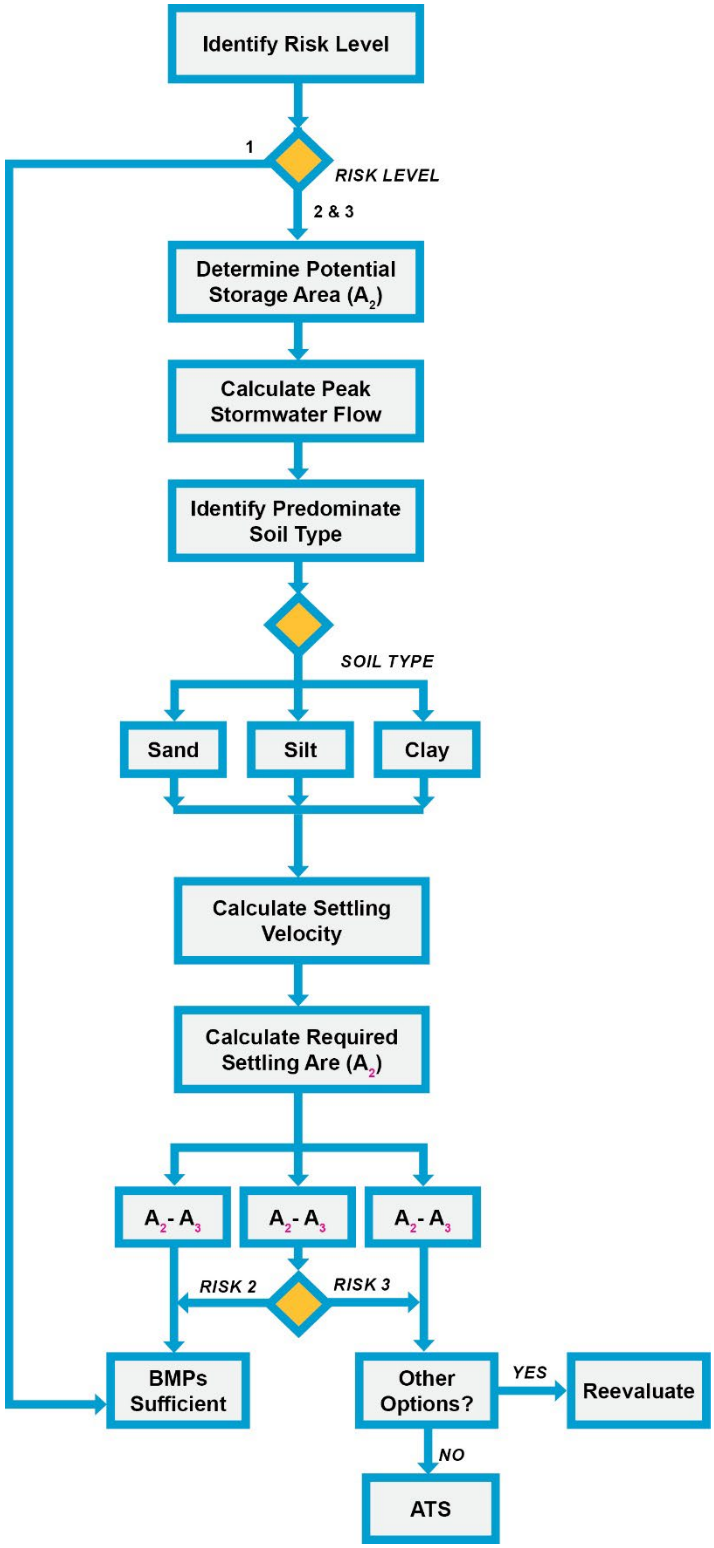


Figure C-1. Active Treatment System Decision Tree

C.3.3 Factors Affecting Preliminary Design

C.3.3.1 Pollution Prevention/Sediment Mitigation

Actions to reduce the quantity of sediment in stormwater directed to storage should be implemented in the work area regardless of the decision to use an ATS. With an ATS these measures can lead to more efficient treatment and operational cost savings. For example, minimization of disturbed soil area can prevent significant sediment loading. Closing off or stabilizing unused portions of the site will reduce the amount of stormwater that could be impacted by construction activities.

To prevent significant sediment loading to an ATS all applicable Construction Site BMPs, especially those that provide erosion and sediment control at the source and within conveyances should be implemented.

C.3.3.2 Collection System/Discharge Piping

Collection piping is required to convey the water generated onsite to the treatment system (i.e., the ATS and its component systems). The size and quantity of piping will be determined by the layout and terrain of the disturbed construction area. It may be necessary to include pumps to move large quantities of water depending on the site layout. It is also possible for the site to implement multiple ATS systems. Discharge piping and pumps are required to convey treated water to the appropriate discharge location. Proper sizing is required to prevent flow backup or sedimentation within the pipe.

C.3.3.3 Storage/Pre-Sedimentation

It is necessary to store large quantities of water onsite during significant rain events. Locations such as swales, basins, and other areas conducive for storage may be used to retain water prior to treatment. These locations provide an additional benefit of settling out some sediment before treatment with an ATS. Design of these storage locations should be conducted in accordance with criteria for those BMPs.

Systems with a high sediment loading may necessitate a designed pretreatment tank. Pretreatment typically consists of a pre-sedimentation basin such as a weir tank for the removal of easily settleable sediment loads. Pretreatment can improve coagulant usage and effectiveness, as well as reduce the quantity of coagulant sludge, thus minimizing costs and potential concerns of the coagulant being detected in receiving waters. Systems with pre-sedimentation and storage can be sized to smaller peak flows as large storms can be stored and treated over longer durations. The trade-off will depend on both the amount of storage and design capacity of the system.

C.3.3.4 Treatment Components

Different components may be used within the ATS. These components interact with each other and need to be considered individually and as an integrated treatment system. Recirculation piping will be necessary to meet turbidity and pH discharge requirements.

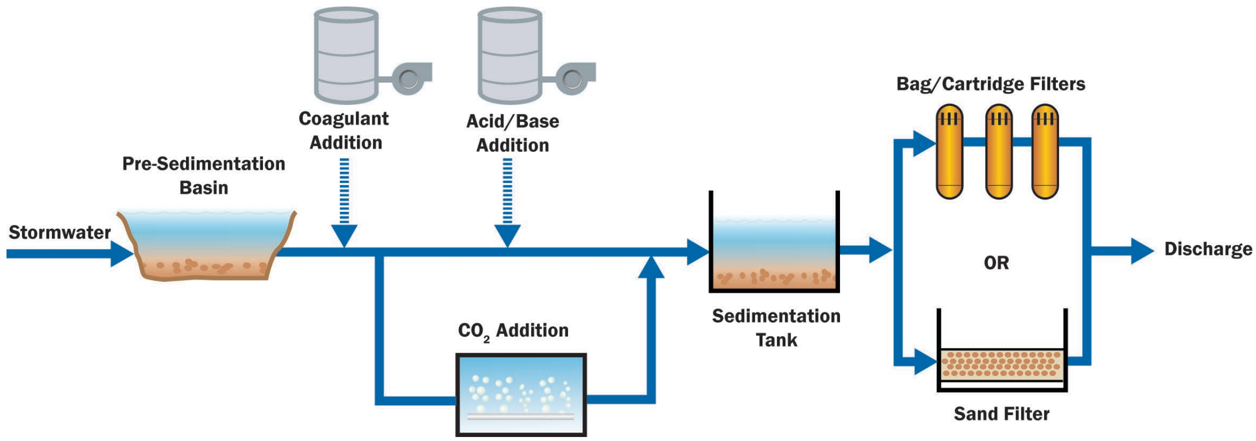


Figure C-2. Potential Treatment Schematic

Table C-3. Potential ATS Components

Component	Use
Coagulant Dosing Equipment	Chemical for forming floc and removing turbidity
pH Adjustment Dosing Equipment	Chemical for adjusting pH within proper range
Sedimentation Tank	Gravity particulate removal and sludge removal/collection
Bag/Cartridge/Media Filters	Filters for particle removal

C.3.3.4.1 Coagulation/Flocculation

Different coagulants are available for use within an ATS system. The choice of a coagulant is an important consideration to achieve turbidity removal requirements. The anticipated water quality of the site will define which coagulants may be effective at forming floc and reducing turbidity. Coagulant dosing rates and usage will vary depending on the water quality, flow volumes, and coagulant selection.

Some coagulants that have been used on past projects include Chitosan, Ferric Chloride, and Alum. Use of other coagulants/polymers may be more difficult for the RWQCB to approve due to uncertainties about potential effects on water quality. Regardless of the coagulant choice, monitoring of residual coagulant in the discharge would likely be required.

Equipment such as a chemical feed pump, a rapid mixer (static or mechanical), and sufficient sedimentation will be necessary to properly dose any coagulant. A streaming current detector should be used to monitor and adjust coagulant dose.

A Coagulant Prevention Plan (CPP) should be required for any coagulant used in order to ensure protection from potentially toxic effects on both human and wildlife from high concentration coagulant exposure. At a minimum, the CPP should include coagulant storage, monitoring, and disposal during the lifespan of the ATS.

Table C-4. Potential ATS Chemicals

Class of Chemical	Chemical	Advantages	Disadvantages	Approximate Cost
pH Decrease	Hydrochloric Acid (HCl)	Low Dose	Safety Concerns	
pH Decrease	Sulfuric Acid (H_2SO_4)	Low Dose	Safety Concerns	
pH Decrease	Carbon Dioxide (CO_2)	Inert, Self-Buffering	Mechanically Intensive, Requires Diffuser/Basin	
pH Increase	Sodium Hydroxide (NaOH)	Low Dose	Safety Concerns	
Coagulant / Flocculent	Alum	Lower Cost	Drops pH, Can Require High Dose	
Coagulant / Flocculent	Ferric (Chloride/Sulfate)	Lower Cost	Drops pH, Can Require High Dose	
Coagulant / Flocculent	Chitosan	Low Dose	May Not Work Well for Certain Soils	$2,500 per Tote

C.3.3.4.2 pH Adjustment

For certain systems, pH adjustment may be necessary to maintain receiving water integrity. Certain sites conditions, such as fresh concrete or other chemicals used onsite, may adversely affect pH. Furthermore, certain coagulant choices can alter pH. There are multiple methods for pH adjustment depending on the water quality of the site.

Carbon Dioxide (CO_2) can be used to lower the pH. CO_2 gas is bubbled through water forming carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) and thereby reducing pH. Carbon dioxide is mechanically more intensive, but the gas is much safer to store onsite. The CO_2 system requires a bubble diffuser and a separate basin for proper implementation.

Strong acids and bases may also be used. Dosing generally occurs alongside coagulant addition. Dosing rates will vary depending on water quality, receiving water quality, and acid/base selection. Strong acids/bases have safety concerns associated with storage and dosing. In addition, acid/base selection is important to prevent possible interactions with other treatment components. Strong acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid) and bases (e.g., sodium hydroxide) would provide rapid pH response for most waters; another advantage to all the acids and bases listed in the table below is that the corresponding counter-ions (e.g., sulfate, chloride, sodium) are not expected to react with constituents in the treatment system. In contrast, some acids (e.g., citric acid) introduce counter ions (citrate) that can have undesirable side-effects, such as promoting bacterial growth or inhibiting floc formation.

Table C-5. Suggested pH Adjustment Chemicals

Acids	Bases
Carbon Dioxide (CO_2) – Bubble Carbon Dioxide will form carbonic acid and drop pH	Sodium Hydroxide (NaOH)
Sulfuric Acid (H_2SO_4) – strong acid	Sodium Hydroxide (NaOH)
Hydrochloric Acid (HCl)	Sodium Hydroxide (NaOH)

C.3.3.4.3 Sedimentation Tanks

Sedimentation tanks are required to settle floc formed from coagulation. Sedimentation tanks must provide sufficient surface area and retention time to allow adequate settling of solids. Tanks as opposed to weir tanks are recommended for use with high sediment loads. Weir tanks may be used for systems that have minimal influent sediment loading. Higher sediment loads will quickly fill weir tanks and would require sludge removal at higher frequencies compared to sedimentation tanks.

Figure C-3. Sedimentation Tank (Devil's Slide)

C.3.3.4.4 Bag/Cartridge/Media Filter

Bag, cartridge, or media filters provide additional particle removal prior to discharge. Bag and cartridge filters pass water through mesh filters reducing particle sizes to a predetermined size. Media filters use sand or other granular media to remove particles. Bag and cartridge filters are removed, changed out and discarded. Media filters use treated water to backwash the filter and remove particles.

It may be necessary to reduce turbidity to approximately 25 NTU or below prior to filtration to prevent excessive buildup on the filter. For bag and cartridge filters, higher turbidity levels passed to the filters will cause increased frequency of change-out. For sand filters, more frequent backwashing will be required which will cause greater work, more chemical usage, and more clean water for backwashing.

Figure C-4. Bag/Cartridge Filters (Devil's Slide)

C.3.3.4.5 Power Sources

An Uninterruptible Power Supply and standby electric generator is recommended for any ATS system. Storms can routinely interrupt power supply systems, thus it is necessary to provide a backup in such circumstances.

C.3.3.4.6 SCADA Monitoring Equipment

Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition (SCADA) systems are standard technology used to monitor and control all monitoring and mechanical systems within an ATS. These systems can record and store all relevant data to the project. Remote operation of an ATS is possible through SCADA systems, but connection stability must be maintained to ensure proper operation.

ATS effluent discharges should meet the requirements of the CGP. Monitoring equipment must be installed. These include, but are not limited to, turbidimeter, pH meters, and flow meters. These meters need to be calibrated as recommended by the manufacturer or regulator. The frequency of calibration and a documented process to retrieve and verify data should be specified to the contractor and may be required of the RWQCB. In addition, some water quality analysis will need to be conducted by outside labs for analysis such as total suspended solids (TSS), settleable solids (SS), or residual coagulant.

C.3.4 Active Treatment System Sizing

The size of the treatment system will be dependent on the acreage of the active disturbed soil area. The system is required to be designed to capture and treat a volume equivalent to the runoff from a 10-year 24-hour storm event using a watershed coefficient of 1.0 within 72 hours. Storms that are greater than the design storm may cause the ATS to exceed the CGP restrictions. In these circumstances, the RWQCB will still expect the contractor to make efforts to meet the CGP or other requirements.

C.3.4.1 Construction Area

The area of the basin will be defined by the contributing drainage area of the disturbed construction site. The contributing drainage areas will be defined by the designer depending on the orientation of the construction site. For long or flat construction sites, it may be necessary to subdivide the site and set up separate ATS locations. The conveyance systems required to funnel stormwater to a central ATS location may be prohibitive for certain site orientations.

If multiple receiving waters are present in the site, each receiving water basin may require a separate ATS in order to maintain watershed integrity. For some receiving waters, BMPs may be sufficient to meet turbidity goals, for others an ATS system may be warranted.

C.3.4.1.1 Flowrate

Peak flowrate can be calculated for each area by the Rational Formula:

$$Q = C \times I \times A \qquad \text{(Eqn. 1)}$$

Q = Peak Runoff Rate, Cubic Feet per Second

C = Dimensionless Runoff Coefficient (1.0 IAW CGP)

I = Rainfall intensity, Inches per Hour (10-year, 24-hour storm)

A = Basin Area, Acres

The rainfall intensity will vary by project location.

The dimensionless runoff coefficient is set by the CGP as 1.0.

Basin area will be considered based upon the total area of the sub area in question.

C.3.4.1.2 Sedimentation Residence Time

$$HRT = V/Q \qquad \text{(Eqn. 2)}$$

HRT = Hydraulic Retention Time, Hours

V = Volume of Sedimentation Basin, Gallons

Q = Flowrate, Gallons per Hour

Hydraulic Retention Time should be between 2-4 hours in order to settle sufficient floc to meet turbidity requirements.

C.4 Construction Site (CS) BMP Checklists

Checklist CS-1, Parts 1 – 6 are provided on the following pages to assist the PE in developing the Construction Site BMP strategy and completing the Construction Site BMPs section of the project SWDR. The checklists are provided as a tool for CS BMP consideration purposes only. When used, the checklists should be kept in the project file, and attached to the SWDR, unless requested by the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

Construction Site BMPs
Checklist CS-1, Part 1

Prepared by: ________	Date: ______________________	District-Co-Route: ___________
PM: _________________	Project ID/EA: ______________	RWQCB: ___________________

Temporary Soil Stabilization

General Parameters

1. How many rainy seasons are anticipated between begin and end of construction? __________
2. What is the total disturbed soil area for the project? (ac) __________
3. Consult your District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator for the minimum required combination of temporary soil stabilization and temporary sediment controls and barriers for area, slope inclinations, rainy and non-rainy season, and active and non-active disturbed soil areas. ☐ Complete

Scheduling

4. Does the project have a duration of more than one rainy season and have disturbed soil area in excess of 25 acres? If yes, complete a through c. ☐ Yes ☐ No
   a. Include multiple mobilizations (Move-in/Move-out) as a separate contract bid item to implement permanent erosion control or revegetation work on slopes that are substantially complete. (Estimate at least 6 mobilizations for each additional rainy season. Designated Construction Representative may suggest an alternate number of mobilizations.) ☐ Complete
   b. Edit specifications for permanent erosion control or revegetation work to be implemented on slopes that are substantially complete. ☐ Complete
   c. Edit permanent erosion control or revegetation specifications to require seeding and planting work to be performed when optimal. ☐ Complete

Preservation of Existing Vegetation

5. Do Environmentally Sensitive Areas (ESAs) exist within or adjacent to the construction limits? (Verify the completion of DPP-1, Part 5) ☐ Yes ☐ No
   a. Verify the protection of ESAs through delineation on all project plans. ☐ Complete
   b. Protect from clearing and grubbing and other construction disturbance by enclosing the ESA perimeter with high visibility plastic fence or other BMP. ☐ Complete

6. Are there areas of existing vegetation (mature trees, native vegetation, landscape planting, etc.) that need not be disturbed by project construction? Will areas designated for proposed or existing Treatment BMPs need protection (infiltration characteristics, vegetative cover, etc.)? (Coordinate with District Environmental and Construction to determine limits of work necessary to preserve existing vegetation to the maximum extent practicable.) ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Designate as outside of limits of work (or designate as ESAs) and show on all project plans. ☐ Complete

   b. Protect with high visibility plastic fence or other BMP. ☐ Complete

7. If yes for 5, 6, or both, then designate ESA fencing as a separate contract bid item, *if not already incorporated as part of design pollution prevention work (See DPP-1, Part 5)*. ☐ Complete

Slope Protection

8. Provide a temporary soil stabilization BMP(s) appropriate for the DSA, slope steepness, slope length, and soil erodibility. (Consult with District Landscape Architect.)

   a. Select Hydraulic Mulch, Hydroseeding, Soil Binders, Straw Mulch, Geotextiles, Mats, Plastic Covers, and Erosion Control Blankets, Wood Mulching, other BMPs or a combination to cover the DSA throughout the project's rainy season. ☐ Complete

   b. Increase the quantities by 25 percent for each additional rainy season. (Designated Construction Representative may suggest an alternate increase.) ☐ Complete

   c. Designate as a separate contract bid item. ☐ Complete

Slope Interrupter Devices

9. For projects with temporary erosion control requirements, provide slope interrupter devices for all slopes, in accordance with CGP requirements.

   a. For slopes ≤ 1:20 Select Fiber Rolls or other BMPs to protect slopes throughout the project's rainy season as recommended by the District Construction Stormwater Coordinator. ☐ Complete

   b. For slope inclination of 4:1 (h:v) and flatter, Fiber Rolls or other BMPs shall be placed along the contour and spaced 35 ft on center. ☐ Complete

   c. For slope inclination between 4:1 (h:v) and 3:1 (h:v), Fiber Rolls or other BMPs shall be placed along the contour and spaced 20 ft on center. ☐ Complete

   d. For slope inclination between 3:1 (h:v) and 2:1 (h:v), Fiber Rolls or other BMPs shall be placed along the contour and spaced 15 ft on center. ☐ Complete

   e. For slope inclination of greater than 2:1 (h:v), Fiber Rolls or other BMPs shall be placed along the contour and spaced 10 ft on center. ☐ Complete

f. Increase the quantities by 25 percent for each additional rainy season. (Designated Construction Representative may suggest alternate increase.) ☐ Complete

g. Designate as a separate contract bid item. ☐ Complete

Channelized Flow

10. Identify locations within the project site where concentrated flow from stormwater runoff can erode areas of soil disturbance. Identify locations of concentrated flow that enters the site from outside of the RW (off-site run-on). ☐ Complete

    a. Utilize Geotextiles, Mats, Plastic Covers, and Erosion Control Blankets, Earth Dikes/Swales, Ditches, Outlet Protection/Velocity Dissipation, Slope Drains, Check Dams, or other BMPs to convey concentrated flows in a non-erosive manner. ☐ Complete

    b. Designate as a separate contract bid item, as appropriate. ☐ Complete

Construction Site BMPs
Checklist CS-1, Part 2

Prepared by: ________	Date: ____________________	District-Co-Route: __________
PM: _______________	Project ID/EA: ____________	RWQCB: _________________

Sediment Control

Perimeter Controls – Run-off Control

1. Is there a potential for sediment laden sheet and concentrated flows to discharge offsite from runoff cleared and grubbed areas, below cut slopes, embankment slopes, etc.? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Select linear sediment barrier such as Silt Fence, Fiber Rolls, Gravel Bag Berm, Sand Bag Barrier, Straw Bale Barrier, or a combination to protect wetlands, water courses, roads (paved and unpaved), construction activities, and adjacent properties. (Coordinate with District Construction for selection and preference of linear sediment barrier BMPs.) ☐ Complete

   b. Increase the quantities by 25 percent for each additional rainy season. (Designated Construction Representative may suggest an alternate increase.) ☐ Complete

   c. (Designate as a separate contract bid item. ☐ Complete

Perimeter Controls – Run-on Control

2. Do locations exist where sheet flow upslope of the project site and where concentrated flow upstream of the project site may contact DSA and construction activities? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. (Utilize linear sediment barriers such as Earth Dike/Drainage Swales and Lined Ditches, Fiber Rolls, Gravel Bag Berm, Sand Bag Barrier, Straw Bale Barrier, or other BMPs to convey flows through and/or around the project site. (Coordinate with District Construction for selection and preference of perimeter control BMPs.) ☐ Complete

   b. Designate as a separate contract bid item, as appropriate. ☐ Complete

Storm Drain Inlets

3. Do existing or proposed drainage inlets exist within the construction limits? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Select Drainage Inlet Protection to protect municipal storm drain systems or receiving waters wetlands at each drainage inlet. (Coordinate with District Construction for selection and preference of inlet protection BMPs.) ☐ Complete

   b. Designate as a separate contract bid item. ☐ Complete

4. Can existing or proposed drainage inlets utilize an excavated sediment trap as described in Drainage Inlet Protection – Type 2? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Include with other types of Drainage Inlet Protection. ☐ Complete

Sediment/Desilting Basin

5. Does the project lie within a Rainfall Area where the required combination of temporary soil stabilization and sediment control BMPs includes desilting basins? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Consider feasibility for desilting basin allowing for available right-of-way within the construction limits, topography, soil type, disturbed soil area within the watershed, and climate conditions. Document if the inclusion of sediment/desilting basins is infeasible. ☐ Complete

   b. If feasible, design desilting basin(s) per the guidance in the CASQA Construction BMP Guidance Handbook to maximize capture of sediment-laden runoff. ☐ Complete

   c. Designate as a separate contract bid item ☐ Complete

6. Is ATS to be used for controlling sediment? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. If yes, then will desilting basin or other means of natural storage be used? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   b. If no, then plan for storage tanks sufficient to hold treatment volume. ☐ Complete

7. Will the project benefit from the early implementation of proposed permanent Treatment BMPs? (Coordinate with District Construction.) ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Edit specifications for permanent Treatment BMP work to be implemented in a manner that will allow its use as a Construction Site BMP. ☐ Complete

Sediment Trap

8. Can sediment traps be located to collect channelized runoff from disturbed soil areas prior to discharge? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Design sediment traps in accordance with the CASQA Construction BMP Guidance Handbook. ☐ Complete

   b. Designate as a separate contract bid item. ☐ Complete

Construction Site BMPs
Checklist CS-1, Part 3

Prepared by: _________ Date: _______________________ District-Co-Route: ____________

PM: _________________ Project ID/EA: _______________ RWQCB: ____________________

Tracking Controls

<u>*Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit*</u>

1. Are there points of entrance and exit from the project site to paved roads where mud and dirt could be transported offsite by construction equipment? (Coordinate with District Construction for selection and preference of tracking control BMPs.) ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Identify and designate these entrance/exit points as stabilized construction entrances. ☐ Complete

   b. Designate as a separate contract bid item. ☐ Complete

<u>*Tire/Wheel Wash*</u>

2. Are site conditions anticipated that would require additional or modified tracking controls such as entrance/outlet tire wash? (Coordinate with District Construction.) ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Designate as a separate contract bid item. ☐ Complete

<u>*Stabilized Construction Roadway*</u>

3. Are temporary access roads necessary to access remote construction activity locations or to transport materials and equipment? (In addition to controlling dust and sediment tracking, access roads limit impact to sensitive areas by limiting ingress and provide enhanced bearing capacity.) (Coordinate with District Construction.) ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Designate these temporary access roads as stabilized construction roadways. ☐ Complete

   b. Designate as a separate contract bid item. ☐ Complete

<u>*Street Sweeping and Vacuuming*</u>

4. Is there a potential for tracked sediment or construction related residues to be transported offsite and deposited on public or private roads? (Coordinate with District Construction for preference of including street sweeping and vacuuming with tracking control BMPs.) ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Designate as a separate contract bid item. ☐ Complete

Construction Site BMPs
Checklist CS-1, Part 4

Prepared by: ________	Date: ______________________	District-Co-Route: ___________
PM: ________________	Project ID/EA: ______________	RWQCB: ___________________

Wind Erosion Controls

<u>*Wind Erosion Control*</u>

1. Is the project located in an area where standard dust control practices in accordance with Standard Specifications, Section 14-9: Dust Control, are anticipated to be inadequate during construction to prevent the transport of dust offsite by wind? *(Note: Dust control by water truck application is paid for through the various items of work. Dust palliative, if it is included, is paid for as a separate item.)* ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Select Hydraulic Mulch, Hydroseeding, Soil Binders, Geotextiles, Mats, Plastic Covers, and Erosion Control Blankets, Wood Mulching or a combination to cover the DSA subject to wind erosion year-round, especially when significant wind and dry conditions are anticipated during project construction. (Coordinate with District Construction for selection and preference of wind erosion control BMPs.) ☐ Complete

   b. Designate as a separate contract bid item. ☐ Complete

Construction Site BMPs
Checklist CS-1, Part 5

Prepared by: ________	Date: ____________________	District-Co-Route: __________
PM: ______________	Project ID/EA: ____________	RWQCB: _________________

Non-Stormwater Management

Temporary Stream Crossing & Clear Water Diversion

1. *Will construction activities occur within a water body or watercourse such as a lake, wetland, or stream? (Coordinate with District Construction for selection and preference for stream crossing and clear water diversion BMPs.)* ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Select from types offered in Temporary Stream Crossing to provide access through watercourses consistent with permits and agreements. [1] ☐ Complete

   b. Select from types offered in Clear Water Diversion to divert watercourse consistent with permits and agreements. [1] ☐ Complete

   c. Designate as a separate contract bid item(s). ☐ Complete

Other Non-Stormwater Management BMPs

2. *Are construction activities anticipated that will generate wastes or residues with the potential to discharge pollutants?* ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Identify potential pollutants associated with the anticipated construction activity and select the corresponding BMP such as Water Conservation Practices, Dewatering Operations, Paving and Grinding Operations, Potable Water/Irrigation, Vehicle and Equipment Cleaning, Vehicle and Equipment Fueling, Vehicle and Equipment Maintenance, Pile Driving Operations, Concrete Curing, Material and Equipment Use Over Water, Concrete Finishing, and Structure Demolition/Removal Over or Adjacent to Water. [1] ☐ Complete

   b. Verify that costs for non-stormwater management BMPs are identified in the contract documents. Designate BMP as a separate contract bid item if the requirements in Job Site Management *Standard Specifications* Section 13 are anticipated to be inadequate or if requested by Construction. ☐ Complete

[1] Coordinate with District Environmental for consistency with US Army Corps of Engineers 404 and 401 permits and Dept. of Fish and Game 1601 Streambed alteration Agreements.

Construction Site BMPs
Checklist CS-1, Part 6

Prepared by: ________ Date: ______________________ District-Co-Route: ___________

PM: ________________ Project ID/EA: ______________ RWQCB: ___________________

Waste Management & Materials Pollution Control

Concrete Waste Management

1. Does the project include concrete placement or mortar mixing? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Select from types offered in Concrete Waste Management to provide concrete washout facilities. In addition, consider portable concrete washouts and vendor supplied concrete waste management services. (Coordinate with District Construction for selection and preference of waste management and materials pollution control BMPs.) ☐ Complete

   b. Designate as a separate contract bid item if the quantity of concrete waste and washout are anticipated to exceed 5.2 yd3 or if requested by Construction. ☐ Complete

Other Waste Management and Materials Pollution Controls

2. Are construction activities anticipated that will generate wastes or residues with the potential to discharge pollutants? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Identify potential pollutants associated with the anticipated construction activity and select the corresponding BMP such as Material Delivery and Storage, Material Use, Spill Prevention and Control, Solid Waste Management, Hazardous Waste Management, Contaminated Soil Management, Sanitary/Septic Waste Management, and Liquid Waste Management. ☐ Complete

   b. Verify that costs for waste management and materials pollution control BMPs are identified in the contract documents. Designate BMP as a separate contract bid item if the requirements in Job Site Management Standard Specifications Section 13 are anticipated to be inadequate or if requested by Construction. ☐ Complete

Temporary Stockpiles (Soil, Materials, and Wastes)

3. Are stockpiles of soil, etc. anticipated during construction? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   a. Verify that costs for stockpile management and associated sediment control and temporary soil stabilization BMPs for temporary stockpiles are identified in the contract documents. Designate as a separate contract bid item if the requirements in Job Site Management Standard Specifications Section 13 are anticipated to be inadequate or if requested by Construction. ☐ Complete

APPENDIX D: STORMWATER DOCUMENTS, WEBSITES, AND PROCESS SUMMARY FORMS

- Relevant Stormwater Documents
- Stormwater Related Websites
- ASBS Locations
- PID Process Summary Forms
- PA/ED Process Summary Forms
- PS&E Process Summary Forms

Table D-1. Relevant Stormwater Documents and Purpose

Document	Purpose
Statewide Stormwater Management Plan (SWMP)	Policy Document that ties the functional area activities together and describes the procedures and practices to address stormwater quality statewide. It identifies how Caltrans will comply with the provisions of the National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) permit.
Storm Water Quality Handbooks: Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual	Provides instructions for the selection and implementation of Construction Site BMPs. Caltrans requires contractors to identify and utilize these BMPs in the preparation of their SWPPP or WPCP.
Erosion Prediction Procedure Manual	Describes the method established and approved by OHSD for the prediction of erosion rates before, during, and after construction of Caltrans projects to meet the erosion and sediment control requirements identified in the Caltrans Permit and CGP.
Storm Water Quality Handbooks: Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and Water Pollution Control Program (WPCP) Preparation Manual	Guides contractors and Caltrans staff through the process of preparing a SWPPP and WPCP. This manual provides detailed step-by-step procedures, instructions, examples and a template that contractors shall use to prepare the SWPPP/WPCP.
Water Quality Assessment Guidelines (WQAG) and Templates for the Water Quality Assessment Report (WQAR)	Provides guidance on preparing WQARs as well as methods for assessing stormwater quality impacts of a project in support of preparing the PA/ED.
Caltrans Project Development Procedures Manual and Guide to Project Delivery Workplan Standards	The planning and design approach described in the PPDG has been developed to fit within the appropriate Work Breakdown Structure codes found in these documents.
Caltrans NPDES Statewide Stormwater Permit	Regulates stormwater discharges from Caltrans right-of-way during and after construction, as well as from existing facilities and activities.
Construction General Permit	Permit for construction activities applicable to all stormwater discharges from projects that result in soil disturbance of at least one (1) acre.
Regional Board Water Quality Control Plans (Basin Plans)	Identifies designated beneficial uses and water quality objectives for specific jurisdictional regions.
Model Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance Guidance	Describes the requirements of different project landscape related project elements.
Project Risk Level Determination Guidance	Provides a complete methodology for determining project risk level.
Design Guidance for Final Soil Stabilization	Provides guidance in methods to document final soil stabilization, the Method Demonstration Form, and permanent erosion control strategy.
Caltrans Infiltration Tool Guidance	Provides guidance to estimate infiltration provided by specific BMPs.
Caltrans Treatment BMP Design Guidance	Provides guidance on sizing and design of approved Treatment BMPs.
Caltrans Pervious Pavement Design Guidance	Provides guidance on use and design of pervious pavement.
Caltrans Hydromodification Requirements Guidance	Describes how to perform a rapid stability assessment and describes higher level analysis.
Caltrans Highway Design Manual	Uniform policies and procedures to carry out the design functions of the Department.
Runoff Coefficient Evaluation for Volumetric BMP Sizing	Describes the Small Storm Hydrology Method and use with water quality volume calculations for the smaller Water Quality event.
Caltrans Stormwater Quality Handbook: Maintenance Staff Guide	Provides details on the use of Maintenance BMPs.
Caltrans Statewide Trash Implementation Program	Describes Caltrans' implementation approach to compliance with the statewide Trash Amendments through the implementation of trash control measures in Caltrans' STGAs throughout the state.

Table D-2. Stormwater Related Websites

Website	Description
https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/hydraulics-stormwater	Website for HQ Office of Hydraulics and Stormwater Design (OHSD) includes links to guidance, tools (Basin Sizer, WQPT), training, studies, etc.
https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/hydraulics-stormwater/treatment-bmp-design-guidance	Treatment BMP Design Guidance
https://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/stormwater/caltrans.html	Caltrans NPDES Statewide Stormwater Permit (Caltrans Permit)
https://dot.ca.gov/programs/environmental-analysis/stormwater-management-program	Caltrans Statewide Stormwater Program – HQ DEA (contains links such as SWMP, 2022 Water Quality Assessment Report Content and Recommended Format Template, Caltrans TMDL Tool)
http://www.swrcb.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/stormwater/construction.shtml	Construction General Permit (CGP)
https://dot.ca.gov/programs/construction/storm-water-and-water-pollution-control	Division of Construction – Stormwater Quality Link. Contains links to resources for developing SWPPP, WPCP, Stormwater Inspection Forms, and Construction Site Dewatering.
https://dot.ca.gov/programs/construction/storm-water-and-water-pollution-control/manuals-and-handbooks	Caltrans Construction Stormwater Quality Manuals and Handbooks
https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/manual-plans-preparation-manual-ppm	Caltrans Plans Preparation Manual
https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/ccs-standard-plans-and-standard-specifications	Caltrans Construction Contract Standards (Specifications, Plans, Standard Special Provisions (SSPs).
https://dot.ca.gov/-/media/dot-media/programs/project-management/documents/workplan_standards_guide_a11y1.pdf	Guide to Project Delivery Workplan Standards – Release 13.0
https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/manual-project-development-procedures-manual-pdpm	The Project Development Procedures Manual
http://www.epa.gov	U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
https://www.cdph.ca.gov/	California Department of Public Health (CDPH)
http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/browse/collectionCfr.action?collectionCode=CFR	Code of Federal Regulations (CFR)
https://www.sustainablehighways.dot.gov/FHWA_Sustainability_Activities_June2014.aspx	Federal Highway Administration – Sustainable Highways Initiative
https://opr.ca.gov/ceqa/	California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA)
https://dot.ca.gov/programs/environmental-analysis/standard-environmental-reference-ser/volume-1-guidance-for-compliance/ch-34-exemptions-to-ceqa	CEQA website that lists Categorical Exemptions
https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/cost-estimating-improvements	Caltrans Cost estimating guidance
http://www.water.ca.gov/waterdatalibrary/groundwater/index.cfm	Aquifer groundwater quality and seasonal groundwater levels: monitoring well data, U.S. Geological Survey (USGS), Department of Water Resources (DWR) and local public agency maps and databases.
http://www.dot.ca.gov/ser/	This website is the Standard Environmental Reference (SER) which is an online resource to help state and local agency staff plan, prepare, submit, and evaluate environmental documents for transportation projects. The site includes five Environmental Handbooks, as well as guidance, forms, templates and memos pertaining to the environmental process at Caltrans.
https://water.ca.gov/	California Department of Water Resources website that provides data regarding: Water quality; groundwater level; climatology, and surface water.
https://www.ncei.noaa.gov/products/land-based-station/us-climate-normals	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) – (climate Information such as CA monthly climate summaries)
https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/manual-highway-design-manual-hdm	Caltrans Highway Design Manual

Table D-3. ASBS Locations

Caltrans District	ASBS Number	ASBS Name	County	Route	Postmile
1	8	Redwood National Park	Del Norte	101	11.3 – 15.4
1	8	Redwood National Park	Humboldt	101	117.3 – 123.8
1	5	Saunders Reef	Mendocino	1	9.8 – 10.8
4	15	Año Nuevo	San Mateo	1	0.0 – 3.0
4	9	James V. Fitzgerald	San Mateo	1	33.8 – 36.3
5	20	Salmon Creek Coast	Monterey	1	0.0 – 4.0
5	18	Julia Pfeiffer Burns	Monterey	1	35.0 – 38.0
5	16	Point Lobos	Monterey	1	70.0 – 71.0
5	34	Carmel Bay	Monterey	1	71.0 – 75.5
7	24	Laguna Point to Latigo Point	Ventura	1	0.0 – 11.0
7	24	Laguna Point to Latigo Point	Los Angeles	1	50.0 – 63.0
12	33	Irvine Coast (Crystal Cove)	Orange	1	12.0 – 15.0

Table D-4. Summary of Stormwater Activities for Project Initiation Document (PID)

Work Breakdown Structure (WBS) Code	Activity	Stormwater Quality Planning Activity During the PID Phase	Date(s) Completed	Completed By
100.05	Project Management – PID Process	Invite District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator and District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to project kickoff meeting and to participate in the Project Development Team (PDT).		
100.05.10	PDT meetings	The PDT should meet throughout the entire project in order to maintain communication and to obtain consensus between the functional units throughout the project. Any decisions made during the PDT meetings should be documented.		
150.05.05	Site Data Sources	Complete Checklist SW-1 (Site Data Sources) From Section 4, determine if project is required to consider incorporating Treatment BMPs. • Complete Evaluation Documentation Form (Appendix E). • If the project is not required to consider Treatment BMPs, verify with District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator. Continue with the PID process with the selection of Design Pollution Prevention and Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs). • If the project is required to consider Treatment BMPs, select Treatment, Design Pollution Prevention and Construction Site BMPs.		
150.05.20	Define Stormwater Design Issues	Obtain any existing available data. After obtaining existing data and selecting project alternatives, determine potential stormwater quality impacts and issues. Obtain additional data from the different functional units. • Complete Checklist SW-2 (Stormwater Quality Issues Summary) Perform Field Review of the Area Begin Filling out the Stormwater Data Report (SWDR). Coordinate with District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to identify potential water quality impacts. Coordinate with Environmental Unit during preparation of the PEAR. Evaluate options for avoiding or reducing potential impacts. Begin to fill out Checklist SW-3, Measures for Avoiding or Reducing Potential Stormwater Impacts.		
150.10	Identify Potential BMPs	Determine Potential/Likely BMPs for each site of impact to receiving waters. • Complete Checklist DPP-1 (including all applicable parts 1-5) and T-1 (including all applicable parts 1-11) for selecting BMPs at specific sites.		

Work Breakdown Structure (WBS) Code	Activity	Stormwater Quality Planning Activity During the PID Phase	Date(s) Completed	Completed By
150.10.05	RWQCB Meetings	Consultation with the Regional Water Quality Control Board (RWQCB) is strongly recommended to coordinate project issues and develop consensus for controversial or complex stormwater quality issues. Initiate meetings with the RWQCB as necessary. Number of coordination meetings is entirely dependent upon the complexity of the stormwater quality issues, stormwater pollutants involved, and project site constraints. District/Regional NPDES Coordinator serves as the single point of contact with the RWQCB.		
150.15	Analyze Project Alternatives	Discuss BMPs with District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator, Landscape Architecture and District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator.		
150.15.55	Project Planning Cost Estimate (PPCE)	Develop preliminary BMP costs and incorporate into the PID cost estimate. Evaluate for Construction Site BMP costs. • Refer to cost estimating procedure in Appendix F. • Meet with Construction to obtain concurrence with the Construction Site BMP strategy – cost estimate.		
150.25.25	Stormwater Data Report (SWDR)	Route SWDR for functional units' signature. Coordinate with the Environmental Unit. Complete the SWDR using available data.		
150.25	Prepare and Approve PID	Incorporate "Stormwater Pollution Prevention Discussion" under "Considerations" heading of the planning document.		
150.25.20	Circulate, Review, and Approve PID	Attach signed SWDR cover sheet to PID and circulate to obtain functional unit concurrence. Original copy of SWDR should be kept in the project file.		

Table D-5. Summary of Stormwater Activities for Project Approval/Environmental Document (PA/ED)

WBS Code	Activity	Stormwater Quality Planning Activity During the PA/ED Phase	Date(s) Completed	Completed By
100.10	Project Management Process (PA/ED)	Invite District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator and District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to project kickoff meeting and to participate in the PDT.		
100.10.10	PDT meetings	The PDT should meet throughout the entire project in order to maintain communication and to obtain consensus between the functional units throughout the project. Any decisions made during the PDT meetings should be documented.		
160.05	Review and Update Project Information	Confirm whether or not the project is required to consider incorporating Treatment BMPs for the preferred alternative. • Complete/Update Evaluation Documentation Form (Appendix E). • If the project is not required to consider Treatment BMPs, verify with District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator. Continue with selection of Design Pollution Prevention and Construction Site BMPs. • If the project is required to consider Treatment BMPs, select Treatment, Design Pollution Prevention, and Construction Site BMPs. Review Information Developed in the PID Process. Determine potential stormwater quality impacts and issues for project alternatives. Obtain updated data and reports from the different functional units. • Update Checklist SW-1 (Site Data Sources) • Update Checklist SW-2 (Stormwater Quality Issues Summary). Consult with Environmental Unit to coordinate the PA/ED Phase – SWDR with the WQAR prepared by Environmental (WBS 165.10.35). Perform Field Review of the Area. Update SWDR. • Evaluate options for avoiding or reducing potential impacts. Update Checklist SW-3, Measures for Avoiding or Reducing Potential Stormwater Impacts.		

WBS Code	Activity	Stormwater Quality Planning Activity During the PA/ED Phase	Date(s) Completed	Completed By
160.10	Revise Potential BMP Selections Based on Engineering Studies	Select Potential/Likely BMPs for each site of unavoidable impact to receiving waters. • Complete Checklist DPP-1 (including all applicable parts 1-5) and T-1 (including all applicable parts 1-11) for selecting BMPs at specific sites. Coordinate with Environmental Unit to coordinate the PA/ED – Phase SWDR with the WQAR prepared by Environmental. Discuss BMPs with District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator, Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator, and other functional units (e.g., Hydraulics, LA) to obtain concurrence. Evaluate potential Construction Site BMPs. • See Construction Site BMPs Manual. • Meet with District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to discuss BMPs for project required by RWQCB or other agency. • Meet with Construction to obtain concurrence with the Construction Site BMP strategy.		
165.10.35	RWQCB Meetings	Consult with the RWQCB to coordinate project issues and develop consensus for controversial or complex stormwater quality issues. Initiate meetings with the RWQCB through the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator as necessary. The number of coordination meetings is entirely dependent upon the complexity of the stormwater quality issues, stormwater pollutants involved, and project site constraints.		
160.15	Prepare Draft Project Report (DPR)	Incorporate "Stormwater Pollution Prevention Discussion" under "Considerations" heading of the planning document. (This is done only if the project does not have categorical exemption and has an Environmental Document (ED))		
180.05.15	Stormwater Data Report (SWDR)	Coordinate with the Environmental Unit. Complete the SWDR using available data. Route SWDR for functional units' signature.		
160.15.05	Update Project Planning Cost Estimates	Develop preliminary BMP costs and incorporate into PA/ED cost estimate.		
180.05.05	Prepare and Approve Project Report (PR)	Attach signed SWDR cover sheet to PR and circulate to obtain functional unit concurrence. Original copy of SWDR should be kept in the project file.		

Table D-6. Summary of Stormwater Activities for Plans, Specifications & Estimates (PS&E)

WBS Code	Activity	Stormwater Quality Planning Activity During the PS&E Phase	Date(s) Completed	Completed By
100.15	Project Management Process (PS&E)	Invite District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator and District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to project kickoff meeting and to participate in the PDT.		
100.15.10	PDT Meetings	The PDT should meet throughout the entire project in order to maintain communication and to obtain consensus between the functional units throughout the project. Any decisions made during the PDT meetings should be documented.		
205.10.40	RWQCB Meetings	Consult with the RWQCB to coordinate project issues and develop consensus for controversial or complex stormwater quality issues. Initiate meetings with the RWQCB through the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator as necessary. The number of coordination meetings is entirely dependent upon the complexity of the stormwater quality issues, stormwater pollutants involved, and project site constraints.		
185.05	Review and update project information	Review Information Developed in the PID and PA/ED Process. • Update Checklist SW-1 (Site Data Sources) • Update Checklist SW-2 (Stormwater Quality Issues Summary) Consult with Environmental Unit to obtain permits. Perform Field Review of the Area. Review and Update the SWDR; if a WQAR is prepared for the project, reference the WQAR findings. Evaluate options for avoiding or reducing potential impacts. Update Checklist SW-3, Measures for Avoiding or Reducing Potential Stormwater Impacts.		
185.15	Perform Preliminary Design	Perform Preliminary Design. • Delineate drainage areas and total disturbed area. • Review and update need to consider Treatment BMPs. • Obtain Engineering Reports, WBS 185.20, from the different functional units.		
205.00	Obtain Necessary Permits, WDRs and Agreements	Obtain NPDES Stormwater Permits and Local Agency Agreements. • File Notice of Intent (NOI) for coverage under the Caltrans Permit. • Obtain Waste Discharge Requirement (WDR) for Aerially Deposited Lead (ADL) reuses. • Coverage for dewatering activities under separate NPDES permit. Contact your District/Regional NPDES Coordinator. • Obtain other agreements with RWQCB and other agencies.		

WBS Code	Activity	Stormwater Quality Planning Activity During the PS&E Phase	Date(s) Completed	Completed By
230.00 230.35 230.40	Prepare Draft PS&E – Design Pollution Prevention BMPs	Prepare Draft PS&E – Design Pollution Prevention BMPs. • Update Checklist DPP-1 (and all applicable Parts 2-5) • Incorporate Design Pollution Prevention BMPs in all applicable plans, specifications, and estimates. • Review with District Landscape Architect and District Maintenance as necessary. • Calculate quantities, estimates, and prepare Standard Special Provisions (SSPs).		
230.00 230.35 230.40	Prepare Draft PS&E – Treatment BMPs	Prepare Draft PS&E – Design Treatment BMPs. • Update Checklist T-1, Part 1 • Update all applicable Checklist T-1, Parts 2-11 • Incorporate Treatment BMPs in all applicable plans, specifications, and estimates. • Hydraulics to design or review design as per HDM requirements. • Review Treatment BMPs and future maintenance with District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator and Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator. • Calculate quantities, estimates, and prepare SSPs.		
230.00 230.35 230.40	Prepare Draft PS&E – Construction Site BMPs	Prepare Draft PS&E – Construction Site BMPs. • Review Appendix C of the PPDG and the Construction Site BMP Manual. • Complete Construction Site BMPs Consideration Form and respective Checklists CS-1, Parts 1-6 • Meet with District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to discuss BMPs for project required by RWQCB or other agency. • Meet with Construction on inclusion of Construction Site BMPs. • Calculate quantities, estimates, and prepare SSPs.		
230.60.05	Stormwater Data Report	Complete and stamp SWDR. Route for functional unit concurrence.		
255.20	Prepare Final District PS&E Package	Attach signed SWDR cover sheet for the PS&E package and obtain functional unit signature. Original copy of the SWDR should be kept in the project file.		
255.40	Prepare RE File	Submit a signed copy of the SWDR to Resident Engineer (RE) File. Consult with Design and Construction Stormwater Coordinators for materials to include in the Stormwater Information Handout or RE File.		

Table D-7. Summary of Stormwater Activities During Construction

WBS Code	Activity	Stormwater Quality Planning Activity During the PS&E Phase	Date(s) Completed	Completed By
280.00 280.10 280.40 280.50 280.60 280.70 280.75 280.80	Admin of PLACs & Environ Stewardship	PLAC Compliance PLAC Violation Other Environmental Compliance Other Environmental Violations Updated Environmental Commitments Record Environmental Reevaluation Updated PLACs		

APPENDIX E: STORMWATER DATA REPORT AND CHECKLISTS

- Stormwater Data Report Instructions
- Micro Form – Stormwater Data Report Template
- PID (PIR) Short Form – Stormwater Data Report Template
- PID (PIR) Long Form – Stormwater Data Report Template
- Short Form – Stormwater Data Report Template
- Long Form – Stormwater Data Report Template
- Evaluation Documentation Form
- SWDR Attachment for SMARTS Input
- Checklist SW-1, Site Data Sources
- Checklist T-1, Part 1 (Treatment BMPs)
- Checklist SW-2, Stormwater Quality Issues Summary
- Checklist SW-3, Measures for Avoiding or Reducing Stormwater Impacts

E.1 Stormwater Data Report Instructions

There are five types of SWDRs including a Micro Form, a Short Form, and a Long Form. Additionally, a PID Project Initiation Report (PIR) Short Form SWDR and PID (PIR) Long Form SWDR have been developed to minimize the resources required for SWDR development at the PID phase. The PID (PIR) SWDR is only used at PID stage and is then converted to a standard Short or Long Form SWDR as appropriate at the PA/ED project phase.

Depending upon the extent of soil disturbance and degree of stormwater impacts, the Micro Form, Short Form, or Long Form SWDR shall be required. Projects that do not have the potential to create stormwater impacts and have little or no soil disturbance may utilize the Short Form or "Micro" SWDR. The District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator makes the final decision on the type of form to use. A Short Form or Micro SWDR may be appropriate for (but not limited to) the following types of projects:

- Signing and striping projects;
- Weigh-in-motion projects;
- Traffic monitoring projects (closed-circuit camera installation, etc.);
- Construction of ADA ramps;
- Bridge rail projects;
- Chip seal and/or fog seal projects;
- Pavement marker projects (raised or depressed);
- Metal Beam Guardrail Projects;
- Loop detector installations;
- Median Barrier Projects;
- Extended plant establishment projects and other planting projects;
- Emergency projects[1] using informal bids (as defined per PDPM);
- Building remodeling or refurbishment such as painting, tile, or plumbing repair;
- Small Maintenance Projects (CEQA exempt);
- Approach Slab Replacement;
- Paint Striping;
- Overlay existing and shoulder backing;
- Utility trenches;
- Cold Plane and Resurfacing;
- Micro surfacing;
- Culvert Lining (without CWA 404/401); and
- Culvert Replacement (without CWA 404/401).

[1] Note that an Emergency Project done under Force Account does not require a SWDR.

E.2 Micro Form – Stormwater Data Report Template

Micro Stormwater Data Report

Date:	
Proj ID (EA):	
Dist/Co/Rte/PM:	
Nickname:	
Regional Board	
SWPPP/WPCP	
DSA	
NNI	
401 Cert (Y/N)	
Other Location Specific Permit	

Project Phase: PID PA&ED PSE Help

Begin Constructon Date: End Construction Date:

WORK DESCRIPTION: (please provide full scope of project in detail)

Describe changes in impervious area or drainage.

Use the dropdown menu on the cell to validate the statements below.

1	No	The project is exempt from treatment BMP consideration in accordance with the attached Evaluation Documentation Form.
2	No	The proposed project will not add or replace any impervious area excluding pedestrian and/or bicycle facilities.
3	No	The project is eligible for a Water Quality Assessment Exemption or the WQAR identifies no permits or permanent water quality concerns.

Comments:

Based on the information provided above the project does not have any stormwater impacts and does not trigger water quality treatment requirements of the 2023 CT MS4 Permit.
The project is exempt from preparing a full Stormwater Data Report for the phase(s) entered above.
This exemption is only valid for the scope of work and project phase described above.
Complete the Evaluation Documentation Form (EDF) and attached it to this exemption for the project records.

Typed Name: Date
Signature - Project Engineer

Typed Name:
Signature - Regional SW Coordinator or Designee Date

E.3 PID (PIR) Short Form – Stormwater Data Report Template

Dist-County-Route:
*Post Mile Limits:*____
*Project Type:*____
*Project ID (EA):*_______________________________________

Phase: ☐ *PID (PIR)*

Regional Water Quality Control Board(s):____

1.	Does the project disturb 5 or more acres of soil?	Yes ☐	No ☐
2.	Does the project disturb 1 or more acres of soil and not qualify for the Rainfall Erosivity Waiver?	Yes ☐	No ☐
3.	Is the project required to implement Treatment BMPs?	Yes ☐	No ☐
4.	Does the project impact existing Treatment BMPs?	Yes ☐	No ☐

If the answer to any of the preceding questions is "Yes", prepare a Long Form – Stormwater Data Report. Unless otherwise agreed upon by the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

Total Disturbed Soil Area:____________________ New Impervious Surface:____________________
Estimated Const. Start Date:__________________ Estimated Const. Completion Date:____________

This Short Form – Stormwater Data Report has been prepared under the direction of the following Licensed Person. The Licensed Person attests to the technical information contained herein and the data upon which recommendations, conclusions, and decisions are based. Professional Engineer or Landscape Architect stamp required at PS&E only.

____

[Name], Registered Project Engineer/Landscape Architect *Date*

I have reviewed the stormwater quality design issues and find this report to be complete, current, and accurate:

[Stamp Required at PS&E only]

____

[Name], District/Regional Design SW Coordinator or Designee *Date*

1. Project Description

- State "Used [add document used (i.e., PRELIMINARY ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS REPORT (PEAR))] for Project Description Information to complete the SWDR." Or, may cut/paste information.

2. Site Data and Stormwater Quality Design Issues

- Only include items of work that can impact scope, schedule and cost of project for construction site or permanent BMPs identified outside the typical cost estimates provided in Section 3 and Section 6 (e.g., retaining walls, slope protection systems and may require additional right of way, etc…). These additional cost items should be identified in Section 3 and 6.
- Provide any additional information that may be pertinent to the project (e.g., Clean Water Act, Section 401 – Water Quality Certification) only if additional items of work can be identified.

3. Construction Site BMPs

- Refer to PIR SWDR Example Guide how to incorporate Risk Level Determination
- Identify any right of way needs for construction site BMP placement. Right of Way Data Sheets require preparing right of way cost estimates and cost estimate maps
- Provide estimate information. The following language should be used: Project specific BMP measures will be specified and quantified during later phases of the project. Temporary construction BMPs have been estimated at (__%) of the total project cost ($____) in accordance with the Project Initiation Cost Estimate Method, Appendix F.3.1, 2017 PPDG.
- Identify, describe and estimate additional costs for construction site BMPs that can impact scope, schedule and costs of project items not included in the above estimate (e.g., dewatering needs, temporary creek or clear water diversion placement and design, and active treatment systems). Coordinate with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

Required Attachments[1]

- Evaluation Documentation Form

[1] Additional attachments may be required as applicable or directed by the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator (e.g., BMP line item estimate, SW, DPP, and CS Checklists).

E.4 PID (PIR) Long Form – Stormwater Data Report Template

Dist-County-Route:________________________________
Post Mile Limits:________________________________
Type of Work:________________________________
Project ID (EA):________________________________

Phase: ☐ PID (PIR)

Regional Water Quality Control Board(s):________________________________

Total Disturbed Soil Area:________________ PCTA:________________________

Estimated Const. Start Date:______________ Estimated Const. Completion Date:__________

Is the Project within a TMDL watershed? Yes ☐ No ☐

This Report has been prepared under the direction of the following Licensed Person. The Licensed Person attests to the technical information contained herein and the date upon which recommendations, conclusions, and decisions are based. Professional Engineer or Landscape Architect stamp required at PS&E only.

____
[Name], Registered Project Engineer/Landscape Architect Date

I have reviewed the stormwater quality design issues and find this report to be complete, current and accurate:

[Stamp Required at PS&E only] ____________________________________
[Name], District/Regional Design SW Coordinator or Designee Date

1. Project Description

- State "Used [add document used (i.e., PRELIMINARY ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS REPORT (PEAR))] for Project Description Information to complete the SWDR." Or, may cut/paste information.
- Include NNI, RIS and ATA values for inputs into the Stormwater Portal to calculate PCTA shown on page 1. It is appropriate to use 0 for ATA (Conditions 1 and 2) for this phase of the project. The Stormwater Portal can then calculate PCTA.

2. Site Data and Stormwater Quality Design Issues

- Only include items of work that can impact scope, schedule and cost of project for construction site or permanent BMPs identified outside the typical cost estimates provided in Section 3 and Section 6 (e.g., retaining walls, slope protection systems and may require additional right of way, etc.) These additional cost items should be identified in Section 3 and 6.
- Provide any additional information that may be pertinent to the project (e.g., Clean Water Act, Section 401 - Water Quality Certification) only if additional items of work can be identified.

3. Construction Site BMPs to be used on Project

- Refer to PIR SWDR Example Guide how to incorporate Risk Level Determination
- Identify any right of way needs for construction site BMP placement. Right of Way Data Sheets require preparing right of way cost estimates and cost estimate maps
- Provide estimate information. The following language should be used: Project specific BMP measures will be specified and quantified during later phases of the project. Temporary construction BMPs have been estimated at (__%) of the total project cost ($____) in accordance with the Project Initiation Cost Estimate Method, Appendix F.3.1, 2017 PPDG.
- Identify, describe and estimate additional costs for construction site BMPs that can impact scope, schedule and costs of project items not included in the above estimate (e.g., dewatering needs, temporary creek or clear water diversion placement and design, and active treatment systems). Coordinate with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

4. Maintenance BMPs

- State "not applicable"

5. Other Water Quality Requirements and Agreements

- State "not applicable" unless coordination that can impact scope, schedule and costs of project for construction site or permanent BMPs occurred then complete this section. Coordinate with the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator.

6. Permanent BMPs

- Permanent BMPs are strategies and measures to minimize and avoid water quality impacts in the post construction condition. Permanent BMPs include Design Pollution Prevention and Treatment BMP strategies.

Rapid Stability Assessment

- Document Rapid Stability Assessment
  - The number of RSAs will be determined during PA/ED and if required, requested from the District Hydraulics Unit.
- Any additional work proposed for the project due to a higher level analysis will be determined at PA/ED.

Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) BMP Strategy

Complete this section if DPP BMPs are proposed for the Project. *Implementation of DPP BMPs is required for all projects; however, if the PE determines that the DPP BMP strategy does not necessitate a detailed discussion, state not applicable.*

- Determine if there is a potential for the project to create permanent water quality impacts
  - Determine if steep slopes will be created or disturbed. If so, describe any advanced erosion control needs. Add costs to estimate.
- Identify any right of way needs for DPP BMP placement. Right of Way Data Sheets require preparing right of way cost estimates and cost estimate maps

Treatment BMP Strategy

Complete this section to document Treatment BMPs and credits; otherwise, state not applicable.

- Include the estimated costs for treatment BMPs. The following language should be used: Project specific treatment BMP measures will be specified and quantified during later phases of the project. Treatment BMPs have been estimated at $_____ per lane mile (___ lane miles estimated) in accordance with the Project Initiation Cost Estimate Method, Appendix F.3.1, 2017 PPDG.

Required Attachments (see 6.4.8)

- Evaluation Documentation Form (EDF) (see E-10)

E.5 Short Form - Stormwater Data Report Template

Dist-County-Route:____
Post Mile Limits:____
Project Type:____
Project ID (EA):____

Phase: ☐ PID ☐ PA/ED ☐ PS&E

Regional Water Quality Control Board(s):____

1.	Does the project disturb 5 or more acres of soil?	Yes ☐	No ☐
2.	Does the project disturb 1 or more acres of soil and not qualify for the Rainfall Erosivity Waiver?	Yes ☐	No ☐
3.	Is the project required to implement Treatment BMPs?	Yes ☐	No ☐
4.	Does the project impact existing Treatment BMPs?	Yes ☐	No ☐

If the answer to any of the preceding questions is "Yes", prepare a Long Form – Stormwater Data Report. Unless otherwise agreed upon by the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

Applicable Caltrans Permit Post Construction Treatment Requirement: 2012 ☐ 2022 ☐
Total Disturbed Soil Area:____________________ New Impervious Surface:____________________
Estimated Const. Start Date:__________________ Estimated Const. Completion Date:

Risk Level: RL 1 ☐ RL 2 ☐ RL 3 ☐ Not Applicable ☐
Is (M)WELO applicable? Yes ☐ No ☐

This Short Form – Stormwater Data Report has been prepared under the direction of the following Licensed Person. The Licensed Person attests to the technical information contained herein and the data upon which recommendations, conclusions, and decisions are based. Professional Engineer or Landscape Architect stamp required at PS&E only.

____
[Name], Registered Project Engineer/Landscape Architect *Date*

I have reviewed the stormwater quality design issues and find this report to be complete, current, and accurate:

[Stamp Required at PS&E only]

____
[Name], District/Regional Design SW Coordinator or Designee *Date*

1. Project Description

- Clearly describe the type of project and major engineering features.
- Describe how the following values were calculated:
  - Total disturbed soil area (DSA)
  - New impervious surface (NIS)
    - Net New Impervious (NNI)
    - Replaced impervious surface (RIS)

2. Site Data and Stormwater Quality Design Issues

- Provide any additional information that may be pertinent to the project (e.g., Receiving Water, TMDLs, Drinking Water Reservoirs and/or Recharge Facilities, 303(d) water bodies, 401 Certifications, ASBS).

3. Construction Site BMPs

- Briefly describe the Construction Site BMP strategy and include any pertinent details used for the implementation of Construction Site BMPs (e.g., specific project conditions, construction operations) and monitoring.
- Identify project risk level if project is subject to the CGP.
- Provide estimate information (see Section 6.4.4)
- Document the coordination effort to get concurrence from Construction regarding the Construction Site BMP strategy and associated quantities (provide names of staff and date of concurrence; required at PS&E only.)

Required Attachments[1]

- Vicinity Map
- Evaluation Documentation Form
- Risk Level Determination Documentation (if applicable).
- SWDR Attachment for SMARTS Input (required at PS&E only if CGP is applicable) Construction BMP Estimate (for internal Caltrans use only) (at PS&E only)

[1] Additional attachments may be required as applicable or directed by the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator (e.g., BMP line item estimate, SW, DPP, and CS Checklists).

E.6 Long Form – Stormwater Data Report Template

Dist-County-Route:____________________________________

Post Mile Limits:____________________________________

Type of Work:____________________________________

Project ID (EA):____________________________________

Phase: ☐ PID ☐ PA/ED ☐ PS&E

Applicable Caltrans Post Construction Treatment Requirement: 2012 ☐ 2022 ☐

Regional Water Quality Control Board(s):________________________________

Total Disturbed Soil Area:________________ PCTA:________________________

Alternative Compliance (acres):____________ ATA 2 (50% Rule)? Yes ☐ No ☐

Estimated Const. Start Date:____________ Estimated Const. Completion Date:__________

Risk Level: RL 1 ☐ RL 2 ☐ RL 3 ☐ WPCP ☐ Other: ____________

Is (M)WELO applicable? Yes ☐ No ☐

Is the Project within a TMDL watershed? Yes ☐ No ☐

Does the project require trash treatment? Yes ☐ No ☐

Notification of ADL reuse (if yes, provide date): Yes ☐ Date:____________ No ☐

This Report has been prepared under the direction of the following Licensed Person. The Licensed Person attests to the technical information contained herein and the date upon which recommendations, conclusions, and decisions are based. Professional Engineer or Landscape Architect stamp required at PS&E only.

____

[Name], Registered Project Engineer/Landscape Architect Date

I have reviewed the stormwater quality design issues and find this report to be complete, current and accurate:

____

[Name], Project Manager *Date*

____

[Name], District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator *Date*

____

[Name], Designated Landscape Architect Representative *Date*

____

[Stamp Required at PS&E only]

[Name], District/Regional Design SW Coordinator or Designee *Date*

1. Project Description

- Clearly describe the type of project and major engineering features.
- Describe how the following values were calculated:
  - Total disturbed soil area (DSA)
  - New impervious surface (NIS)
    - Net New Impervious (NNI)
    - Replaced impervious surface (RIS)
  - PCTA
    - Determine if NNI is greater than 50% of the post project impervious area
    - Determine if existing Treatment BMPs are to be removed or modified as part of the project
- Document if Treatment BMPs are required or being incorporated to address TMDLs, and others.

2. Site Data and Stormwater Quality Design Issues

Complete this section for all Projects. *Project Engineer (PE) should confer with District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator, Landscape Architecture, Maintenance, Hydraulics, Construction and Environmental Unit to assist in defining design issues.*

- Use source documents identified on Checklist SW-1 to briefly discuss applicable items listed on Checklists SW-2 and SW-3.
- Other information.

3. Construction Site BMPs to be used on Project

Complete this section for all Projects.

- Refer to Section 6.4.4 for typical Construction Site BMP information to be documented in this section.
- Identify project risk level or summarize why project is exempt from Construction General Permit requirements.
- Checklist CS-1, Parts 1 – 6 can be used to provide general guidance for consideration of Construction Site BMPs to be used for the project.
- Briefly describe the Construction Site BMP strategy and include any pertinent details used for the implementation of Construction Site BMPs (e.g., specific project conditions, construction operations).
- Identify and describe as applicable:
  - Dewatering needs and requirements. Will a separate dewatering permit be needed?
  - Temporary creek or clear water diversion placement and design.
  - Active treatment systems (ATS) for stormwater or non-stormwater.
- Provide estimate information (see Section 6.4.4)
- Document the coordination effort to get concurrence from Construction regarding the Construction Site BMP strategy and estimate (provide names of staff and date of concurrence; required at PS&E only; recommended at all phases).

4. Maintenance BMPs

Complete this section or state not applicable. *Coordinate Maintenance BMP efforts with the District Maintenance Staff to determine if Maintenance BMPs are needed.*

- A typical Maintenance BMP related to stormwater quality that should be considered is drainage inlet stenciling. If used, briefly describe locations where drain inlet stenciling is required and include any specific stencil types other than Caltrans standard.
- Describe features to assist with maintaining BMPs; these may include maintenance vehicle pullouts, access gates and roads, and maintenance worker safety features. Briefly describe type and locations.

5. Other Water Quality Requirements and Agreements

Complete this section or state not applicable as directed by the District/Regional National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Coordinator.

- Summarize any key negotiated understandings or agreements with RWQCB and other permitting agencies pertaining to this project.
- Document any specific meeting dates and contact names that reference the negotiated understandings and/or agreements.
- Identify any special requirements or conditions (e.g., inspections, monitoring, or reporting) from the PLACs related to stormwater and water quality, if available.

6. Permanent BMPs

Permanent BMPs are strategies and measures to minimize and avoid water quality impacts in the post construction condition. Permanent BMPs include Design Pollution Prevention and Treatment BMP strategies.

Rapid Stability Assessment

Complete this section if a Rapid Stability Assessment (RSA) is required.

- Document the number of crossings requiring an RSA and list any crossings that required a higher level analyses (Level 1-3).
- Describe any additional work proposed for the project due to the higher level analysis.

Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) BMP Strategy

Complete this section if DPP BMPs are proposed for the Project. *Implementation of DPP BMPs is required for all projects; however, if the PE determines that the DPP BMP strategy does not necessitate a detailed discussion, state not applicable.*

- Refer to Section 6.4.7.2 for typical DPP BMP information to be documented in this section.
- Refer to Checklist DPP-1, Part 1 for general determination of whether DPP BMPs should be considered for the project.
- Checklist DPP-1, Parts 2 - 5 can be used to provide general guidance for consideration of DPP BMPs to be used for the project.
- Describe DPP BMP strategy to avoid or minimize permanent water quality impacts.

Treatment BMP Strategy

Complete this section to document Treatment BMPs and credits; otherwise, state not applicable.

- Refer to Section 6.4.7.3 for typical Treatment BMP information to be documented in this section.
- Summarize the findings from Checklist T-1, Part 1.
- Summarize pertinent Feasibility and Design Elements responses to Checklist T-1, Parts 2-11 in a short narrative. **Only discuss Treatment BMP types considered for the project.**
- Provide a list of all Treatment BMPs being incorporated into the project. (see Table E-2)
- Describe how Alternative Compliance is being applied to the project or how the Post Construction Treatment Balance is being documented.
- Discuss any pertinent information related to design elements used to meet provisions of the TMDL Compliance Plan.
- At PS&E provide a cost for each Treatment BMP that is being used for post construction treatment or Alternative Compliance. These costs are documented in the SWDR Summary Spreadsheets and/or Stormwater Portal (Required at PS&E). These costs are for internal Caltrans use only.
- At PID and PA/ED based on the estimating method used (see F.3.1) provide a Treatment BMP estimate for Treatment BMPs that are being used for post construction treatment or Alternative Compliance. Any costs provided are for Caltrans internal use only.

Complete the following table if treatment is required for the project.

Table E-1. Overall Project Treatment Summary Table [1]

	PCTA (ac)[2]	A
Total Area to be Treated	Treated Impervious Area (CT RW) (ac)	B
	Treated Impervious Area (Outside CT RW) (ac)[3]	C
	PCTA Balance (ac)[4]	D = (B+C) – A

[1] This table is provided as an example. The table may be edited, altered, or removed as applicable or as directed by the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator.

[2] Provide treatment for ATA 1 even if NIS is less than 10,000 ft^2.

[3] Requires RWQCB approval. Coordinate with District/Regional NPDES Coordinator.

[4] If less than 0, additional treatment must be identified.

Required Attachments (see 6.4.8)

- Vicinity Map (see 6.4.8.1)
- Evaluation Documentation Form (EDF) (see E-10)
- SWDR Summary Spreadsheets (TMT Tab required at PS&E only)
- Risk Level Determination Documentation (if applicable) (see 6.4.4.2)
- RUSLE2 Summary Sheet, as applicable (required at PS&E only)
- SWDR Attachment for SMARTS Input (required at PS&E only if CGP is applicable) (see E-11)
- Construction BMP Estimate (for internal Caltrans use only) (at PS&E only) (see 6.4.4)

Supplemental Attachments

Note: Supplemental Attachments are to be supplied during the SWDR approval process when requested; where noted, some of these items may only be requested on a project-specific basis.

- Checklist SW-1, Site Data Sources (see E-14, 6.4.3.1)
- Checklist T-1, Part 1 (Treatment BMPs), if applicable (see E-15)
- Estimate Support Information for Construction Site, DPP, and/or Treatment BMPs, electronic copies accepted (Costs are for Caltrans internal use only)
- Calculations and supporting information for sizing Treatment BMPs or DPP BMPs or claiming post construction treatment for Alternative Compliance (contact the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator for expected method of documentation), if applicable
- Plans showing BMP deployment (e.g., Layout Sheets, Drainage Sheets, Water Pollution Control Sheets) (if requested by District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator), if applicable
- Method Demonstration Form (if prepared) (see 6.4.7.4)
- Documentation of Rapid Stability Assessment findings, including any higher level evaluation, if required (see 1.4.2.1)
- Locally required WELO calculations and forms or MWELO Excel Worksheet, if applicable (see 6.4.7.5)
- Checklist SW-2, Stormwater Quality Issues Summary (see 6.4.3.1)
- Checklist SW-3, Measures for Avoiding or Reducing Potential Stormwater Impacts (see 6.4.3.1)
- Checklist DPP-1, Parts 1–5 (Design Pollution Prevention BMPs) (see Appendix A)
- Checklist T-1, Part 2–11 (Treatment BMPs) (see Appendix B)
- Construction Site BMP Consideration Form (see Appendix C)
- Checklist CS-1, Parts 1–6 (Construction Site BMPs) (see Appendix C)

E.7 Evaluation Documentation Form

DATE: ____________________

Project ID (EA): ____________________

No.	Criteria	Yes ✓	No ✓	Supplemental Information for Evaluation
1.	Begin Project evaluation regarding requirement for implementation of Treatment BMPs	✓		Continue to 2.
2.	Is the scope of the Project to install Treatment BMPs (e.g., Alternative Compliance or TMDL requirement)?			If **Yes**, go to 8. If **No**, continue to 3.
3.	Is there a direct or indirect discharge to surface waters?			If **Yes**, continue to 4. If **No**, go to 9.
4.	As defined in the WQAR or ED, does the project: a. discharge to Areas of Special Biological Significance (ASBS), or			If **Yes to any**, contact the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator or District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to discuss the Department's obligations, go to 8 or 5. ________*(Dist./Reg. Coordinator initials*) If **No** to all, continue to 5.
	b. discharge to a TMDL watershed where Caltrans is named stakeholder, or			
	c. have other pollution control requirements for surface waters within the project limits (e.g. STGA)?			
5.	Are any existing Treatment BMPs partially or completely removed? (ATA Condition 1, Section 4.3.1)			If **Yes**, go to 8 **AND** continue to 6. If **No**, continue to 6.
6.	Is this a Routine Maintenance Project?			If **Yes**, go to 9. If **No**, continue to 7.
7.	Does the project result in an increase of <u>10,000 ft² or more</u> of new impervious surface (NIS)?			If **Yes**, go to 8. If **No**, go to 9.
8.	Project is required to implement Treatment BMPs.	Complete Checklist T-1, Part 1.		
9.	Project is not required to implement Treatment BMPs. ______ *(Dist./Reg. Design SW Coord. Initials)* ______ *(Project Engineer Initials)* ____________ *(Date)*	Document for Project Files by completing this form and attaching it to the SWDR.		

E.8 SWDR Attachment for SMARTS Input

Design Information For Construction

The following information is based on the PS&E design plans and specifications. If contract amendments or change orders are made after the design is complete, then the information should be updated by construction, as appropriate.

Project ID (EA): ______

Enter the following data into the CGP SMARTS Notice of Intent-Site Information page.

1. **Total site size** (acres); for project area use Caltrans RW x post mile limits (begin-end) on plan sheets.

   Total site size ______ acres

2. Enter **latitude and longitude** in decimal degrees to 5 significant figures. Use a location from the center of the project. This information can be obtained from Survey information, GPS units, Google earth, CT Earth, or other mapping software.

   Latitude: ___________

   Longitude: __________

3. **Total Area to be Disturbed** (total Disturbed Soil Area (DSA)): This information is already calculated and can be taken from SWDR Section 1. Describe in acres.

   DSA ________________ acres

4. **Imperviousness before Construction (percentage)** - This is calculated as the total impervious area of the project area divided by the total project area (see total site size), multiplied by 100. The impervious area is all paved areas or hard surfaces within the project limits.

   Impervious area before construction % ________

5. **Percent of total disturbed (percentage)**; This should be calculated by dividing the total disturbed soil area by the total project area and multiply by 100.

   Percent of Total Disturbed Area % ______

6. **Imperviousness after Construction (percentage)**, This should be calculated by adding all impervious area paved and hard surfaces based on the final design within project limits from above and dividing by the total project area from above multiply by 100.

   Impervious area after construction % _____

7. **Mile Post Marker**, enter the approximate post mile at the center of the project or take the average of the "begin" and "end" post mile markers from the title sheet.

   Mile post Marker________

8. **Is the construction site part of a larger common plan of development**? Yes or No; in most cases mark No for Caltrans projects, as this is intended for developers (in accordance with the EPA definitions referenced by the CGP in 40 CFR title 22). This clarification is based on direction from the SWRCB, see Appendix G for the definition of common plan of development. Coordinate with the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator to determine if there is a special case project where the common plan of development applies. No X
9. **Name of development.** Mark "Not Applicable (N/A)" in most cases.

   Name of plan or development: N/A

10. **Estimated Construction Commencement Date**, mm/dd/yyyy. The PE provides the estimated construction start date from the cover of the SWDR. The actual construction start date should be used to input into SMARTS. After the contract is awarded, the RE will use an updated start date (if different) when entering in SMARTS. The RE needs to be aware of the original date provided by Design, as this date was used to calculate the design information including the Risk Level Determination. If the actual start date is different, construction should coordinate with the PE to determine if the Risk Level has changed.

    Estimated Construction Commencement Date, mm/dd/yyyy.

11. **Estimated Complete Grading Date/Complete Project Date**; The PE provides the estimated construction completion date from the cover of the SWDR to be used for both of these inputs. After the contract is awarded, the RE will use an updated completion date (if different) when entering in SMARTS. The Risk Level Determination uses the estimated date that final stabilization is achieved to calculate the risk. The date of final stabilization may extend into the plant establishment phase. The RE needs to be aware of the original completion date provided by Design and whether it coincides with final stabilization, as this date was used to calculate the design information including the Risk Level Determination. If the completion date is different, construction should coordinate with the PE to determine if the Risk Level has changed.

    Estimated Complete Grading Date/Complete Project: mm/dd/yyyy. Use the same date for both inputs, unless instructed otherwise.

12. Does the Stormwater from the construction site discharge directly or indirectly into waters of the United States (enter storm drain system owner for indirect).

    Indirect discharge _(Y/N)___ - If yes, list name(s) of receiving water(s) __________________

    Storm drain system _(Y/N)___ -Enter owner's name: __________________

    Direct discharge _(Y/N)___ - If yes, list name(s) of receiving water(s) __________________

13. **Risk Level**; the combined project risk level is calculated using the sediment risk factor and the water body risk factor to give one overall project risk level. Use the Caltrans risk level determination guidance, (see the Stormwater design web page: https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/hydraulics-stormwater). Attach all risk calculations.

    R factor value ______

    K factor value_______

    LS factor value______

Receiving water risk comes from the state water resources control board mapping of water bodies for 303-d listing or TMDLs for sediment or water body with the beneficial use of cold and spawn and migratory. The input will either be high= yes and low=no;

Receiving water risk______, (yes or no)

The dates used for determining the project risk level and other design elements of the project required for CGP compliance are dependent on having the same sediment risk factor. This is a critical element for compliance, as modifying the estimated construction dates may cause the sediment risk factor to change and ultimately modify the overall project risk factor. This could impact the projects CGP compliance requirements and the assumptions used for the design documents and engineers estimate.

14. **Post Construction**: The PE provides project information related to Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4) areas.

    Is the project located within a permitted Phase I or Phase II MS4 area? This will usually be answered Yes for all projects.

    Provide the TMT Tab Spreadsheet that can be uploaded to SMARTS.Contact the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator with any questions.

15. Provide electronic copy of plan sheets in .pdf format that can be loaded to SMARTS, burn a CD for the RE to use for the project. The Title sheet can be used as the site map.
16. Methodology for obtaining the CGP NOT decided by the PDT, see SWDR Section 6 text for methodology text and computational proof as appropriate, circle one. See SWRCB bulletin for details:
    http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/stormwater/docs/bulletin_2013_1.pdf

    70% final cover method: Attach photo documentation ______________

    RUSLE2: Attach computational proof and photo documentation ____________

    Other custom method if coordinated with local RWQCB, attach photo documentation or other proof as necessary.

E.9 Checklist SW-1, Site Data Sources

**Checklist SW-1,
Site Data Sources**

Prepared by: ________ Date: ______________________ District-Co-Route: ___________

PM: ________________ Project ID/EA: ______________ RWQCB: ___________________

Information for the following data categories should be obtained, reviewed and referenced as necessary throughout the project planning phase. Collect available project reports and any available documents pertaining to the category and list them and reference your data source. For specific examples of documents within these categories, refer to Section 6.4.3.2. Example categories have been listed below; add additional categories, as needed. Summarize pertinent information in Section 2 of the SWDR.

DATA CATEGORY/SOURCES	Date
Water Quality	
1. *Example: STGA/TMDL*	
2.	
3.	
Geotechnical	
4. *Example: Geotechnical Design Report (Project Report)*	
5.	
6.	
Topographic	
7.	
8.	
9.	
Hydraulic	
10. Example: Hydrology/Hydraulic/Drainage Report (Project Report)	
11.	
12.	
Climatic	
13.	
14.	
15.	
Other Data Categories	
16. *Example: Materials Report (Project Report)*	
17.	
18.	

E.10 Checklist T-1, Part 1 (Treatment BMPs)

Treatment BMPs
Checklist T-1, Part 1

Prepared by: ________	Date: ______________________	District-Co-Route: ___________
PM: ________________	Project ID/EA: ______________	RWQCB: ___________________

Consideration of Treatment BMPs

This checklist is used for projects that require the consideration of Approved Treatment BMPs, as determined from the process described in Section 4 (Treatment Consideration) and the Evaluation Documentation Form (EDF). This checklist will be used to determine which Treatment BMPs should be considered for each BMP contributing drainage area within the project. Supplemental data will be needed to verify siting and design applicability for final incorporation into a project.

Complete this checklist for each phase of the project. This will help to determine if any changes to the BMP strategy are necessary, based on site specific information gathered during later phases. Use the responses to the questions as the basis of developing the narrative in Section 6 of the Stormwater Data Report to document that Treatment BMPs have been appropriately considered and/or incorporated.

Before evaluating an area for treatment capabilities or to incorporate a Treatment BMP, calculate the numeric sizing requirement for each contributing drainage area (WQV from the 85th percentile 24-hour storm event or WQF rate). Soil and geometric information for the project area will be necessary to use this Checklist.

<u>Identify the overall project PCTA</u>

Refer to Section 4.3 Treatment Areas for more information on defining these areas.

PCTA = NNI + RIS – EIA + ATA (1); OR ATA (2)

NNI = Net New Impervious Area

RIS = Replaced Impervious Surface

EIA = Excluded Impervious Area

ATA (1) = Additional Treatment Area required for existing Treatment BMPs that were removed or modified as part of the project[1]

ATA (2) = Additional Treatment Area required when NNI is greater than 50 percent of total project impervious

What is the PCTA for the project? ___________ Acres (A in Table E-1)

The PCTA is the area required to be treated by the project. The PE is to incorporate BMPs until the summation of the treated impervious area of all the BMPs is equivalent to the PCTA for the Project.

Once the PCTA has been treated, the project is in compliance with the post construction treatment requirement.

<u>Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) Retrofit Projects</u>

If the project is installing Treatment BMPs to only address TMDL requirements, then there is no required PCTA. The Treatment BMPs for a TMDL retrofit project should be designed to treat impervious and pervious contributing drainage areas in accordance with the TMDL Compliance Plan.

<u>Overall Project Evaluation</u>

Answer all questions, unless otherwise directed.

A. Overall Project Consideration

1. Is the project in a watershed with prescriptive Treatment BMP requirements in an adopted TMDL implementation plan or are there any other requirements for project area as described in the WQAR (e.g., District, RWQCB, Consent Decree)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, consult the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator or District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to determine if there are written agreements related to specific Treatment BMPs. In this case, determine if the rest of this checklist needs to be followed to address other post construction requirements. If not, document BMP(s) in the Individual Treatment BMP Summary Table, provide information on the basis of the BMP requirement and any regulatory coordination in the SWDR narrative, and complete Table E-2. Otherwise, continue.
   If No, continue.

[1] If existing treatment BMPs are in TMDL areas and the pervious tributary area for the BMP has been documented for TMDL Compliance then the TBMP Pervious Area must also be added to ATA 1.

2. Does the receiving water have a TMDL for litter/trash, is there a region specific requirement related to trash, or is the project in an STGA? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, first evaluate Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems that can treat other pollutants and are considered to be full-capture trash devices (Infiltration Basins/Trenches, Detention Basins, Media Filter, Bioretention). If Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems cannot be sited, determine if standalone full-capture devices (GSRDs, Trash Nets, Capture Housing) can be sited.

   If Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems or standalone full-capture devices are incorporated and no other Treatment BMPs are being considered, go to question 6 of "Individual BMP Evaluation". If full-capture devices are incorporated and additional Treatment BMPs are being considered, continue.

   If No, continue.

3. Is the project located in an area that uses traction sand more than twice a year? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, first consider BMPs that can treat other pollutants and can capture traction sand. If other BMPs cannot be sited, consult the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator to determine if standalone traction sand trap devices should be incorporated.

   If standalone devices are required and no other Treatment BMPs are being considered, go to question 6 of "Individual BMP Evaluation". Otherwise, continue with this checklist to identify Treatment BMPs that provide traction sand and other pollutant removal, or to design Treatment BMPs in series.

   If No, continue.

B. Dual Purpose Facilities

   1. Does the project have (or propose to include) any dual purpose facilities that could meet treatment requirements (e.g., Dry Weather Flow Diversion, flood control basins, etc.)? ☐ Yes ☐ No

      If Yes and 100 percent of the PCTA and ATA 1 (Pervious) will be treated by the dual purpose facility, go to question 6 of "Individual BMP Evaluation".

      If Yes, but 100 percent of the PCTA and ATA 1 (Pervious) has not been addressed, continue.

      If No, continue.

C. Evaluate overall project area for infiltration opportunities using existing and proposed roadside surfaces (DPPIAs). Assure the DPPIA is stabilized to handle highway drainage design flows, for both sheet and concentrated flows (See HDM Section 800).

   Document DPPIAs on the "Individual Treatment BMP Summary Table" located at the end of this checklist.

   1. Based on site conditions, do the DPPIAs infiltrate 100 percent of the WQV generated by the PCTA and ATA 1 (Pervious) for the project? ☐ Yes ☐ No

      Yes, go to question 6 of "Individual BMP Evaluation".

If No, account for area infiltrated and continue.

2. Can infiltration for these areas be increased by using soil amendments or other means? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, and 100 percent of the WQV generated by the PCTA and ATA 1 (Pervious) is infiltrated, go to question 6 of "Individual BMP Evaluation".

   If Yes, but 100 percent of the WQV generated by the PCTA and ATA 1 (Pervious) is not infiltrated, continue with this checklist to identify Treatment BMPs that will treat the remaining PCTA and ATA 1 (Pervious).

   If No, continue.

<u>Individual BMP Evaluation</u>

Answer the following questions for each Treatment BMP location being considered. The following process must be followed until the PCTA and ATA 1 (Pervious) or desired treatment area (Alternative Compliance) has been achieved. Use the Individual Treatment BMP Summary Table at the end of the checklist to summarize the selected BMP(s) based on the findings of the following questions for each BMP contributing drainage area.

1. Infiltration Devices (Infiltration Basin, Trench, Gallery, or other device)
   a. Can 100 percent of the BMP contributing drainage area WQV (or remaining WQV, if in series with a DPPIA or other BMP) be infiltrated? ☐ Yes ☐ No

      If Yes, go to question 6.

      If No, continue.
2. LID flow through Devices (Biofiltration Strips, Swales, & Bioretention)
   a. Is this a TMDL retrofit project or is the project within a TMDL watershed or 303(d) impaired receiving water body area? ☐ Yes ☐ No

      If Yes, when designing the TBMP device, determine the percent WQV infiltrated from both the impervious and pervious BMP contributing drainage areas. Consider using existing or amended soils:

      If infiltration is >50 percent, continue to b.

      If infiltration is ≤50 percent, go to question 3.

      If No, continue to b.
   b. Can LID flow through devices be designed to: ☐ Yes ☐ No

      Infiltrate 100 percent of the WQF/WQV (or remainder, if in series with a DPPIA or other BMP) from the BMP contributing drainage area, and

      Meet the siting and design criteria of the Caltrans TBMP design guidance.

      If Yes, continue to b.

      If No, go to question 3.
   c. LID flow through devices are considered to be an effective method of treatment, go to question 6.

3. Earthen type BMPs (Detention Devices, Media Filters, or other devices)

   a. Can earthen type BMPs (standalone or in series with other approved Treatment BMPs) be designed to: ☐ Yes ☐ No

      Infiltrate 100 percent of the WQV (or remainder, if in series with a DPPIA or other BMP) from the BMP contributing drainage area, and

      Meet the criteria of the Caltrans design guidance for the treatment device being considered.

      If Yes, continue to b.

      If No, go to question 4.

   b. Earthen type BMPs are considered to be an effective method of treatment, go to question 6.

4. Targeted Design Constituent (TDC)

   This approach will compare the effectiveness of individual BMPs and allow the PE to use judgment when evaluating BMP feasibility (site constraints, safety, maintenance requirements, life-cycle costs, etc.).

   a. Does the project discharge to a 303(d) impaired receiving water or a receiving water in a TMDL watershed where Caltrans is a named stakeholder? ☐ Yes ☐ No

      If Yes, is the identified pollutant(s) considered to be a TDC (check all that apply below)? Continue to b.

      ☐ sediments ☐ copper (dissolved or total)

      ☐ phosphorus ☐ lead (dissolved or total)

      ☐ nitrogen ☐ zinc (dissolved or total) ☐ general metals (dissolved or total)[2]

      If No or if no TDC is identified, use Matrix A to select BMPs and go to question 5.

   b. Treating Only Sediment. Is sediment a TDC? ☐ Yes ☐ No

      If Yes, use Matrix A to select BMPs and go to question 5.

      If No, continue to c.

   c. Treating Only Metals. Are copper, lead, zinc, or general metals listed TDCs? ☐ Yes ☐ No

      If Yes, use Matrix B to select BMPs, and go to question 5.

      If No, continue to d.

[2] General metals is a designation used by Regional Water Boards when specific metals have not yet been identified as causing the impairment.

d. Treating Only Nutrients. Are nitrogen and/or phosphorus listed TDCs? ☐ Yes ☐ No

If Yes, use Matrix C to select BMPs, and go to question 5.

If No, continue e.

e. Treating both Metals and Nutrients. Is copper, lead, zinc, or general metals AND nitrogen or phosphorous a TDC? ☐ Yes ☐ No

If yes, use Matrix D to select BMPs, and go to question 5.

If No, continue.

BMP Selection Matrix A: General Purpose Pollutant Removal			
Consider BMPs (or combinations of) to treat the contributing drainage area WQV with BMPs listed in this table. First evaluate Tier 1 BMPs, followed by Tier 2 BMPs when Tier 1 BMPs are not feasible. Within each Tier, BMP selection will be determined by the site-specific determination of feasibility, which includes life cycle costs. BMPs are chosen based on the infiltration category determined for BMP contributing drainage area. All BMPs shown are approved and may be used.			
	BMP ranking for infiltration category:		
	Infiltration < 20%	Infiltration 20% - 50%	Infiltration > 50%
Tier 1	Bioretention (all) Strip: HRT > 5 min Austin filter (concrete) Austin filter (earthen) Delaware filter OGFC	Austin filter (earthen) Detention (unlined) Infiltration devices Biofiltration Strip Bioretention (unlined)	Austin filter (earthen) Detention (unlined) Infiltration devices Biofiltration Strip Biofiltration Swale Bioretention (unlined)
Tier 2	Strip: HRT < 5 min Biofiltration Swale Detention (unlined)	Austin filter (concrete) Delaware filter Biofiltration Swale Bioretention (lined) OGFC	Austin filter (concrete) Delaware filter Bioretention (lined) OGFC
All BMPs shown are considered effective. The PE should use professional judgment when selecting BMPs based on overall site design and feasibility.			

BMP Selection Matrix B: Any metal is the TDC, but not nitrogen or phosphorous			
Consider BMPs (or combinations of) to treat the contributing drainage area WQV with BMPs listed in this table. First evaluate Tier 1 BMPs, followed by Tier 2 BMPs when Tier 1 BMPs are not feasible. Within each Tier, BMP selection will be determined by the site-specific determination of feasibility, which includes life cycle costs. BMPs are chosen based on the infiltration category determined for BMP contributing drainage area. All BMPs shown are approved and may be used.			
	BMP ranking for infiltration category:		
	Infiltration < 20%	Infiltration 20% - 50%	Infiltration > 50%
Tier 1	Austin filter (earthen) Austin filter (concrete) Bioretention (all) Delaware filter	Austin filter (earthen) Bioretention (unlined) Detention (unlined) Infiltration devices	Austin filter (earthen) Bioretention (unlined) Detention (unlined) Infiltration devices Biofiltration Strip Biofiltration Swale
Tier 2	Strip: HRT > 5 min Strip: HRT < 5 min Biofiltration Swale Detention (unlined)	Austin filter (concrete) Bioretention (lined) Delaware filter Biofiltration Strip Biofiltration Swale OGFC	Austin filter (concrete) Bioretention (lined) Delaware filter OGFC
All BMPs shown are considered effective. The PE should use professional judgment when selecting BMPs based on overall site design and feasibility.			

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">BMP Selection Matrix C: Phosphorous and / or nitrogen is the TDC, but no metals are the TDC</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Consider BMPs (or combinations of) to treat the contributing drainage area WQV with BMPs listed in this table. First evaluate Tier 1 BMPs, followed by Tier 2 BMPs when Tier 1 BMPs are not feasible. Within each Tier, BMP selection will be determined by the site-specific determination of feasibility, which includes life cycle costs. BMPs are chosen based on the infiltration category determined for BMP contributing drainage area. All BMPs shown are approved and may be used.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2"></td><td colspan="3">BMP ranking for infiltration category:</td></tr>
<tr><td>Infiltration < 20%</td><td>Infiltration 20% - 50%</td><td>Infiltration > 50%</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tier 1</td><td>Austin filter (earthen)
Austin filter (concrete)
Delaware filter*
OGFC*</td><td>Austin filter (earthen)
Detention (unlined)
Infiltration devices</td><td>Austin filter (earthen)
Detention (unlined)
Infiltration devices
Biofiltration Strip & Swale
Bioretention (unlined)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tier 2</td><td>Biofiltration Strip
Biofiltration Swale
Detention (unlined)
Bioretention (all)</td><td>Austin filter (concrete)
Delaware filter
Biofiltration Strip
Biofiltration Swale
Bioretention (all)
OGFC</td><td>Austin filter (concrete)
Bioretention (lined)
Delaware filter
OGFC</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">All BMPs shown are considered effective. The PE should use professional judgment when selecting BMPs based on overall site design and feasibility.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">*Delaware and OGFC filters would be ranked in Tier 2 if the TDC is nitrogen only, as opposed to phosphorous only or both nitrogen and phosphorous.</td></tr>
<tr><th colspan="4">BMP Selection Matrix D: Any metal, plus phosphorous and / or nitrogen are the TDCs</th></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Consider BMPs (or combinations of) to treat the contributing drainage area WQV with BMPs listed in this table. First evaluate Tier 1 BMPs, followed by Tier 2 BMPs when Tier 1 BMPs are not feasible. Within each Tier, BMP selection will be determined by the site-specific determination of feasibility, which includes life cycle costs. BMPs are chosen based on the infiltration category determined for BMP contributing drainage area. All BMPs shown are approved and may be used.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2"></td><td colspan="3">BMP ranking for infiltration category:</td></tr>
<tr><td>Infiltration < 20%</td><td>Infiltration 20% - 50%</td><td>Infiltration > 50%</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tier 1</td><td>Austin filter (earthen)
Austin filter (concrete)
Delaware filter*</td><td>Austin filter (earthen)
Detention (unlined)
Infiltration devices</td><td>Austin filter (earthen)
Detention (unlined)
Infiltration devices
Biofiltration Strip & Swale
Bioretention (unlined)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tier 2</td><td>Biofiltration Strip
Biofiltration Swale
Detention (unlined)
Bioretention (all)
OGFC</td><td>Austin filter (concrete)
Delaware filter
Biofiltration Strip
Biofiltration Swale
Bioretention (all)
OGFC</td><td>Austin filter (concrete)
Bioretention (lined)
Delaware filter
OGFC</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">All BMPs shown are considered effective. The PE should use professional judgment when selecting BMPs based on overall site design and feasibility.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">*In cases where earthen BMPs also infiltrate, Delaware filters are ranked in Tier 2 if the TDC is nitrogen only, but they are Tier 1 for phosphorous only or both nitrogen and phosphorous.</td></tr>
</table>

5. Does the project discharge to a 303(d) receiving water that is listed for mercury or low dissolved oxygen? ☐ Yes ☐ No

   If Yes, contact the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to determine if standing water in a Delaware Media Filter, Wet Basin, or other TBMP would be a risk to downstream water quality. Continue to question 6.

   If No, continue to question 6.

6. Identify the Treatment BMPs being considered and complete the Individual Treatment BMP Summary Table and Overall Project Treatment Summary Table on the following pages. Refer to Appendix B of the PPDG and review the checklists identified below for every Treatment BMP under consideration. ☐ Complete

   Document the basis of design in the SWDR narrative and complete Table E-2.

   ____ DPPIAs: Checklist T-1, Part 11

   ____ Infiltration Devices: Checklist T-1, Part 2

   ____ Biofiltration Strips and Biofiltration Swales: Checklist T-1, Part 3

   ____ Detention Devices: Checklist T-1, Part 4

   ____ Traction Sand Traps: Checklist T-1, Part 5

   ____ Dry Weather Diversion: Checklist T-1, Part 6

   ____ GSRDs: Checklist T-1, Part 7

   ____ Trash Net: Checklist T-1, Part 7

   ____ Capture Housing: Checklist T-1, Part 7

   ____ Media Filter [Austin Sand Filter and Delaware Filter]: Checklist T-1, Part 8

   ____ Bioretention: Checklist T-1, Part 13

   ____ Open Graded Friction Course (OGFC): Checklist T-1, Part 12

   Note:

   Multi-Chamber Treatment Train (MCTT) is not listed here because Caltrans has found that other approved BMPs are equally effective and more sustainable due to lower life cycle costs.

   Wet Basins are not listed here due to feasibility issues due to site feasibility and issues with long term operation and maintenance.

   Pervious Pavement is not listed here because pervious pavement can only be used for non-highway areas.

   MCTT, Wet Basins, and Pervious Pavement may be considered or implemented upon the recommendation of the District/Regional Design and Maintenance Stormwater Coordinator.

7. Prepare cost estimate, including right-of-way, and document pertinent site specific determination of feasibility for selected Treatment BMPs and include in the SWDR for approval. ☐ Complete

Individual Treatment BMP Summary Table

List the selected BMPs based on the findings of this checklist and the treated areas associated with each BMP in Table E-2. For projects with multiple BMPs, add rows (if needed), or attach a separate sheet displaying the following information.

Each BMP must be tracked in Table E-2. Districts may use a modified table based upon their needs. See Section 6.6 for additional information.

Table E-2. Individual Treatment BMP Summary Table [1]

BMP Identifier-Number	BMP Type	Treated Impervious Area (CT RW) (ac)	Treated Impervious Area (Outside CT RW) (ac)	Treated Pervious Area (CT RW) (ac)	Treated Pervious Area (Outside CT RW) (ac)	Treated WQV/WQF/ FCV/FCF (%)
	Total Area to be Treated (acre)	(B in Table E-1)	(C in Table E-1)			

[1] *The treated areas identified in this table are a product of the BMP CDA and Treated WQV/WQF/FCV/FCF (%).*

E.11 Checklist SW-2, Stormwater Quality Issues Summary

Checklist SW-2, Stormwater Quality Issues Summary		
Prepared by: ________	Date: ____________________	District-Co-Route: __________
PM: _______________	Project ID/EA: _____________	RWQCB: _________________

The following questions provide a guide to collecting critical information relevant to project stormwater quality issues. Consult other Caltrans functional units (Environmental, Landscape Architecture, Maintenance, etc.) and the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator as necessary. Summarize pertinent responses in Section 2 of the SWDR; do not discuss items identified as not applicable.

1. Determine the receiving waters for the project ☐ Complete ☐ NA
2. For the project limits, list the 303(d) impaired receiving water bodies and their constituents of concern. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
3. Determine if there are any municipal or domestic water supply reservoirs or groundwater percolation facilities within the project limits, as shown by DWP. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
4. Determine the RWQCB special requirements, including TMDLs, effluent limits, etc. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
5. Determine if the project area has a trash TMDL or is in an STGA. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
6. Determine regulatory agencies seasonal construction and construction exclusion dates or restrictions required by federal, state, or local agencies. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
7. Determine if a 401 Certification will be required. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
8. Identify rainy season. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
9. If applicable, determine the general climate of the project area. Identify annual rainfall and rainfall intensity curves. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
10. If considering Treatment BMPs, determine the soil classification, permeability, erodibility and depth to groundwater. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
11. Determine contaminated soils within the project area. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
12. Determine the total disturbed soil area of the project. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
13. Describe the topography of the project site. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
14. List any areas outside of the Caltrans right-of-way that will be included in the project (e.g., contractor’s staging yard, work from barges, easements for staging). ☐ Complete ☐ NA
15. Determine if additional right-of-way acquisition or easements and right-of-entry will be required for design, construction, and maintenance of BMPs. If so, how much? ☐ Complete ☐ NA
16. Determine the estimated unit costs for right-of-way should it be needed for Treatment BMPs, stabilized conveyance systems, lay-back slopes, or interception ditches. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
17. Determine if project area has any slope stabilization concerns. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
18. Describe the local land use within the project area and adjacent areas. ☐ Complete ☐ NA
19. Evaluate the presence of dry weather flow. ☐ Complete ☐ NA

E.12 Checklist SW-3, Measures for Avoiding or Reducing Stormwater Impacts

Checklist SW-3, Measures for Avoiding or Reducing Potential Stormwater Impacts		
Prepared by: ________	Date: ______________________	District-Co-Route: ___________
PM: ________________	Project ID/EA: ______________	RWQCB: ___________________

The PE should confer with other functional units, such as Landscape Architecture, Hydraulics, Environmental, Materials, Construction and Maintenance, as needed to assess these issues. Summarize pertinent responses in Section 2 of the SWDR; do not discuss items identified as not applicable.

Options for avoiding or reducing potential impacts during project planning include the following:

1. Can the project be relocated or realigned to avoid/reduce impacts to receiving waters or to increase the preservation of critical (or problematic) areas such as floodplains, steep slopes, wetlands, and areas with erosive or unstable soil conditions? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA
2. Can structures and bridges be designed or located to reduce work in live streams and minimize construction impacts? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA
3. Can any of the following methods be utilized to minimize erosion from slopes:
   a. Disturbing existing slopes only when necessary? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA
   b. Minimizing cut and fill areas to reduce slope lengths? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA
   c. Incorporating retaining walls to reduce steepness of slopes or to shorten slopes? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA
   d. Acquiring right-of-way easements (such as grading easements) to reduce steepness of slopes? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA
   e. Avoiding soils or formations that will be particularly difficult to re-stabilize? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA
   f. Providing cut and fill slopes flat enough to allow re-vegetation and limit erosion to pre-construction rates? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA
   g. Providing benches or terraces on high cut and fill slopes to reduce concentration of flows? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA
   h. Rounding and shaping slopes to reduce concentrated flow? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA
   i. Collecting concentrated flows in stabilized drains and channels? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA
4. Does the project design allow for the ease of maintaining all BMPs? ☐ Yes ☐ No
5. Can the project be scheduled or phased to minimize soil-disturbing work during the rainy season? ☐ Yes ☐ No
6. Can permanent stormwater pollution controls such as paved slopes, vegetated slopes, basins, and conveyance systems be installed early in the construction process to provide additional protection and to possibly utilize them in addressing construction stormwater impacts? ☐ Yes ☐ No ☐ NA

APPENDIX F: COST ESTIMATES

F.1 Introduction

The objective of this appendix is to provide general guidance on incorporating the cost of stormwater BMPs into the project delivery process; however, it is understood that local district procedures for cost estimating may vary. The cost estimator needs to research, compare, and, above all, use their professional judgment to prepare a quality cost estimate.

F.1.1 Policy and Guidance

The Caltrans Division of Design has developed the following website to assist in the development of cost estimates:

https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/cost-estimating-improvements

This website includes links to Chapter 20 Project Development Cost Estimates of the *Project Development Procedures Manual* and *Caltrans Cost Estimating Guidelines*. Chapter 20 describes the purpose and policies behind cost estimates and provides guidance for planning and feasibility for Project Initiation Cost Estimates (PID), Project Report Cost Estimates (PA/ED), and Project Design Cost Estimates (PS&E).

In addition to Chapter 20, this website includes other useful cost estimating information on project cost escalation, contingency and supplemental work, and cost estimating templates for the planning and design phases of the project. These templates may be used to track estimates relating to costs for incorporating stormwater BMPs.

F.1.2 Construction Duration

Particular attention to estimating is required when a project is anticipated to extend beyond a single construction season. If the project cannot be finished before the end of the construction season and the project needs to be suspended, contractors will increase their bid prices to cover their overhead during the winter (i.e., “rainy” or “wet” season) and repair any damage that may occur. Even if contractors reasonably expect to finish before the winter, they may protect themselves to allow for an early winter. This can especially be true if construction involves work on items that may be affected by winter weather (e.g., drainage channels, earthwork, slope stabilization), or that requires deployment of additional Construction Site BMPs. Therefore, if a construction project is anticipated to extend over one or more rainy seasons, adjust the estimated cost for Construction Site BMPs per Section F.3.3.

F.2 Standard Specifications, Contract Plans, and Special Provisions

The Standard Specifications, along with the Contract Plans and Special Provisions for a specific project, prescribe the details for construction and completion of work. Coordination is required for consistency with the District Cost Estimate, the Standard Specifications, Contract Plans, and Special Provisions.

F.3 Estimating Methods

Cost estimating procedures may vary for each district, though there are two general estimating methods that may be used to establish prices for stormwater BMPs. Table F-1 lists the methods that are generally available during the different project delivery processes. The estimating methods are described in the following sections.

Table F-1. Estimating Methods Available During the Project Development Processes

Project Process	Estimating Method	Documentation
PID	Project Initiation Cost Estimate [1] (Section F.3.1)	Stormwater Data Report (SWDR) / Project Planning Cost Estimate (PPCE)
PA/ED	Project Initiation Cost Estimate and Project Design Cost Estimate (Section F.3.2)	Updated PPCE
PS&E	Project Design Cost Estimate	Preliminary Engineer's Cost Estimate (PECE)

[1] If Design Pollution Prevention and Treatment BMPs are not included in costs of other work (Erosion Control, Drainage, etc.), then Previous Bid Prices Method should be used to develop these BMP estimates.

The PE must provide estimates for the following stormwater related items:

- Construction Site BMPs
- Design Pollution Prevention BMPs
- Treatment BMPs
- Right-of-way Acquisition (see District Right-of-Way)

Water Pollution Control programmatic and supplemental costs must be estimated for all projects at each phase. Guidance to estimate these costs is provided in Section F.3.3.

F.3.1 Project Initiation Cost Estimate Method

This method can be used during the PID and PA/ED process to develop the PPCE.

Lane mile costs for Design Pollution Prevention and Treatment BMPs can be used at PID. For new construction or major reconstruction projects, include an additional $100,000 to $250,000 per lane mile to cover costs associated with incorporating DPP and Treatment BMPs for PID. The lower end of this range would apply to projects that are in rural areas, with adequate space to install earthen type Treatment BMPs. The higher end of this range would apply to projects in more urbanized areas, where it is expected to be more difficult to site earthen type Treatment BMPs and structural Treatment BMPs may need to be incorporated. This price does not include right-of-way acquisition costs for constructing Treatment BMPs or for establishing drainage easements.

However, for Design Pollution Prevention and Treatment BMPs, project initiation cost estimating methods for the PPCE vary between districts based on district-specific conditions and regional requirements. Estimating for these BMPs should be coordinated with the appropriate district functional units and representatives.

Table F-2 can be used to determine the percentage of cost for Construction Site BMPs based on the total construction costs (not including right-of-way costs). To use Table F-2, add the adjustments that apply for the particular project and then multiply the total estimated construction cost by the total of adjustments.

Table F-2. Percentage of Extra Cost to Project Due to Construction Site BMPs

Description	Recommended Adjustment (%)
Baseline Cost Percentage	1.25 [1]
Adjustment for Project Magnitude (Cost)	
$0 to $500,000	3.0
$500,000 to $1,000,000	2.00
$1,000,000 to $1,500,000	1.25
$1,500,000 to $12,000,000	0.25
Greater than $12,000,000	0.00
Adjustment for Location (RWQCB)	
Region 9 (San Diego)	0.75
All other Regions	0.00
Adjustment for Type of Project	
Highway Planting (Landscaping)	0.10
All other projects	0.00
Adjustment for Work near 303(d) Water Bodies	
Adjustment for Work near TMDL Water Bodies with Caltrans as a named stakeholder	1.0
Projects requiring RUSLE calculations for TMDL Compliance during construction.	0.5 [2]
Other Work near 303(d) Water Bodies	Project Specific [3]
Adjustment for Project Specific Issues	
Project specific issues such as environmental sensitivity, monitoring, dewatering and discharge restrictions, permits, extreme construction conditions (coastal, mountain, urban), etc.	Project Specific [3]
Total Adjustments for Water Pollution Control	(sum)

[1] *Baseline cost percentage of 0.75 is based upon actual construction costs for projects completed in 2003, 2004 and 2005 as described in the Water Pollution Cost Report prepared in 2005. (CT-SW-RT-05-138-04.1). Increase the baseline percentage to 1.25 or higher as necessary to reflect cost increases since 2005.*

[2] *Projects likely to require ongoing RUSLE calculations during construction in accordance with Appendix H of the CGP.*

[3] *Engineer preparing estimate should discuss the cost implications of project specific issues with District/Regional NPDES Coordinator and District Construction Stormwater Coordinator.*

Example:

For an interchange modification project consisting of structure widening, ramp realignment, and embankment construction, the estimated cost is $16,000,000. The project is in San Diego County and is within RWQCB Region 9. The project drains to an unlisted water body. The adjustment factor is based upon the following:

Description	Adjustment (%)
Baseline Cost Percentage	1.25
Greater than $12,000,000	0.00
Adjustment for Location (RWQCB 9)	0.75
Adjustment for Type of Project	0.00
Adjustment for Other Work near 303(d) Water Bodies	0.00
Adjustment for Project Specific Issues	0.00
Total Adjustments for Water Pollution Control	2.00

The PID phase estimate for water pollution control is $320,000 ($16,000,000 x 2.00%).

F.3.2 Project Design Cost Estimate Method

This method is typically used during the PA/ED and PS&E phases of a project to develop the PPCE and the PECE. This method may be used at the PID phase when preliminary design information is available, or when Design Pollution Prevention and Treatment BMPs are estimated as separate line items and not included in other items of work (e.g., Erosion Control, Drainage). For this method refer to Section 1, Article 4 *Cost Estimate Pricing Methods in the Preparation Guidelines for Project Development Cost Estimates* (Cost Estimating Guidelines). See F.1.1 Policy and Guidance for more information. This document replaces Appendix AA of the PDPM Chapter 20. Table F-3 is a reference for planning level estimates; it lists a range of unit costs for Construction Site BMPs and is provided for convenience to identify typical ranges in costs for individual BMP line items. The *Caltrans Contract Item Database* should be used to develop specific bid item estimates based on recent bids.

Table F-3. Installed Costs of BMPs [1]

Bid Item	BMP	Unit Cost Installed
	Temporary Sediment Control	
130670	Temporary Reinforced Silt Fence	$4.00 – 14.00 per lineal foot
130640	Temporary Fiber Roll	$3.00 – 9.00 per lineal foot
130680	Temporary Silt Fence	$3.00 –6.00 per lineal foot
130690	Temporary Straw Bale Barrier	$6.50 – 12.50 per lineal foot
130650	Temporary Gravel Bag Berm	$2.00 – 20.00 per linear foot
130610	Temporary Check Dam	$2.00 – 27.00 per linear foot
130620	Temporary Drainage Inlet Protection	$100 – 500 each
130660	Temporary Large Sediment Barrier	$9.00 – 25.00 per lineal foot
	Temporary Tracking Control	
130710	Temporary Construction Entrance	$1,700 –6,000 each
130730	Street Sweeping	$500 –85,000 lump sum [2]
130720	Temporary Construction Roadway	$25 – 60 per square yard
	Non-Stormwater Control	
130900	Temporary Concrete Washout	$3,000 – 65,000 lump sum [2]
	Temporary Soil Stabilization	
130510	Temporary Mulch	$3.00 – 10.00 per square yard
130520	Temporary Hydraulic Mulch	$1.00 – 11.00 per square yard
130530	Temporary Hydraulic Mulch (Bonded Fiber Matrix)	$1.00 – 9.00 per square yard
130535	Temporary Hydraulic Mulch (Cementitious Binder)	$3.00 – 15.00 per square yard
130540	Temporary Tacked Straw	$2.00 – 17.00 per square yard
130550	Temporary Hydroseed	$1.00 – 30.00 per square yard
130560	Temporary Soil Binder	$1.00 – 5.00 per square yard
130570	Temporary Cover	$1.00 – 47.00 per square yard
	Miscellaneous	
160110	Temporary High-Visibility Fence	$2.00 – 30.00 per lineal foot
TBD	Dewatering	Dependent on requirements
131201	Temporary Creek Diversion System	$5,000 – 200,000

[1] *Unless otherwise noted, information derives from average bid costs using Caltrans Contract Cost Database for the period between 2020 and 2022.*

[2] *Costs for street sweeping and concrete washout should be derived using the methods described in the Construction Site BMP training materials.*

F.3.3 Water Pollution Control Items

Use the following guidance to develop specific costs for the items identified to support the estimate for the PPCE and the PECE.

Water Pollution Control Program (Item: 130201)

Projects with less than one (1) acre of soil disturbance will have to include bid item Water Pollution Control Program (WPCP) to document implementation of the project's water pollution controls. Small construction projects, between 1 and less than 5 acres of soil disturbance that qualify for an EPA Erosivity Waiver will also have to include bid item WPCP. Use Table F-4 to estimate the cost of WPCP.

Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (Item: 130301)

Projects subject to the Construction General Permit will have to include bid item Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP). Use Table F-4 to estimate the cost of preparing the written document describing the implementation of the project's water pollution controls. SWPPP includes the cost to prepare the Construction Site Monitoring Program (CSMP), which includes preparation of a Sampling and Analysis Plan (SAP) and implementation of visual monitoring. It also includes the cost of RUSLE2 modeling required for projects required by GCP Attachment H.

Table F-4. Construction Site Water Pollution Control

Total Construction Cost	SWPPP	WPCP
\$0 to \$500,000	\$3,000 + TDF	\$1,400
\$500,000 to \$1,000,000	\$3,800 + TDF	\$1,500
\$1,000,000 to \$1,500,000	\$3,900 + TDF	\$1,500
\$1,500,000 to \$12,000,000	\$4,500 + TDF	\$1,700
Greater than \$12,000,000	\$8,400+ TDF	-

Note: Information derived from 2009 average bid costs using Caltrans Cost Database with an additional mark-up to account for qualified developers of the SWPPP and escalation through 2023.

<u>*Time Duration Factor*</u> <u>*(RL 1, 2, and 3):*</u> All projects required to develop a SWPPP regardless of the RL are estimated with a time duration factor (TDF) to account for the effects of multiple construction seasons. To develop cost estimates for TDF, Equation 1 below should be used. Equation 1 is a function of the project duration, the drainage area, and the cost per inspection. The costs for storm-triggered visual monitoring are assumed to already be included in the costs for preparing a SWPPP, as this was already a Caltrans requirement prior to the development of the Construction General Permit (CGP).

TDF Cost = (months/3 + 1) x (N + 4) x Labor ***(Eqn. 1)***

where:

Months = the number of months the project will be occurring, including from initial site work through the construction until soil is completely stabilized after construction.

N = calculated number of project storm water discharge locations. It is assumed that each discharge area can be reviewed within 1 hour. An additional 4 hours are provided to account for the time required to complete reporting and follow-up.

Labor = estimated hourly labor rate for a qualified storm water inspector. Assume $100 per hour is appropriate.

Job Site Management (Item: 130100)

This item is used on all projects.

Development of a cost estimate for Job Site Management (JSM) must be coordinated with the District Construction Stormwater Coordinator. Estimates must account for project magnitude and duration considering dry and rainy seasons along with planned work suspensions. Previous job histories may be used, or Job Site Management cost can be estimated using Equation 2 and Equation 3.

$$\text{JSM Cost} = CPM_{(DRY)} \times Months_{(DRY)} + CPM_{(RAINY)} \times Months_{(RAINY)} + CPM_{(SUSP)} \times Months_{(SUSP)} \quad \textbf{(Eqn. 2)}$$

$$\text{Total Working Months} = Months_{(DRY)} + Months_{(RAINY)} + Months_{(SUSP)} \quad \textbf{(Eqn. 3)}$$

where:

$CPM_{(DRY)}$ = cost multiplier based on the number of months with less than 1.0 days of mean precipitation of at least 0.5 inches. Consult with Construction for cost with expected range of $2,000 to $6,000 per month.

$CPM_{(RAINY)}$ = cost multiplier based on the number of months with at least 1.0 days of mean precipitation of at least 0.5 inches. Consult with Construction for cost with expected range of $2,000 to $7,000 per month.

$CPM_{(SUSP)}$ = cost multiplier based on the number of rainy season months where work is suspended. Consult with Construction for cost with expected range of $0 to $2,000 per month.

A rainy season for estimating purposes is assumed to be any period of 3 or more months in sequence that have a mean probability of precipitation of greater than 1 day of >= 0.5 inch based on the rain gauge used for the Construction location. A rainy season is broken by a period of one or more months of less than 1.0 mean days of precipitation over 0.5 inch.

Rain Event Action Plan (Item: 130310)

All projects subject to the Lake Tahoe CGP are to implement a Rain Event Action Plan (REAP) in advance of a forecasted storm. The contractor evaluates site readiness as part of formulating a REAP. This contract item is non-adjustable.

The PE is to set aside $1000 for each REAP that is anticipated to be prepared by the construction contractor. Estimate one REAP for every forecasted storm event if the NWS predicts a storm event with at least 30 percent probability of precipitation in the project area during the planned construction period. Use the mean number of days reported for precipitation producing greater than or equal to 0.1 inches for the duration of the project. Otherwise, consult with the District Construction Stormwater Coordinator to use an alternative estimating procedure. Use climate data from a nearby representative station identified in the Water Quality Planning Tool or published by the National Climatic Data Center of the National Oceanic Atmospheric Association at:

https://www.ncei.noaa.gov/products/land-based-station/us-climate-normals

Stormwater Annual Report (Item: 130330)

In order to account for the submittal of an annual report to the RWQCB regarding project compliance with the CGP, the PE should set aside $2,000 for each year and partial year of construction. This contract item is non-adjustable.

Stormwater Sampling and Analysis Day (Item: 130320)

Sampling and analysis of stormwater runoff for pH and turbidity is required for all RL 2 and RL 3 projects. At a minimum, 3 samples must be collected per day of qualifying storm events, which are those producing precipitation of 0.5-inch or more at the time of discharge.

The cost of stormwater monitoring (SWM) is a function of the precipitation frequency, construction duration, and the number of sampling locations for the project, as well as the cost per sample. Unless an alternative method is available from the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator, then the SWM cost is estimated using Equation 4 as follows:

$$\text{SWM Cost} = M \times \{[\text{Days}_{0.5''} \times \$1500] + \$2000\,(1 + 0.1\,(\text{Months}/12))\} \qquad \textit{(Eqn. 4)}$$

where:

M = cost multiplier based on the number of anticipated discharge sampling points. When M = 1, the cost estimate assumes that up to 7 locations can be sampled by one fully equipped staff per event. Sites with 8 to 14 sampling locations assumes that one additional staff-day will be required, consequently, M=2. For sites with 15 – 21 sampling locations M=3, and so forth.

$\text{Days}_{0.5''}$ = estimated number of days over project timeline with precipitation event greater than 0.5 inches. However, it is recommended that the difference between the mean number of days for both precipitation events greater than 0.5 inches and 0.1 inches be used. Use climate data from a nearby representative station identified in the Water Quality Planning Tool or published by the National Climatic Data Center of the National Oceanic Atmospheric Association at: https://www.ncei.noaa.gov/products/land-based-station/us-climate-normals

months = the number of months the project will be occurring, including from initial site work through the construction until the site is completely stabilized after construction.

$1500 = daily cost to perform sampling and analysis, as well as reporting, using one staff at up to 7 discharge locations, excluding equipment.

$2000 = purchase cost for field turbidimeter, pH meter, calibration solutions, rain gauge, and all ancillary sampling equipment. A maintenance and calibration estimate of 10 percent per year is included in the equation.

The cost of stormwater sampling and analysis per day can be estimated using Equation 5 as follows:

Stormwater Sampling and Analysis Day = SWM Cost / $Days_{0.5''}$ *(Eqn. 5)*

F.3.3.1 Supplemental Costs

Additional Water Pollution Control (Item: 066596)

This item is required for all projects.

The Supplemental Work item for Additional Water Pollution Control will cover additional WPC BMPs suggested by the RE or Contractor. This change order work is expected to be minor for most projects. Estimate this item using the same rate as SWPPP, less RQM for SWPPP jobs. For WPCP jobs estimate at the same rate as WPCP.

Water Pollution Control Maintenance Sharing (Item: 066595)

The Supplemental Work item for Water Pollution Control Maintenance Sharing incorporated into to the individual separate item BMPs that allow for cost sharing. Water Pollution Control Maintenance Sharing cost should be no lower than the amount estimated for SWPPP (or WPCP). The following may be used to estimate BMP maintenance costs based upon input from districts where this approach was piloted. The aggregate total of estimated maintenance costs would be combined into item WPC Maintenance Sharing:

Temporary Silt Fence, estimate at 10 percent of the separate item cost per rainy season.

- Temporary Fiber Roll, estimate at 10 percent of the separate item cost per rainy season.
- Temporary Large Sediment Barrier, estimate at 10 percent of the separate item cost per rainy season.
- Temporary Erosion Control and other hydraulically applied temporary soil stabilization BMPs, estimate at 10 percent of the separate item cost per rainy season.
- Temporary Erosion Control Blanket, estimate at 10 percent of the separate item cost per rainy season.
- Temporary Cover, estimate at 10 percent of the separate item cost per rainy season.
- Temporary Gravel Bag Berm, estimate at 25 percent of the item cost per rainy season.
- Temporary Drainage Inlet Protection, estimate at 25 percent of the item cost per rainy season.
- Temporary Construction Entrance, estimate at 25 percent of the item cost per rainy season.

A rainy season for estimating purposes is defined under the Job Site Management Item above. Projects with construction dates not containing a rainy season have a rainy season equal to zero.

Stormwater Sampling and Analysis (Item: 066597)

The Supplemental Work item for Stormwater Sampling and Analysis will cover change order costs if the RE orders sampling and analysis. The anticipated use is for determining if materials associated with illegal dumping are contaminated or hazardous prior to cleanup. Another use is to address non-visible pollutants that may be exposed during excavation such as when unusual odors or soil conditions may occur and possible contamination or hazardous conditions must be determined.

This change order work is expected to be minimal, possibly non-existent, for most projects. It is not intended for this item to cover water quality sampling associated with 401 Certifications, other PLACs, or pH and turbidity sampling and analysis covered under other contract bid items (see section F.6 Water Quality Monitoring and Standard Specification 13-11.

Estimate at $2,000 for SWPPP projects with a duration of one year or less. Estimate at $2,000 - $5,000 for SWPPP projects with a duration of more than a year. The higher ranges are justified in locations where the risk of illegal dumping is greater.

F.3.3.2 Department Furnished Materials

Annual Construction General Permit Fees (Item: 066916)

CGP fees are paid by construction as a Department Furnished Material. To calculate the CGP fees to a project first estimate the total project DSA, then calculate the fee based upon total DSA, then multiply the fee by the total number of years the project will be in construction through final stabilization (the plant establishment period may extend beyond final stabilization).

Annual CGP Fees = [$496+ (DSA x $52)] * Years *(Eqn. 6)*

where:

DSA = total DSA on the project. When DSA < 1, use DSA = 0. When DSA ≥ 1, round up to the nearest whole number

Years = total number of years the project will be in construction through final stabilization. Annual fees are incurred in the quarter the application or NOI was submitted. For example, a project that is initiated on February 1, 2023 and runs until January 10, 2024, will incur two annual CGP fees.

Equation 6 is a conservative estimate of fees and does not account for discounts. Verify the CGP Fee Schedule on the SWRCB website prior to estimating for this item.

http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/resources/fees/water_quality/

F.4 Temporary Active Treatment System (Item: 130800)

There are two substantial components for the estimated costs of an ATS: construction and operations. In locations with large areas and low rainfall intensity, the overall cost would be dominated by the construction costs. Conversely, in a small working area located in a region with frequent rainfall, operational costs would be a more substantial portion of the overall ATS costs. The overall cost will vary substantially depending on construction activity and location.

The construction cost will be primarily composed of the selection of components for the ATS, collection and conveyance systems. Depending on the complexity required to meet water quality goals, different components will be needed. For example, a granular activated carbon filter may be needed for hydrocarbons, which will add to the construction cost. A larger construction area may also require greater size or number of filters, basins, and piping, all of which will increase construction cost.

The operational cost is made up of the amount of time the system is in use and the complexity of the system in question. Frequency of rainfall will vary with location. With greater frequency, the labor, power, and chemical costs will increase. As well, systems with greater complexity will require more work and monitoring prior to discharge.

It may be necessary, depending on the orientation of the construction area, to construct more than one system. The designer should prepare cost estimates for each ATS contributing drainage area.

F.4.1 Construction Costs

Construction costs will be a function of the size of the treatment system, the number of treatment systems, and the different components chosen. Each component will vary based upon the size. For example, the number of bag filters required will be dependent on how the system is sized.

Table F-5. Construction Cost Estimate Per Year [1]

System Components	200 GPM	500 GPM	1000 GPM
Required Components			
Treatment Pump	$44,400	$61,700	$74,000
Coagulation Dosing Equipment	$4,100	$4,100	$4,100
Sedimentation Basin	$31,300	$62,600	$125,200
Monitoring Equipment [2]	$16,400	$16,400	$16,400
Power Generator	$31,200	$31,200	$31,200
Optional Components			
pH Adjustment Equipment	$4,100	$4,100	$4,100
Sand Filters w/ Backwash Tank	$34,000	$38,900	$52,000
Bag/Cartridge Filters	$24,700	$57,500	$90,400

[1] *Prices Based on Vendor Quotes with escalation in 2023 Dollars*

[2] *Monitoring Equipment cost may vary based upon additional 401 or WDR requirements*

Each treatment component will be added together to form a composite construction estimate. Some components are optional depending on the site conditions.

F.4.2 Operational Costs

Operational costs will be a function of the number of rain events in the specific location. The rainfall frequency can be determined by the report, “Monthly Station Climate Summaries, 1971-2000” provided by the Department of Commerce and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. In the document rainfall data at specific stations have been tabulated for the last 30 years. To determine rainfall frequency, first identify the closest station to the construction site. Second use the tables provided to find the annual number of rainfall events over 0.5 inches. The number can be used as the frequency of rain events the ATS system could potentially treat in a single year.

$$O = L + C + P \qquad \textit{(Eqn. 7)}$$

O = Operational Costs, Dollars

L = Labor Cost, Dollars

C = Chemical Costs, Dollars

P = Power Costs, Dollars

The frequency of rainfall multiplied by the daily labor markup rate for an operator will equal the labor costs for a year of operation.

$L = F \times W \times Y$ *(Eqn. 8)*

L = Labor Cost, Dollars

F = Rainfall Frequency, Events per Years

W = Daily Labor Markup, Dollars per Day

Y = Years of Operation, Years

The chemical costs will be both the coagulant costs and pH adjustment costs

$C = G + A$ *(Eqn. 9)*

C = Chemical Costs, Dollars

G = Coagulant Cost, Dollars

A = Acid/Base Cost, Dollars

The frequency of rainfall multiplied by the expected coagulant dose, quantity of water treated and cost per pound of the coagulant, will give the expected coagulant costs. Coagulant dose will vary depending on coagulant selection; polymers will dose approximately 1 mg/L while metal salts (alum, ferric, etc.) will dose approximately 100 mg/L.

$G = F \times D_c \times Q \times U_c \times Y$ *(Eqn. 10)*

G = Coagulant Cost, Dollars

F = Rainfall Frequency, Events per Year

D_c = Coagulant Dose, Gallons of Coagulant per Gallon of Water

Q = Quantity Water, Gallons

U_c = Unit Coagulant Cost, Dollars per Gallon

Y = Years of Operation, Years

Addition of Acid/Base addition will be determined by the receiving water requirements. The calculation will be similar to the coagulant cost calculation. The dose will vary depending on the choice of acids/bases.

$A = F \times D_a \times Q \times U_a \times Y$ *(Eqn. 11)*

A = Acid/Base Cost, Dollars

F = Rainfall Frequency, Events per Year

D_a = Acid/Base Dose, Gallons of Acid/Base per Gallons of Water

Q = Quantity Water, Gallons

U_a = Unit Acid/Base Cost, Dollars per Gallon

Y = Years of Operation, Years

Power costs are a function of the frequency of rainfall and amount of power required to operate the system.

$P = F \times U_p \times Y$ *(Eqn. 12)*

P = Power Costs

F = Rainfall Frequency, Events per Year

U_p = Unit Power Cost per Event, Dollars per Event

Y = Years of Operation

F.5 Temporary Creek Diversion System (Item: 131201)

Temporary creek diversion system is the most common type of clear water diversion BMP. It is typically a lump sum contract item covering the materials and labor involved in the installation, operation, and removal of the diversion. Temporary creek diversion is generally not applicable to structures work in streams as diversion is part of the structures access. Some exceptions apply. Contact OHSD for more information.

Diversion and dewatering of incidental flow may also be included in the project specifications, especially for culvert work. Clear water diversion in these cases should only be used where flows are not incidental.

To estimate the cost, evaluate the costs of the components and materials expected to be used and sum the number of temporary stream diversions anticipated for the project. Depending upon the components used such as pumps and inflatable coffer dams, the length of time the diversion is deployed may affect its cost.

Consider the example for culvert lining project conveying a small, perennial stream. The materials would likely be gravel bags and plastic liner for the coffer dam component, flexible plastic pipe for the culvert, and more gravel bags to secure and provide energy dissipation at the outlet.

Water quality monitoring is often a PLAC condition associated with in-water work such as temporary stream diversion systems. Water quality monitoring costs are covered under Contract Bid Item: 131103 WATER QUALITY SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS DAY, 131104 WATER QUALITY MONITORING REPORT, and 131105 WATER QUALITY ANNUAL REPORT. See F.6 for these Contract Bid Items.

F.6 Water Quality Monitoring

WATER QUALITY SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS DAY (Item: 131103)

Sampling and analysis of water quality under this item is used to address a PLAC requirement for in-water work such as temporary stream diversions. This is for work that is not related to CGP monitoring; project could have a WPCP or SWPPP.

The cost of water quality monitoring (WQM) is a function of construction duration, and the number of in-water work locations for the project, as well as the cost per sample. Unless an alternative method is available from the District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinator, then the WQM cost is estimated using Equation 13 as follows:

WQM Cost = M x {[(Days + 2) x $1500] + $2000} *(Eqn. 13)*

where:

M = cost multiplier based on the number of active, in-water work locations such as temporary stream diversion systems.

Days = estimated number of days when in-water work will be performed. Include the day before installation and the day after removal.

$1500 = daily cost to perform sampling and analysis, as well as reporting, using one staff excluding equipment.

$2000 = purchase cost for field turbidimeter, pH meter, calibration solutions, rain gauge, and all ancillary sampling equipment. A maintenance and calibration estimate of 10% per year is included in the equation.

The cost of water quality sampling and analysis per day can be estimated using Equation 14 as follows:

Water Quality Sampling and Analysis Day = SWM Cost / Days *(Eqn. 14)*

WATER QUALITY MONITORING REPORT, (Item: 131104)

This item is payment for the submittal of periodical reports to the RWQCB regarding project compliance with the 401 or other PLAC, the PE should set aside $500 for each report. Typically, this is a monthly report required for the duration of in-water work. This item is not necessary for projects with SWPPPs as this information is normally submitted as part of other CGP reporting. This contract item is non-adjustable.

WATER QUALITY ANNUAL REPORT (Item: 131105)

This item pays for the submittal of an annual report to the RWQCB regarding project compliance with the 401 or other PLAC, the PE should set aside $2,000 for each year of construction. This item is not necessary for projects with SWPPPs as this information is normally submitted as part of other CGP reporting. This contract item is non-adjustable.

APPENDIX G: ABBREVIATIONS, ACRONYMS, AND DEFINITION OF TERMS

G.1 Abbreviations

a-f	acre-feet
cm	centimeter
cm/hr	centimeters per hour
cfs	cubic feet per second
fps	feet per second
ft	foot/feet
ft^2	square feet
ft^3	cubic feet
g	gram
ha	hectares
h:v	horizontal:vertical
” or in	inches
”/hr or in/hr	inches per hour
hr(s)	hour(s)
kg	kilogram
kg/ha	kilograms per hectare
kg/m^2	kilograms per square meter
km	kilometer
l	liter
m	meter
mg	milligram
meq	milliequivalents
min	minute
mm	millimeter
m/s	meters per second
m^3	cubic meters
m^3/yr	cubic meters/year
req’d	required
yd^3	cubic yard
yr	year
^{o}C	degrees Celsius
>	greater than
≥	greater than or equal to
<	less than
<	less than or equal to

G.2 Acronyms

A&E	Architectural & Engineering
AC	asphalt concrete
ACOE	Army Corps of Engineers
ADL	Aerially Deposited Lead
ADT	Annual Average Daily Traffic
ADL	Aerially Deposited Lead
A_p	Potential Stormwater Storage
APS	Advanced Planning Study
APHA	American Public Health Association
A_r	Area Required
ASBS	Areas of Special Biological Significance
ASCE	American Society of Civil Engineers
AASHTOWare	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials data management system
ASTM	American Society of Testing and Materials
ATA	Additional Treated Area
ATS	Active Treatment Systems
BAT	Best Available Technology
BCT	Best Conventional Technology
BCDC	Bay Conservation and Development Commission
BFM	Bonded Fiber Matrix
BMP	Best Management Practice
BOD	Biochemical Oxygen Demand
BOD5	5-Day BOD
C/EP-SWAT	Construction/Encroachment Permit SWAT
Caltrans, CT	California Department of Transportation
CASQA	California Stormwater Quality Association
CBB	Cementitious Based Binders
CDA	Contributing Drainage Area
CDPH	California Department of Public Health
CE	Categorical Exemption/Exclusion
CEC	Cation Exchange Capacity
CEQA	California Environmental Quality Act
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
CGP	Construction General Permit
CIP	Cast-in-Place
CMP	Corrugated Metal Pipe
CO2	Carbon Dioxide
COI	Change of Information
CPP	Coagulant Prevention Plan

C-SWAT	Construction Stormwater Advisory Team
CS	Construction Site
CTC	California Transportation Commission
CWA	Clean Water Act
DAWP	District Annual Workplan
DDT	Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane
DEA	Division of Environmental Analysis
DED	Draft Environmental Document
DES	Division of Engineering Services
DLA	District Landscape Architect
DPP	Design Pollution Prevention
DPR	Draft Project Report
DSA	Disturbed Soil Area
DTSC	Department of Toxic Substances Control
DWR	California Department of Water Resources
EA	Expenditure Authorization
ED	Environmental Document
EDF	Evaluation Documentation Form
EIA	Excluded Impervious Area
EP	Edge of Pavement
EPA	U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
EPP	Erosion Prediction Procedure
ESA	Environmentally Sensitive Area
ESC	Erosion and Sediment Control
ETWU	Estimated Total Water Use
FCF	Full-capture flow
FCV	Full-capture volume
FED	Final Environmental Document
FES	Flared End Section
FHWA	Federal Highway Administration
GI	Green Infrastructure
GIS	Geographic Information System
GSRD	Gross Solids Removal Device
GW	Groundwater
H_2CO_3	Carbonic Acid
H_2SO_4	Sulfuric Acid
HCL	Hydrochloric Acid
HDM	Highway Design Manual
HOV	High Occupancy Vehicle
HRT	Hydraulic Residence Time
HSG	Hydrologic Soil Group

HSS	Hydraulic Soil Stabilizers
HQ	Headquarters
IC	Impervious Covers
ISA	Initial Site Assessment
KP	Kilometer Post
LA	Landscape Architect
LID	Low Impact Development
MAWA	Maximum Applied Water Allowance
MBGR	Metal Beam Guard Rail
MCL	Maximum Contaminant Level
MCTT	Multi-Chamber Treatment Train
MEP	Maximum Extent Practicable
M-SWAT	Maintenance Stormwater Advisory Team
MS4	Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System
MWELO	Model Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance
N	Nitrogen (elemental)
N2	Nitrogen (molecular) or Nitrogen gas
NAL	Numeric Action Level
NaOH	Sodium Hydroxide
NEL	Numeric Effluent Limit
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act
NH3	Ammonia
NH4+	Ammonium ion
NIS	New Impervious Surface
NNI	Net New Impervious
NO3-	Nitrate ion
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NOI	Notice of Intent
NOT	Notice of Termination
NPDES	National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System
NPRPD	National Pollutant Removal Performance Database
NRCS	Natural Resources Conservation Service
NS	Non-Stormwater Management
NTU	Nephelometric Turbidity Units
O&G	Oil and Grease
O&M	Operation and Maintenance
OC	Organic Content
OE	Office Engineer
OHSD	Office of Hydraulics and Stormwater Design
PA/ED	Project Approval/Environmental Document
PBL	Plant Material Based – Long Lived

PBS	Plant Material Based – Short Lived
PCB	Polychlorinated biphenyl
PC	Precast
PCC	Portland Cement Concrete
PCTA	Post Construction Treatment Area
PD-SWAT	Project Design Stormwater Advisory Team
PDCE	Project Design Compliance Evaluation
PDPM	Project Development Procedures Manual
PDT	Project Development Team
PE	Project Engineer
PEAR	Preliminary Environmental Assessment Report
PEB	Polymeric Emulsion Blends
PECE	Preliminary Engineer's Cost Estimate
PEE	Preliminary Environmental Evaluation
PGR	Preliminary Geotechnical Report
PID	Project Initiation Document
PLACs	Permits, Licenses, Agreements, Certificates
PM	Project Manager, Post Mile
POC	Pollutant of Concern
POTW	Publicly Owned Treatment Works
PPCE	Project Planning Cost Estimate
PPDG	Project Planning and Design Guide
PR	Project Report
PRB	Petroleum/Resin-Based Emulsion
PRD	Permit Registration Documents
PS&E	Plans, Specifications and Estimates
PSR	Project Study Report
R Factor	Rainfall Erosivity Factor
RE	Resident Engineer
REAP	Rain Event Action Plan
RECP	Rolled Erosion Control Products
RIS	Replaced Impervious Surface
RL	Risk Level
RO	Runoff
RRR	Resurfacing, Restoration & Rehabilitation projects
RSA	Rapid Stability Assessment
RSP	Rock Slope Protection
RTL	Ready-To-List
RUSLE	Revised Universal Soil Loss Equation
RW	Right-of-Way
RWQCB	Regional Water Quality Control Board

SAP	Sampling Analysis Plan
SBM	Standard Biodegradable Mulches
SC	Sediment Control
SCADA	Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SER	Standard Environmental Reference
SMARTS	Stormwater Multiple Application and Report Tracking System
SS	Soil Stabilization, Settleable Solids
SSHM	Small Storm Hydrology Method
SSP	Standard Special Provisions
STGA	Significant Trash Generating Area
SUSMP	Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan
SW	Stormwater
SWAT	Stormwater Advisory Team
SWDR	Stormwater Data Report
SWMP	Statewide Stormwater Management Plan
SWPPP	Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan
SWRCB	California State Water Resources Control Board
TBMP	Treatment Best Management Practice
TC	Tracking Control
TDC	Targeted Design Constituent
TDF	Time Duration Factor
TDS	Total Dissolved Solids
TKN	Total Kjeldahl Nitrogen
TMDL	Total Maximum Daily Load
Total Ortho-P	Total Ortho Phosphate
TP	Total Phosphorous
TPPIA	Total Post Project Impervious Area
TRPA	Tahoe Regional Planning Agency
TS	Temporary Seeding
TSS	Total Suspended Solids
TST	Traction Sand Traps
UNK	Unknown
USA	Underground Service Alert
USDA	United States Department of Agriculture
US EPA	United States Environmental Protection Agency
USCS	Unified Soil Classification System
USGS	United States Geological Survey
UV	Ultraviolet
WBS	Work Breakdown Structure
WDR	Waste Discharge Requirement
WEF	Water Environment Federation

WELO	Water Efficient Landscape Ordinance
WLA	Waste Load Allocations
WM	Waste Management
WPC	Water Pollution Control
WPCP	Water Pollution Control Program
WQ-SWAT	Water Quality Stormwater Advisory Team
WQ	Water Quality
WQAG	Water Quality Assessment Guidelines
WQAR	Water Quality Assessment Report
WQF	Water Quality Flow
WQO	Water Quality Objectives
WQPT	Water Quality Planning Tool
WQV	Water Quality Volume

G.3 Definition of Terms

Bolded items in the following text signify that the definition can be found in this Appendix.

5-Day Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD) Test:

BOD refers to the oxygen used in meeting the metabolic needs of aerobic microorganisms in water containing organic matter. The higher the level of organic matter, the higher the BOD. For example, water polluted with sewage would have a high BOD.

The 5-day BOD test (BOD_5) measures the rate of oxygen required by microorganisms (i.e., a laboratory inoculation) to oxidize the biodegradable matter in a sample under controlled laboratory test conditions. High BOD results (usually the result of organic contamination) suggest that the dissolved oxygen levels in **receiving water** may be depleted.

303(d) List:

The 303(d) list is a list of **water bodies** that have one or more **beneficial uses** that are impaired by one or more pollutants. The 303(d) list is required by Section 303(d) of the federal **CWA**. Water bodies included on this list are referred to as "impaired waters." The State must take appropriate action to improve impaired water bodies, such as development of a **TMDL.**

Aerially Deposited Lead (ADL):

Lead is an inorganic metal found at varying concentrations in the natural environment. Tetraethyl lead was added to gasoline until the mid-1980s. Particulate emissions in the leaded gasoline exhaust contain lead, which was deposited adjacent to roadways as aerial deposited lead (ADL). Refer to the Caltrans Hazardous Waste ADL Guidance and the ADL Agreement for requirements regarding management of soil containing ADL.

Additional Treated Area (ATA):

When project circumstances require treatment beyond the **NIS**, the additional area required to be treated is referred to as ATA. ATA is determined by evaluating two conditions: 1) If an existing **Treatment BMP** is removed or modified by the project, or if any portion of its contributing drainage area cannot continue to be treated by the existing **Treatment BMP**, then that **impervious area** and **pervious area** shall, at a minimum, be treated by the project, excluding any **RIS** within the existing **Treatment BMPs CDA** and 2) Where the **NNI** for the project is greater than 50 percent of the total post-project **impervious area**, then the entire impervious area shall be treated.

Alternative Compliance:

Alternative compliance must be used if it is technically infeasible, or cost-prohibitive to incorporate **Treatment BMPs** on a **new development or redevelopment project.** Caltrans will develop an alternative compliance strategy for each project for approval by the SWRCB Executive Director in coordination with the applicable RWQCB Executive Officer. The proposal will include documentation supporting the determination of infeasibility. The alternative compliance project may be proposed outside project limits within Caltrans' right-of-way, including within another Caltrans project, and provisions for long-term maintenance of such treatment facilities must be included.

Alternative Compliance can be generated by a project when a **Treatment BMP** is designed to treat more than the **NIS** and when **ATA** 1 are met**.** This additional treatment can be banked for the use on a project that cannot incorporate **Treatment BMP**s, as long as it is within the same watershed.

Area of Special Biological Significance (ASBS):

The State Water Resources Control Board has designated 34 coastal marine waters as ASBS in the California Ocean Plan. ASBS are coastal areas requiring protection of species or biological communities. The Department discharges stormwater into ASBS locations shown in Appendix D. Discharges to ASBS are prohibited, so new discharges might require redirection to a location outside of the ASBS.

Basin Plan:

Each Regional Water Board has adopted water quality control plans specific to its region. The region-specific water quality control plans, referred to as Basin Plans, designate receiving water beneficial uses, establish water quality objectives, and contain implementation programs and policies to achieve those objectives for all waters addressed through the plan. The Department is subject to the prohibitions and requirements of each Basin Plan.

Basin Sizer:

Basin Sizer is a software tool developed to help engineers and designers calculate **WQVs** and **WQFs** for sizing of treatment devices by methods approved for Caltrans. The software allows easy selection of rainfall stations through a graphical interface of a map of California, which shows rainfall stations, state and federal highways, and rivers. The Caltrans tab determines the precipitation depth in inches from the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event based on the station or stations selected. This depth is then used with the SSHM to obtain the project **WQV**. Additionally, Basin Sizer includes options for WQV sizing using the Maximized Volume Method, California Stormwater BMP Handbook Approach, and Urban Runoff Quality Management Approach in the Historic and CASQA tabs.

Beneficial Uses:

Streams, lakes, rivers, and other water bodies, have uses to humans and other life; these uses are referred to as the Beneficial Uses of a water body. The beneficial uses of waters in California are described in the Basin Plans adopted by the nine California RWQCBs. Section 13240 of the California Water Code requires adoption of water quality control plans, called Basin Plans, for the protection of water quality within the State's watersheds. **Discharges** from stormwater drainage systems may convey **pollutants** to waters of the State, and therefore may have an adverse impact on the beneficial uses of that water resource. Beneficial uses fall into one or more of the following categories, but not limited to:

- Agricultural Supply (AGR) – water used for irrigation, leaching of salts, stock watering, etc.;
- Industrial Service Supply (IND) – use of water for industrial activities that do not depend primarily on water quality;
- Industrial Process Supply (PRO) – uses of water that depend primarily on water quality;
- Groundwater Recharge (GWR) – replenishment of **groundwater** by percolation from surface waters;
- Municipal and Domestic Supply (MUN) – water supply systems including drinking water supply;
- Freshwater Replenishment (FRSH) – maintenance of surface water quality or quantity;
- Cold Freshwater Habitat (COLD) – maintenance of cold water ecosystems;
- Warm Freshwater Habitat (WARM) – maintenance of warm water ecosystems;
- Estuarine Habitat (EST) – habitat resulting from commingling of freshwater and saltwater;
- Wildlife Habitat – (WILD) water used to support terrestrial or aquatic ecosystems;
- Preservation of Biological Habitats of Special Significance (BIOL) – water used to support designated areas such as refuges, parks or sanctuaries;
- Spawning, Reproduction, and/or Early Development (SPWN) - water used to support aquatic habitats suitable for reproduction and early development of fish;
- Migration of Aquatic Organisms (MIGR) – water used to support migration or other temporary aquatic organism uses;
- Rare, Threatened, or Endangered Species (RARE) – water used to support aquatic habitats necessary for the survival and maintenance of rare, threatened or endangered species;
- Aquaculture (AQUA) – using water for the propagation, cultivation, maintenance, or harvesting of aquatic plants or animals;
- Shellfish Harvesting (SHELL) – water used to support habitats for the maintenance of filter feeding shellfish;
- Commercial and Sport Fishing (COMM) – collecting fish for commercial or recreational purposes;
- Hydropower Generation (POW) – water used to produce electricity;
- Navigation (NAV) – the use of water for shipping or travel;
- Water Contact Recreation (REC-1) – recreational activities involving body contact with water; and
- Non-Contact Water Recreation (REC-2) – recreational activities involving proximity to water, but generally no body contact or ingestion of water.

Best Available Technology (BAT):

BAT is a term derived from Section 301(b) of the **CWA** and refers to **BMPs** to reduce toxic and non-conventional **pollutants** in **discharges** from **construction sites**. Toxic pollutants are those defined in Section 307 (a)(1) of the **CWA** and include heavy metals and man-made organics. Non-conventional pollutants are those not covered by conventional and toxic pollutants, such as ammonia, chloride, toxicity and nitrogen.

Best Conventional Technology (BCT):

BCT is a term derived from Section 301(b) of the federal **CWA** and refers to **BMPs** to reduce conventional **pollutants** in **discharges** from **construction sites**. Conventional pollutants include **TSS**, oil and grease, fecal coliforms, pH and other pollutants.

Best Management Practice (BMP):

A BMP is a measure that is implemented to protect water quality and reduce potential for pollution associated with stormwater **runoff**. Any program, technology, process, siting criteria, operating method, or device that controls, prevents, removes, or reduces pollution. There are four categories of BMPs: Maintenance, Design Pollution Prevention, Construction Site, and Treatment:

California Coastal Commission:

The California Coastal Commission (Commission) or local government agencies with certified Local Coastal Programs (LCPs) evaluate Caltrans permit applications for consistency with California Coastal Act policies related to specific resources like wetlands, visual resources, or coastal hazards. The Commission oversees development along the coast through six District offices located throughout coastal California, and the headquarters office located in San Francisco.

California Department of Public Health (CDPH):

The California DPH (http://www.cdph.ca.gov/) is a State Government department created to protect and improve the health of Californians. CDPH is concerned about the potential of any **BMP** device creating a public hazard by increasing habitat availability for aquatic stages of mosquitoes, and by creating harborage, food, and moisture for other reservoirs and nuisance species.

California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA):

The CEQA of 1970 requires public agencies to prevent significant, avoidable damage to the environment by regulating activities that may affect the quality of the environment. Public agencies accomplish this by requiring projects to consider the use of alternatives or mitigation measures. Regulations for the implementation of CEQA are found in the CEQA Guidelines and are available online by the Governor’s Office of Planning and Research at https://opr.ca.gov/ceqa/guidelines/

Caltrans Permit:

Caltrans Permit refers to the **NPDES** Statewide Stormwater Permit (NPDES NO. CAS000003, effective on January 1, 2023) to regulate stormwater discharges from Caltrans facilities.

Categorical Exemption (CE):

A CE is a list of classes of projects that have been determined not to have a significant effect on the environment and which shall, therefore, be exempt from the provisions of **CEQA**. For a list of classes of projects and further information see the website:

https://dot.ca.gov/programs/environmental-analysis/standard-environmental-reference-ser/volume-1-guidance-for-compliance/ch-34-exemptions-to-ceqa

Channel:

A natural or artificial waterway of perceptible extent that periodically or continuously contains moving water. It has a definite bed and banks which serve to confine the water.

Clean Water Act (CWA):

The CWA, originally enacted by Congress in 1972, is a federal law that requires states to protect, restore, and maintain the quality of the waters of the United States, including lakes, rivers, aquifers and coastal areas. The CWA, as amended in 1987, is the enabling legislation for the NPDES permitting process.

Code of Federal Regulations (CFR):

The CFR is a document that codifies all rules of the executive departments and agencies of the federal government. It is divided into 50 volumes, known as titles. Title 40 of the CFR (referenced as 40 CFR) contains all environmental regulations. 40 CFR is available from bookstores operated by the Government Printing Office and online at: https://www.ecfr.gov/current/title-40.

Common Plan of Development:

A common plan of development is generally a contiguous area where multiple separate and distinct construction activities may be taking place at different times on different schedules under one plan. Although many Caltrans construction contracts include work at various locations, do not assume that all locations are considered as part of a "larger common plan of development". As per EPA ruling, non-contiguous construction sites separated by ¼ mile or more, included into a single contract for administrative convenience, should not be considered part of a larger common plan of development. The aggregate DSA for individual locations should not be totaled as a check for CGP coverage. However, if a single location has more than 1 acre DSA, then the CGP applies for that location.

Construction General Permit (CGP):

The CGP is a Statewide General Permit for construction activities (Order No. WQ 2022-0057-DWQ (CAS000002) that applies to all stormwater discharges from activities that result in a DSA of at least one acre or more.

Construction Site:

The term "construction site" should apply to all areas both within the construction limits on state right-of-way and areas that are directly related to the construction activity, including but not limited to staging areas, storage yards, material borrow areas and storage areas, access roads, barges or platforms, etc., whether or not they reside within the Caltrans right-of-way.

Construction Site BMPs:

Construction Site BMPs are temporary controls used to reduce or eliminate pollutant discharges during construction. These controls are best conventional technology/best available technology BCT/BAT based BMPs that may include soil stabilization, sediment control, wind erosion control, tracking control, non-stormwater management and waste management.

Construction Site Best Management Practices Manual:

The Construction Site Best Management Practices Manual provides instructions for the selection and implementation of Construction Site BMPs. Caltrans requires contractors to identify and utilize these BMPs in preparation of their SWPPP or WPCP.

Contributing Drainage Area (CDA):

The upstream drainage area of a **Treatment BMP** or any area of land where precipitation collects and drains to a specific location.

Department of Toxic Substances Control (DTSC):

The DTSC (http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/) is the department within the California **EPA** that has responsibility for regulating the generation, management, and disposal of hazardous wastes. Caltrans has an ADL Agreement with DTSC for management of soil containing regulated levels of ADL. Please refer to your hazardous waste coordinator or the Caltrans Hazardous Waste ADL Guidance for specifics on lead concentrations and requirements.

Department of Water Resources (DWR):

The California DWR (https://water.ca.gov/) is a State Government department created to manage the water resources of California in cooperation with other agencies in such a way as to benefit the State's people, and to protect, restore, and enhance the natural and human environments. The DWR is a source for hydrology data, **groundwater** information, water maps, etc.

Design-Build Project:

Design-Build is a project delivery method in which design and construction services are contracted by a single entity known as the design–builder. Design-Build projects must follow the Caltrans Permit requirements, highway design manual, and other appropriate highway standards.

The Department implements design-build projects through a demonstration program. Information about the program can be found on the following website:

https://dot.ca.gov/programs/design/design-build-program

The Design-Build team develops a SWDR using the drainage information and previous Stormwater Data Reports provided by Caltrans, if available. The design of stormwater BMPs follows the requirements contained in the PPDG, Environmental Document, Permits, and design guidance to develop a final SWDR and PS&E documents. Design-Build documents are dynamic documents that are routinely updated as the project progresses.

Design Pollution Prevention (DPP) BMPs:

Design Pollution Prevention BMPs are permanent water quality controls used to reduce pollutant discharges by preventing **erosion** and promoting infiltration. If the BMP infiltrates, it can be considered a **Treatment BMP** (e.g., DPPIA). These BMPs are standard technology-based, non-treatment controls selected to reduce pollutant discharges to the **MEP** requirements. They are applicable to all projects. This category of BMPs includes: consideration of downstream effects related to potentially increased flow, such as reduction of paved surface, and soil modification; preservation of existing vegetation and soils, and surface water buffer areas; concentrated flow conveyance systems, such as ditches, berms, dikes, swales, overside drains, outlet protection/velocity dissipation devices; and slope/surface protection systems such as vegetated surfaces and hard surfaces.

District Annual Workplan (DAWP):

DAWPs (formerly District Work Plans) are annual detailed plans that describes when and how the various programs and BMPs contained in the SWMP will be implemented by each district in each RWQCB jurisdictional area for the upcoming fiscal year.

Discharge:

The term “discharge” refers to the amount of water flowing out of a drainage structure or facility. It is measured in cubic feet/second. It is any release, spill, leak, pump, flow, escape, dumping, or disposal of any liquid, semi-solid or solid substance.

Disturbed Soil Area (DSA):

Disturbed soil areas are areas of exposed, erodible soil that are within the construction limits and that result from construction activities. DSA does not include routine maintenance activity to maintain existing highways (facilities) or preventative maintenance to maintain highway structures, and existing functions. Asphalt concrete, Portland cement concrete, aggregate base, shoulder backing, bridge decks, sidewalks, buildings, roadside ditches, gutters, dikes, and culverts are all part of existing highway facilities. Activities necessary to implement landscape and highway planting projects are not considered DSA for triggering CGP coverage.

Construction activity in the context of NPDES stormwater and CWA is defined by EPA: “commencement of construction” as the initial disturbance of soils associated with clearing, grading, or excavating activities or other construction activities (63 CFR 7913). This does not include routine maintenance of highway facilities.” For example, an AC overlay with a thin lift of shoulder backing on top of an existing facility is routine maintenance and has no DSA.

Dual Purpose Facility:

Dry Weather Flow Diversion and flood control basins are considered dual purpose facilities. These types of facilities can be used to meet treatment requirements and should be considered.

Erosion:

Erosion is the wearing away of earth surfaces by the action of external forces. In the case of drainage terminology, this term generally refers to the wearing away of the earth’s surface by flowing water or wind.

Existing Vegetation:

Existing vegetation is any plant material within the project limits that is present prior to the beginning of construction.

Full-Capture Flow (FCF):

The FCF is the numeric sizing criteria used for flow-based full-capture trash devices. The 1-year, 1-hour rainfall intensity values are used in the Rational Formula to calculate the FCF; see Section 5.

Full-Capture Volume (FCV):

The FCV is the numeric sizing criteria used for volume-based full-capture trash devices. The depth from the 1-year, 1-hour storm event is multiplied by the CDA and volumetric runoff coefficient to determine the FCV; see Section 5.

Full-Capture System Equivalency:

The trash load that would be reduced if full-capture trash devices were installed, operated, and maintained for all storm drains that capture runoff from the relevant areas of land. The full capture system equivalency is a trash load reduction target that the Department quantifies by using an approach, and technically acceptable and defensible assumptions and methods for applying the approach, subject to the approval of State Water Board Executive Director.

Geographic Information System (GIS):

GIS is a system of hardware and software used for storage, retrieval, mapping, and spatial analysis of geographic data.

Green Infrastructure (GI):

Green infrastructure is an overarching community wide approach to stormwater management and flood mitigation that provides areas for water to soak into the ground, or evaporate back into the air, rather than forming runoff. A green infrastructure approach to stormwater management and flood risk reduction may implement LID site design techniques to capture rainwater as close to where it falls as possible and let that water soak back into the ground among other strategies.

Green Infrastructure stormwater BMPs appropriate for highways include: Bioretention, Biofiltration swales, Biofiltration strips, Wet Basins, Infiltration Basins, Infiltration Trenches, Infiltration Galleries, and Design Pollution Prevention Infiltration Areas. Furthermore, Caltrans designs other green infrastructure for purposes beyond stormwater, these include vegetated revetments, fish passage, slope stabilization, and stream bank stabilization.

Groundwater (GW):

GW is defined as the water that is naturally occurring under the earth's surface. It is situated below the surface of the land, irrespective of its source and transient status. Subterranean streams are flows of GW parallel to and adjoining stream waters, and usually determined to be integral parts of the visible streams. GW is considered a jurisdictional water of the State under the Porter-Cologne Water Quality Act (California Water Code, Division 7).

High Risk Areas:

High Risk Areas are defined as municipal or domestic water supply reservoirs or groundwater percolation facilities discharging to aquifers designated as water supply sources.

Highway Design Manual (HDM):

The HDM is a Caltrans document that establishes uniform policies and procedures to carry out the highway design functions of Caltrans.

Impervious Surface:

An impervious surface is any surface that cannot effectively absorb or infiltrate rainfall. This includes PCC and AC highways, roads, parking lots, and sidewalks. It also includes building, structures, and roofs.

Litter:

Litter in stormwater is defined by Caltrans as manufactured objects made from paper, plastic, cardboard, glass, metal, etc. This definition does not include materials of natural origin such as gravel or vegetation. Litter in surface waters can inhibit the growth of aquatic vegetation, harm aquatic organisms by ingestion or entanglement, convey other pollutants and cause aesthetic problems on shorelines.

Low Impact Development (LID):

LID is a Green Infrastructure stormwater site design strategy aimed at maintaining or restoring the natural hydrologic functions of a site under development to achieve natural resource protection objectives. LID employs a variety of natural and engineered features that reduce the rate of runoff, filter pollutants out of runoff, and facilitate the infiltration of water into the ground.

Maintenance BMPs:

Maintenance BMPs are water quality controls and practices used to reduce pollutant discharges during highway maintenance activities and activities conducted at maintenance facilities. These BMPs are technology-based controls that attain MEP pollutant control. This category of BMPs includes litter pickup, toxics control, street sweeping, etc.

Maximum Contaminant Level (MCL):

The MCL is the highest level of a contaminant that is allowed in drinking water.

Maximum Extent Practicable (MEP) Analysis:

The MEP analysis is the process of evaluating the selected **BMPs** based on legal and institutional constraints, technical feasibility, relative effectiveness, and cost/benefit ratio.

Metals (Total and Dissolved):

Metals, both total and dissolved, are commonly monitored constituents and, next to **TSS** and **nutrients**, are the most common constituents cited in the literature as being present in stormwater **runoff.**

Trace quantities of many metals are necessary for biological growth and may naturally occur in runoff. Most metals, however, have numeric water quality standards because of their toxicity to aquatic organisms at high concentrations.

The toxicity of some metals is inversely related to water hardness. The numeric water quality standards for cadmium, chromium, copper, lead, nickel, silver and zinc are hardness-dependent. Copper, lead and zinc are the metals most commonly found in highway runoff.

Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems:

Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems are certified full-capture trash devices that are effective at removing trash and other pollutants. They are a preferred treatment method because they can meet post construction, trash TMDL, and STGA requirements. The Caltrans approved Treatment BMPs that can be certified as Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems are:

- Bioretention
- Detention Basin
- Infiltration Trench and Basin
- Austin Media Filter (Earthen & Concrete Vault)
- Delaware Media Filter

Multi Benefit Trash Treatment Systems are sized using the **WQV** or **WQF** and are certified using the **FCV** or **FCF**.

Municipal Separate Storm Sewer System (MS4):

MS4s are storm drain systems regulated by the federal Phase I and Phase II stormwater regulations. Municipal combined sewer systems are regulated separately. MS4s are defined in the federal regulations at 40 **CFR** 122.26(b)(8). Caltrans is designated as a Phase I MS4 permittee.

National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA):

The NEPA of 1969 establishes policies and procedures to bring environmental considerations into the planning process for federal projects. NEPA requires all federal agencies to identify and assess reasonable alternatives to proposed actions that will restore and enhance the quality of the human environment and avoid or minimize adverse environmental impacts. The NEPA process is an overall framework for the environmental evaluation of federal actions.

National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) Permit:

The NPDES Permit is **EPA's** program to control the **discharge** of **pollutants** to waters of the United States. NPDES is a part of the federal **CWA**, which requires point and non-point source dischargers to obtain permits. These permits are referred to as NPDES permits.

Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS):

As part of the USDA, the NRCS provides leadership in a partnership effort to help people conserve, maintain, and improve natural resources and the environment. Soil types and local soil survey data can be obtained from the NRCS soil maps. The soil type and soil survey data are used during the desktop screening of potential Infiltration Device sites.

New Development/Redevelopment Projects:

As defined in the Caltrans Permit, new development and redevelopment projects are those that create, add and/or replace impervious surfaces. The replacement of impervious surfaces includes any location where existing impervious surfaces have been removed such that the underlying soil or pervious subgrade has been exposed. New development or redevelopment activities do not include routine maintenance that maintain original line and grade, hydraulic capacity, or original purpose of the facility, nor does it include emergency construction activities required to protect public health and safety. In addition, redevelopment projects do not include trenching and resurfacing associated with utility work; pavement grinding and resurfacing of existing roadways; construction of sidewalks, pedestrian ramps, or bike lanes on existing roadways or pavement under existing guardrail.

Net New Impervious Area (NNI):

The NNI is the total post-project impervious area minus the pre-project impervious area .

New Impervious Surface (NIS):

The project new impervious surface (NIS) is the addition of the **NNI** and the **RIS minus the EIA**.

Non-Highway Facilities Project:

Projects that do not include any portion of the highway, shoulder, on-ramps, or off-ramps. Non-highway facilities projects include parking lots, park-and-ride areas, maintenance access roads, rest areas, and maintenance stations.

Nutrients:

Nutrients are nutritive substances such as phosphorous and nitrogen whose excessive input into **receiving waters** can over-stimulate the growth of aquatic plants.

Algae and vascular plants can cause numerous deleterious effects. Algae and vascular aquatic plants produce oxygen during the day via photosynthesis and consume oxygen during the night via respiration. The pH of the water is linked to this phenomenon through the carbonate cycle: the pH rises during the day when carbon dioxide (CO2) is consumed for the photosynthetic production of plant tissue and falls at night when CO2 is released by respiration. Algal blooms due to inputs of nitrogen or phosphorus can cause wide fluctuations in this dissolved oxygen and pH cycle during a 24-hour period, which can cause fish kills and mass mortality of benthic organisms. In addition, excessive algal and vascular plant growth can accelerate eutrophication, interfere with navigation, and cause unsightly conditions with reduced water clarity, odors, and diminished habitat for fish and shellfish.

Other trace nutrients, such as iron, are also needed for plant growth. In general, however, phosphorus and nitrogen are the nutrients of importance in aquatic environments.

Phosphorus. Phosphorus is taken up by algae and vascular aquatic plants and, when available in excess of the plant's immediate needs for metabolism and reproduction, can be stored in the cells. With bacterial decomposition of plant materials, relatively labile pools of phosphorus are later released and recycled within the biotic community. The refractory portion (i.e., compounds relatively resistant to biodegradation) tends to sink to the bottom, where it degrades slowly over time.

Analytical tests for the minimum constituent list include TP, which is the sum of the dissolved and particulate orthophosphate, polyphosphate and organic phosphorus; and Total Ortho-P, which is the sum of the dissolved and particulate orthophosphate.

Nitrogen. Transformation of nitrogen compounds can occur through several key mechanisms: fixation, ammonification, synthesis, nitrification, and denitrification. Nitrogen fixation is the conversion of nitrogen gas into nitrogen compounds that can be assimilated by plants; biological fixation is the most common, but fixation can also occur by lightning and through industrial processes. Ammonification is the biochemical degradation of organic-N into NH_3 or NH_4^+ by heterotrophic bacteria under aerobic or anaerobic conditions. Synthesis is the biochemical mechanism in which NH_4^+-N or NO_3^--N is converted into plant protein (Organic-N); nitrogen fixation is also a unique form of synthesis that can be performed only by nitrogen-fixing bacteria. Nitrification is the biological oxidation of NH_4^+ to NO_3^- through a two-step autotrophic process by the bacteria *Nitrosomonas* and *Nitrobacter*; the two-step reactions are usually very rapid, and hence it is rare to find nitrite levels higher than 1.0 mg/l in water. The nitrate formed by nitrification is, in the nitrogen cycle, used by plants as a nitrogen source (synthesis) or reduced to N_2 gas through the process of denitrification; NO_3^- can be reduced, under anoxic conditions, to N_2 gas through heterotrophic biological denitrification.

Analytical tests for the minimum constituent list include NH_3/NH_4^+-N, NO_3^--N, and Total TKN. TKN is a measure of NH_3/NH_4^+-N plus organic-N; the concentration of organic-N is thus obtained by subtracting the concentration of NH_3/NH_4^+-N found in the sample from that of the TKN value.

Pathogens:

Pathogens include viruses, bacteria, protozoa, and possibly helminth worms and are a concern in stormwater **runoff**. The direct measurement of specific pathogens in water is extremely difficult. The coliform group of organisms is commonly used as an indicator of the potential presence of pathogens of fecal origin.

Sources of total and fecal coliforms in stormwater runoff are ubiquitous (e.g., soil particles, droppings of wild and domestic animals). Human sources could include illegal encampments, illegal sewer connections, and seepage from septic tanks.

Pervious Surface:

A pervious surface is any surface that can absorb or infiltrate rainfall. This includes soil, pervious pavements, gravel roads, shoulder backing, embankments, fills, rock slope protection, gravel, and mulches.

Pesticides:

A pesticide is a chemical agent designed to control pest organisms. The most common forms of pesticides are organic chemicals designed to target insects (insecticides) and vascular plants (herbicides).

Chlorpyrifos and Diazinon. Chlorpyrifos and Diazinon are organophosphate pesticides that have been detected in stormwater **runoff.** Organophosphates exhibit a high pesticidal activity and relatively low persistence in the environment. They also exhibit acute toxicity effects to humans and animals by inhibiting the acetylcholinesterase enzyme activity at nerve endings, which affects the proper functioning of the nervous system. Absorption through the skin is a major route of exposure for all organisms.

Pollutant:

Any constituent present in sufficient quantity to impair the beneficial uses of a receiving water body.

Post Construction Treatment Area (PCTA):

The PCTA is the impervious area required to be treated by the project and includes the **NIS** and **ATA** (Condition 1 Impervious and Condition 2).

Primary Pollutant of Concern:

A "Primary Pollutant of Concern" is a constituent that has been identified as a **Targeted Design Constituent** by the Department <u>and</u> for which a receiving water body of interest is listed on the 303(d) list.

Project Development Procedures Manual (PDPM):

The PDPM describes the policies and procedures to be followed by Caltrans for State highway project development.

Project Development Team (PDT):

The PDT guides and develops specific projects. The PDT is typically managed by a District PM and is supported by functional managers and units.

Project Limits:

The project limits are between “Begin Work” and “End Work” as shown on the title sheet of the project plans. Note that no construction of a permanent nature beyond the construction limits of the project is allowed. Construction limits are between “Begin Construction” and “End Construction” as shown on the title sheet of the project plans.

R Factor:

Erosivity factor used in the Revised Universal Soil Loss Equation (RUSLE). The R factor represents the erosivity of the climate at a particular location. An average annual value of R is determined from historical weather records using erosivity values determined for individual storms. The erosivity of an individual storm is computed as the product of the storm's total energy, which is closely related to storm amount, and the storm's maximum 30-minute intensity.

This R-factor can be calculated using the EPA calculator (or tabular method) in the determination of erosivity waiver and for determining the **CGP** sediment risk level. See *Risk Level Determination Guidance* for more details.

Rapid Stability Assessment:

Assessment of the susceptibility of a channel reach to accelerated **erosion** or deposition in response to planned hydromodification. RSAs of each Threshold Drainage Area generally require no more than a few hours of effort by trained professionals working in the office followed by a visual field inspection of the reach in question. Refer to Caltrans Hydromodification Requirements Guidance.

Receiving Water:

A river, lake, ocean, stream or other watercourse into which storm water, wastewater, or treated effluent is discharged as provided in the "Terms of Environment" (U.S. EPA Office of Communications, Education, and Public Affairs; December 1997).

Regional Water Quality Control Board (RWQCB):

The RWQCB means any California RWQCB for a region as specified in Section 13200 of the California Water Code. There are nine RWQCBs that serve under the **SWRCB.** These nine RWQCBs are located in California and are responsible for enforcing water quality standards within their boundaries. A map of these boundaries is located in Section 3, Figure 3-1.

In protecting water quality, each RWQCB:

- Adopts a region-specific Water Quality Control Plan or Basin Plan that contains water quality standards specific to the region's waters;
- Issues waste discharge requirements (WDRs) and water quality monitoring and reporting programs that implement the SWRCB's statewide policy and regulations along with the region-specific water quality standards specified in its Basin Plan; and
- Implements enforceable orders against violations of statewide and region-specific requirement

Replaced Impervious Surface (RIS):

Replaced **impervious surface** includes any activity that removes impervious materials and exposes the underlying soil or pervious subgrade during construction. Subtract **RIS** that drains to an existing **Treatment BMP** that will be protected and perpetuated (Table 4-1).

Resident Engineer (RE):

The RE administers the construction contract, makes decisions regarding acceptability of material furnished and work performed, and exercises contractual authority to direct the contractor. The RE may impose sanctions if the contractor fails to follow the appropriate actions specified in the contract to correct deficiencies.

Routine Maintenance:

Routine maintenance activities are intended to maintain the original line and grade, hydraulic capacity, or original purpose of a facility. **CGP** coverage does not apply to projects that are considered routine maintenance. Projects categorized as routine maintenance typically include landscape and highway planting, pavement overlay, and other projects with little or no new impervious surface or mass grading. Projects with extensive earthwork or where the replacement of existing roadway surfaces expose the underlying soil or pervious subgrade are not considered routine maintenance projects.

Runoff:

Runoff is comprised of surface waters that exceed the soil's infiltration rate and depression storage. It includes that portion of precipitation that appears as flow in streams, and also drainage or flood discharges that leave an area as surface flow or as pipeline flow, having reached a channel or pipeline by either surface or subsurface routes.

Run-on:

Discharges that originate offsite and flow onto the property of a separate project site.

Significant Trash Generation Areas (STGAs):

Discharge of trash to surface waters of the State (direct or indirect) is prohibited by the **Statewide Trash Provisions**. Caltrans has developed a Statewide Trash Implementation Plan to ensure compliance with the **Statewide Trash Provisions**. The Statewide Trash Implementation Plan delineates Significant Trash Generation Areas (STGAs) within Caltrans jurisdiction.

STGAs include all locations or facilities where trash accumulates in substantial amounts, such as:

- Highway on-ramps and off-ramps in high density residential, commercial, and industrial land uses
- Rest areas and park-and-rides
- State highways in commercial and industrial land uses
- Mainline highway segments to be identified by the Department through pilot studies and/or surveys
- Areas identified by the State Water Board Executive Director in consultation with the appropriate Regional Board
- STGAs are listed on maps in the Statewide Trash Implementation Plan.
- Projects developed within an STGA must install full-capture trash devices.

Slope/Soil Stabilization:

Soil stabilization is described as vegetation, such as grasses and wildflowers, and other materials, such as straw, fiber, stabilizing emulsion, protective blankets, etc. Soil stabilization is placed to stabilize areas disturbed by grading operations, to reduce loss of soil due to the action of water or wind, and to prevent water pollution.

Soil Modification:

Soil modification is the changing of characteristics to achieve an engineering design result. Historically, soil modification was performed to facilitate compaction, reduce infiltration, and increase the bearing capacity of the soil. Conversely, the physical and chemical properties of soil may be altered to increase infiltration and enhance vegetation establishment. Soil may be modified by incorporating inert and organic amendments. The most common of these amendments are sand and compost, respectively. Additional modifications include relieving of compaction through tilling and the addition of fertilizers to adjust pH, nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium, and trace nutrients.

Source Controls:

Source controls are control measures used on disturbed areas to reduce the introduction of sediment or other **pollutants** into stormwater **runoff**. Source controls prevent or limit the exposure of materials to stormwater at the source of those materials.

Sustainable Stormwater BMPs:

Sustainability is often described using the “triple bottom line” concept, which includes giving consideration to three primary principles: Social, Environmental, and Economic. The goal of sustainability is the satisfaction of basic social and economic needs, both present and future, and the responsible use of natural resources, all while maintaining or improving the well-being of the environment on which life depends (FHWA). A sustainable approach to highways means helping designers make balanced choices among environmental, economic, and social values—the triple bottom line of sustainability—that will benefit current and future road users.

Sustainable stormwater BMPs are those that balance priorities of infiltration, water quality, safety, life cycle costs, and maintaining transportation. The SWRCB considers LID BMPs to be sustainable for water resources, stormwater is treated as a resource by improving water supply and improving water quality (SWRCB 2005).

Standard Urban Stormwater Mitigation Plan (SUSMP):

SUSMPs are special local requirements that designate BMPs that must be used for specific categories of development projects. PEs should contact the District/Regional NPDES Coordinator to see if a SUSMP is applicable for projects in urban areas.

Statewide Trash Provisions:

Discharge of trash to surface waters of the State (direct or indirect) is prohibited by the Statewide Trash Provisions. Caltrans has developed a Statewide Trash Implementation Plan to ensure compliance with the Statewide Trash Provisions. The Statewide Trash Implementation Plan delineates STGAs within Caltrans jurisdiction.

State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB):

The SWRCBs mission is to preserve, enhance and restore the quality of California’s water resources, and ensure their proper allocation and efficient use for the benefit of present and future generations. As delegated by the EPA, the SWRCB is a California agency that implements and enforces the CWA Section 401 (p) NPDES permit requirements and is the issuer and administrator of the Caltrans Permit.

Stormwater Advisory Teams (SWAT):

Caltrans has established five Department-wide SWATs to evaluate new or modified BMPs and to develop procedures and guidance for implementing the SWMP:

- The Maintenance SWAT (M-SWAT) is composed of District Maintenance Stormwater Coordinators and representatives from each of the affected HQ Divisions. The M-SWAT provides any necessary review and/or evaluation of proposed and existing BMPs used by the Division of Maintenance. In addition, the M-SWAT reviews and assists in the development of training classes and guidance documents for implementing stormwater activities described in the SWMP for maintaining highways, bridges, facilities, and other appurtenances related to transport.

- The Project Design SWAT (PD-SWAT) is composed of District/Regional Design Stormwater Coordinators and related functional units and representatives from each of the affected HQ Divisions. The PD-SWAT provides review of proposed and existing BMPs utilized in the planning and design of projects. BMPs include Construction Site BMPs, Design Pollution Prevention BMPs, and Treatment BMPs. In addition, the PD-SWAT reviews and assists in the development of training classes and guidance documents for implementing stormwater activities relevant to project design.

- The Construction SWAT (C-SWAT) is composed of District Construction Stormwater Coordinators, District Permit Coordinators, and representatives from each of the affected HQ Divisions. The C-SWAT provides review of proposed and existing Construction Site BMPs and measures used for stabilization of soils. The C-SWAT also reviews existing procedures to ensure that they integrate the appropriate stormwater BMPs into the requirements of encroachment permits. In addition, the C-SWAT reviews and assists in the development of training classes and guidance documents for implementing stormwater activities relevant to construction activities and for issuing and administering encroachment permits.

- Encroachment Permit SWAT (EP-SWAT) is composed of District Permit Coordinators and representatives from each of the affected HQ Divisions. The EP-SWAT provides review of existing procedures to ensure that they integrate the appropriate stormwater BMPs into the requirements of encroachment permits. In addition, the EP-SWAT reviews and assists in issuing and administering encroachment permits.

- The Water Quality SWAT (WQ-SWAT) is composed of the District/Regional NPDES Coordinators and representatives from each of the affected HQ Divisions. The WQ-SWAT provides review of proposed and existing Treatment BMPs, and prioritizes research or studies of Treatment BMPs. The WQ-SWAT is a forum for discussing stormwater coordination activities underway or planned with other municipalities, reviewing and recommending public education efforts, sharing technical information, providing advice on compliance issues, and resolving issues of dispute on stormwater. Many of these activities result in recommendations for changes to the SWMP or policies and other documents on stormwater. The WQ-SWAT discusses stormwater budget allocations for the districts and HQ Divisions. The WQ-SWAT reviews data and findings from compliance-monitoring and evaluation activities and recommends changes in practices to improve compliance efforts.

Stormwater Data Report (SWDR):

The SWDR is a document prepared by the PE that summarizes stormwater design information associated with a project. It is used to document stormwater related decisions for the purposes of assuring compliance throughout all phases of project delivery. It contains pertinent information related to BMP planning, design and estimating and helps to ensure functional unit collaboration. A SWDR is prepared and signed for all projects at every phase of project development. A PS&E phase SWDR is to be signed and stamped by the PE.

Stormwater Management Plan (SWMP):

The SWMP is the Caltrans policy document that describes how Caltrans conducts its stormwater management activities (i.e., procedures and practices). The SWMP provides descriptions of each of the major management program elements, discusses the processes used to evaluate and select appropriate **BMPs**, and presents key implementation responsibilities and schedules.

Stormwater Multiple Application and Report Tracking System (SMARTS):

The **SWRCB** SMARTS provides a platform where dischargers, regulators, and the public can enter, manage, and view storm water data including permit registration documents, compliance, and monitoring data associated with California's Storm Water General Permits.

Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP):

The Construction **General Permit** requires all construction projects that result in a **DSA** of at least one acre to develop and implement an effective SWPPP. The SWPPP is a plan that includes site map(s), an identification of construction/contractor activities that could cause pollutants in stormwater, and a description of measures or practices to control these **pollutants.** A **RWQCB** may require a SWPPP for projects which do not meet the **DSA** acreage requirements based upon water quality concerns.

Stream (includes creeks and rivers):

A stream is a body of water that flows at least periodically or intermittently through a bed or channel having banks and supports fish or other aquatic life. This includes watercourses having a surface or subsurface flow that supports or has supported riparian vegetation.

Targeted Design Constituent (TDC):

A TDC is a pollutant that has been identified during Departmental runoff characterization studies to be discharging with a load or concentration that commonly exceeds allowable standards and which is considered treatable by currently available Department-approved **Treatment BMP**s.

Threshold Drainage Area (TDA):

A TDA is an area draining to a location at least 20 channel widths downstream of a stream crossing (pipe, swale, culvert, or bridge) within the Department's project limits.

Total Dissolved Solids (TDS):

TDS refers to the sum of all cations or anions (sometimes measured in parts per million as calcium carbonate). TDS comprise inorganic salts (principally calcium, magnesium, potassium, sodium, bicarbonates, chlorides and sulfates) and small amounts of organic matter that are dissolved in water.

In fresh water the total dissolved solids concentration typically ranges from 20 to 1,000 mg/l; in seawater, it ranges from 30,000 to 35,000 mg/l. High levels of dissolved solids concentrations can adversely affect drinking water quality.

Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL):

TMDLs are pollutant load allocations for all point sources and nonpoint sources, and are intended to achieve a pollutant reduction goal along with a safety factor. TMDLs are developed in response to identification of **pollutants** as impairing a specific body of water identified in the 303(d) list.

Total Suspended Solids (TSS):

TSS is the mass of particles that are suspended in water. Suspended solids in water reduce light penetration in the water column, can clog the gills of fish and invertebrates, and are often associated with toxic contaminants because organics and metals tend to bind to particles.

Total Area to be Treated:

The total area to be treated is the entire area that is treated by the project, including both **pervious surfaces** and **impervious surfaces.** This includes the **NIS**, **ATA**, and **Alternative Compliance** areas.

Treatment BMPs:

Treatment BMPs are permanent water quality controls used to remove pollutants from stormwater **runoff** prior to being discharged from Caltrans right-of-way. These controls are used to meet **MEP** requirements and are considered for projects discharging directly or indirectly to **receiving waters.** This category of BMPs includes, but not limited to: Traction Sand Traps, Infiltration Devices, Detention Devices, Biofiltration Systems, Dry Weather Flow Diversion, Media Filters, Multi-Chamber Treatment Trains, Wet Basins, Full Trash Capture Devices, and DPPIAs.

United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA):

The EPA (http://www.epa.gov/) provides leadership in the nation's environmental science, research, education, and assessment efforts. The EPA works closely with other federal agencies, state and local governments, and Indian tribes to develop and enforce regulations under existing environmental laws. The EPA is responsible for researching and setting national standards for a variety of environmental programs and delegates to states and tribes responsible for issuing permits, and monitoring and enforcing compliance. The EPA issued regulations to control pollutants in stormwater **runoff discharges**, such as the **CWA.** (The CWA and **NPDES** permit requirement.)

Waste Discharge Requirement (WDR):

A WDR is a set of conditions issued by a **RWQCB** for a specific activity. The conditions may include numeric effluent criteria, monitoring requirements, reporting requirements, and other narrative criteria for discharge. WDRs may be required for any non-exempt non-stormwater **discharge.**

Waste Load Allocations (WLA):

A WLA represents the maximum load of **pollutants** each discharger of waste is allowed to release into a particular waterway for which a **TMDL** has been established. **Discharge** limits are usually required for each specific water quality criterion being, or expected to be, violated for that particular **water body.**

Water Body:

Water bodies refer to the waters of the United States. These include (a) All waters, which are currently used, were used in the past, or may be susceptible to use in interstate or foreign commerce, including all waters which are subject to the ebb and flow of the tide; (b) All interstate waters, including interstate wetlands; (c) All other waters such as intrastate lakes, rivers, streams (including intermittent streams), mudflats, sandflats, wetlands, sloughs, prairie potholes, wet meadows, playa lakes, or natural ponds, the use, degradation, or destruction of which would affect or could affect interstate or foreign commerce including any such waters: (1) which are or could be used by interstate or foreign travelers for recreational or other purposes; (2) from which fish or shellfish are or could be taken and sold in interstate or foreign commerce; or (3) which are used or could be used for industrial purposes by industries in interstate commerce; (d) All impoundments of waters identified in paragraphs (a) through (d) of this definition; (f) The territorial sea; and (g) Wetlands adjacent to waters (other than waters that are themselves wetlands) identified in paragraphs (a) through (f) of this definition.

Water Pollution Control Program (WPCP):

A WPCP is a plan to identify water quality management practices to be implemented that must be prepared for all construction projects that do not require preparation of a **SWPPP.** For Caltrans projects disturbing more than one acre, a SWPPP satisfies the requirement for a WPCP.

Water Quality Assessment Guidelines (WQAG):

The Water Quality Assessment Guidelines (WQAG) provide direction on format, content, and methods for preparing detailed Water Quality Assessment Reports (WQARs) and more summary Water Quality Assessment Memoranda.

Water Quality Assessment Report (WQAR):

The primary purpose of the Water Quality Assessment Report (WQAR) is to fulfill the requirements of the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) and the California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA), and to provide information, to the extent possible, for the **NPDES** permitting. It identifies potential water quality impacts/benefits associated with the proposed project and recommends avoidance and/or minimization measures for potentially adverse impacts. Information from the WQAR is used in the PEAR.

Water Quality Flow (WQF):

The WQF is the numeric sizing criteria used for flow-based treatment devices. Caltrans has cooperatively developed rainfall intensity values with the RWQCBs and the **SWRCB** that are used in the Rational Formula to calculate the WQF; see Section 5.

Water Quality Volume (WQV):

The depth from the 85th percentile, 24-hour storm event multiplied by the **CDA** and volumetric runoff coefficient to determine the WQV; see Section 5.

Work Breakdown Structure (WBS):

The WBS is a product-oriented grouping of project elements that organizes and defines the total scope of the project. Each descending level represents an increasingly detailed definition of a project component. Project components may be products or services. The WBS defines the work elements, not the staff or resources that will perform the work.